



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 06926501 9



Chapman

**THE THEORY**  
**OF**  
**NATIONAL AND INTERNATIONAL**  
**BIBLIOGRAPHY.**

WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THE INTRODUCTION OF SYSTEM  
IN THE RECORD OF MODERN LITERATURE.

BY  
**FRANK CAMPBELL**  
OF THE LIBRARY BRITISH MUSEUM.

"There is yet a third, and the highest stage of Historical investigation,  
in which the aim is not simply to compose Histories, but to construct a  
Science of History." (*J. S. Mill.*)

LONDON:  
LIBRARY BUREAU.

—  
1896.



DUPLICATE  
TO BE KEPT

\*GAC  
Campb."





	PAGES.
Chap. VIII. - A National System of Bibliography .. .. .	139—170
Appendix.—Some of the advantages to be derived from a National System of Bibliography. Periodical Classed Subject-Catalogues) .. (169—170)	
.. IX.—The Theory of International Bibliography .. .. .	171—187
.. X.—The Functions of a National Bureau for the Record of National Literature .. .. .	188—192
Appendix.—The Relationship of Certain Works of Reference explained and illustrated .. (190—192)	
.. XI.—On the Official Exchange and Transmission of Official Documents from one Government to another .. .. .	193—202
Appendix.—A Bureau of Exchanges. (Smith- sonian Institution) .. .. .	(202)
.. XII. A Matter of Expediency and Justice .. .. .	203—205

## SECTION II.

## MONOGRAPHS RELATING TO GENERAL BIBLIOGRAPHY.

No. 1.--Bibliography Backwards: a Paper read before the Library Association, 1893 .. .. .	209—227
.. 2. The Battle of Bibliography: part of a Paper read before the Library Association, 1893, in advocacy of Com- pulsory National Book-Registration, and Printed Period- ical . . . Special Bibliographies .. .. .	229—240
.. 3.—The Bibliography of the Future: a Paper reviewing the existing Condition of National and International Biblio- graphy, with suggested Reforms. Read before the . . . Library Association, 1894 .. .. .	241—259
.. 4.—Memorandum relative to the need for Special Biblio- graphical Societies, with an Appendix on the Division of the Stream of Literature, September, 1894 .. .. .	261—271
.. 5.—Some Works of Reference and what they teach us .. .. .	273—278
Appendix.—The relative Structure and Use of the American "Annual Literary Index," and the English "Index to the Periodicals" .. .. .	(276—278)
.. 6.—Upon the Evils of Short-Titled Catalogues. (The evidence of Prof. Augustus de Morgan and "Mr. Panizzi" before the British Museum Commission in 1849) .. .. .	279—291
.. 7.—On the Disadvantages incidental to Classed Catalogues (with reference to Sir Anthony Panizzi's views) .. .. .	292—294
.. 8.—On the Nature of an "Index of Matters." (Evidence given before the British Museum Commission of 1849, by "Mr. Panizzi") .. .. .	295—298

# CONTENTS.

vii

## THE LEARNED SOCIETIES.

(See also 12-15.)

PAGES.

- No. 9.—The Literature of Geography : How shall it be Recorded ?  
 A Paper (reprinted) read before the Sixth International  
 Geographical Congress, London, 1895. (With Abstract) 299—313  
 Appendix.—Resolution passed at the Congress in  
 favour of the principle of State-printed Registration  
 of Literature .. .. . (310—313)

## THE BRITISH COLONIAL EMPIRE.

- „ 10.—Registers of Colonial Literature. (Remarks at a meeting  
 of the Library Association at the Royal Colonial Insti-  
 tute, 1894) .. .. . 314—316  
 „ 10A.—Registers of Colonial Publications, by J. R. Boosé. (A  
 Paper read before the Library Association, 1895.)  
 (Reprinted by permission) .. .. . 317—323  
 „ 11.—List of Periodical State-Printed Registers of Literature  
 issued in India and certain of the Colonies .. .. . 324—326

## INTERNATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHY.

- „ 12.—Instances of Foreign State-Printed Registers of Litera-  
 ture. (1, General Literature; 2, Official Literature) .. 327—328  
 „ 13.—Circular Letter addressed (1894) by the Committee of the  
 Royal Society to various "Scientific Bodies" and  
 "Scientific Men," relative to the Proposed Interna-  
 tional Co-operation in the Record of Scientific Litera-  
 ture. (Reprinted by permission) .. .. . 329—331  
 „ 14.—L'Institut International de Bibliographie. An Article  
 contributed to "The Library," 1895 .. .. . 332—337  
 „ 15.—L'Institut International de Bibliographie. (Statuts,  
 "Décisions et Vœux," (Reprinted from the "Bulletin"  
 of the Institute) .. .. . 338—341

## SECTION III.

### MONOGRAPHS RELATING TO THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF OFFICIAL LITERATURE.

- No. 1.—The Official Documents of the British Empire : How to  
 make them accessible. A Dialogue .. .. . 345—359  
 „ 2.—An Introduction to the Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue.  
 (Read before the Library Association, 1890) .. .. . 361—383  
 „ 3.—A Plea for Annual Registers of State-Papers and Annual  
 Reviews of State-Papers as being essential preliminaries  
 to State-Paper Catalogues. (Read before the Library  
 Association, 1891) .. .. . 385—395

	PAGES.
No. 4.—On the Impossibility of Merging Official Documents in an Authors' Catalogue of General Literature .. ..	396—401
„ 5.—Title-Pages, Introductions and Specimen Papers of Two Catalogues of Official Documents. (Cape of Good Hope and India.) Printed as Studies in 1893 .. ..	403—417
„ 6.—A List of Headings more commonly required in a Catalogue of Colonial Official Documents .. ..	418—419
„ 7.—On the Bibliography of Military Official Works. (Being List of Headings and Specimen Page of a Catalogue of English Official Military Works, compiled in 1894 by Basil Soulsby.) (Reprinted by permission) .. ..	420—425

## SECTION IV.

## MISCELLANEOUS PAPERS RELATING TO BIBLIOGRAPHY.

No. 1.—Occasional Letters Illustrative of Certain Theories of Bibliography, addressed to the Daily Press (1892, 1894) .. ..	427—438
„ 2.—The Functions of Bibliographical Societies in a National System of Bibliography .. ..	439—446
„ 3.—Memorandum on the Preliminary Treatment of Books in a National Library prior to their being Catalogued, with special reference to the separation of Official and General Literature .. ..	447—449
„ 4.—Despatch-Registers. Suggested Simple Form of Register for Secretariat Use, to ensure the Accurate Despatch of Periodicals and Continuations .. ..	450—452
„ 5.—On the origin of the Stereotyping of Titles and Catalogues .. ..	453—455
„ 6.—Remarks addressed to the Members of the Library Assistants' Association, Sept., 1895 :— The Young Librarian : His General Education. The Young Librarian : His Technical Education. The Librarian as a Man of Business. The Librarian as a Man of the World. The Librarian as a Man of Ideals. The Librarian as a Man of Culture. A System of Training for Librarians .. ..	457—468
„ 7.—Carlyle on Bibliography (Being Extracts from his evidence before the British Museum Commission of 1849) .. ..	469—475
Conclusion .. ..	476
Addenda .. ..	477—485
Index .. ..	487

## Introduction.

THE following work is, as its name implies, written mainly from a National point of view, and in regard to Modern Literature; and is the result of twelve years' experience in the best Bibliographical Observatory in the world.

It consists of papers on the theory of Bibliography, which have been printed before, but which are now re-issued, in company with a considerable number of papers now printed for the first time.

The work is divided into four Sections. My original intention was that Section I. should contain chapters, each complete in themselves, on the chief hinging-points of Bibliography, round which I believe all future study and discussion will mainly centre. Owing to an illness of six weeks, however, the whole work was delayed, and I was obliged to considerably curtail several of the opening chapters, in order that the work might be issued in time, if possible, to be of some assistance in connection with the approaching "International Conference," to be convened, by the Royal Society, on July 14th, to consider the question of recording Scientific Literature.

Section II. contains a number of Monographs on **General Bibliography**.

Section III. contains a collection of Monographs relative to the Bibliography of **Official Literature**.

Section IV. includes a few papers of a more **Miscellaneous** character.

I had wished to have illustrated the theory throughout by a large number of actual examples and diagrams, but, for the reason already alluded to, I was unable to do so. Many of the papers have been written under circumstances of considerable interruption, so I must ask my readers to pardon frequent clumsiness or abruptness of style.

I have tried my best, by means of darker type, to aid the eye, as much as possible, to discern the leading points in the argument; and have, for the same reason, prefixed special Tables of Contents to some of the longer essays.



As will be seen by a glance at the book, the following work has, in a great measure, been written with the special object of aiding students of Bibliography in further studies and investigations on the subject.

If the reader wishes to gain a general idea of the work at a glance, he must cast his eye over the Table of Contents.

He will see there more than I can tell him, except at the cost of wearying him by a long Introduction. The idea of the work is the further introduction of Law and Order into the World of Literature, in order to facilitate research. That this is far easier than most people think, I have endeavoured to prove. But its accomplishment depends upon a greater study of the *National Laws of Bibliography*, and a greater obedience to their dictates. Finally, the main contention of the work is that National Literature can alone be completely recorded by the State.

As this work is chiefly confined to exposition of *Theory*, the results of my own experience during the last twelve years, I have mentioned few names of other writers on the subject. There are several whom I would like to have mentioned, having regard to the past expression of their views in the pages of "The Library Chronicle," "The Library," or the "Transactions of the Bibliographical Society." But as I could not praise them without appearing to assent to many principles on which I differ, and not having time to qualify my remarks, I have thought it best to remain silent.

While engaged on the present work, I was agreeably surprised to receive (June 3) a copy of a work (of some 200 pages) entitled, "Manuel de Bibliographie Historique. Par Ch. V. Langlois, Chargé de Cours à la Faculté des Lettres de Paris. I. Instruments Bibliographiques." (*Paris: Librairie Hachette et Cie.*)

I regret that I have been unable to devote the time necessary for its examination, but it is very evidently a work of great value, and is certainly the *first of its kind*. The first part is devoted to *Tools of Bibliography*, on the principle that, "*Enseigner la Bibliographie, c'est donc enseigner la manière de se servir des instruments bibliographiques qui existent.*" A great part of my own work is devoted to illustrate the use of bibliographies which *ought to exist!* so that we divide the field equally! M. Langlois' work teems with references to existing Catalogues and Bibliographies throughout the world, and is especially useful in the information which it supplies under the *names of the countries*, and for the detailed Index with which it is supplied.

I take this opportunity of thanking the many friends from whom I have received sympathy and encouragement in the past. And if those who have asked me, "What is Bibliography?" have thought me stupid for not being able to explain the subject in two words, I think, if ever they have the curiosity to glance at this work, they will allow that the task was a hard one, and will forgive me!

I wish also to thank Mr. J. Y. MacAlister, Hon. Secretary of the Library Association, Mr. Basil Soulsby, of the British Museum, Mr. J. R. Boosé, Librarian Royal Colonial Institute, and M. Paul Otlet, Hon. Secretary of the Institut International de Bibliographie, for permission to re-print certain of the papers appearing in this book.

Finally, I would like to thank the members of the staff of the "Library Bureau" on whom the task of revision of proofs has fallen, for the cordial and able assistance I have received in this and all other details connected with the issue of the work.

### Note.

Although the papers which I have already printed, or reprinted, in the past (and now include in this volume) have been written at considerable intervals, I believe that the line of argument will be found to be consistent throughout. In order, however, to be on the safe side, I give below a chronological list of the papers referred to, in order that the reader may judge of the sequence of thought, if desirous.

Read

- Sept., 1890. 1. An introduction to the Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue. *London, 1891.* 8°.
- May, 1891. 2. A plea for Annual Lists of State-Papers and Annual Reviews of State-Papers as being essential preliminaries to State-Paper Catalogues. *London, 1892.* 8°.
- (1893). 3. Imperial Federation Series of Colonial State-Paper Catalogues. No. 1.—Cape Colony. *London, 1893.* 8°.
- In Illustration of the theory of the subject.*
- (1893). 4. Catalogue of Official Reports relating to India, issued as English Parliamentary Papers . . . during the year 1892. *London, 1893.* 8°.
- In Illustration of the theory of the subject.*
- Feb., 1893. 5. Bibliography Backwards. *Not printed before.*

- Feb., 1893. 6. The Battle of Bibliography. A Paper in advocacy of Compulsory National Book-Registration and Printed Periodical Class-Registers, forming Special Bibliographies. *London, 1893.* 8°.
- Sept., 1894. 7. The Bibliography of the Future. A Paper reviewing the existing condition of National and International Bibliography: with suggested Reforms. *London, 1894.* fol.
- Sept. 1894. 8. Memorandum relative to the need for Special Bibliographic Societies. With an Appendix on the Division of the Stream of Literature. *London, 1894.* fol.  
*In illustration of the "Bibliography of the Future."*
- July, 1895. 9. The Literature of Geography: How shall it be recorded? [*London, 1896.*] 8°.  
*Reprinted from the Report of the Sixth International Geographical Congress, London, 1895.*
- Sept., 1895. 10. The Bibliography of Periodical Literature. *London, 1896.* 8°.
1895. 11. Remarks addressed to the Members of the Library Assistants' Association, Sept. 18, 1895. *London, 1895.* 8°.
1895. 12. Occasional Letters, Illustrative of certain Theories of Bibliography, addressed to the Daily Press (1891, &c.) . . . With Notes and Explanations. *London, 1895, &c.* 8°.
1895. 13. Co-operative Bibliography . . . Principles of Publication, &c. *London, 1895.* fol.

*Nos. 1, 2, 5, 6, 7 and 10 were Papers read before the Library Association (G. B. & I.), and (excepting 5) are reprinted from "The Library."*

### Supplementary Memorandum.

My original intention was to write an introductory chapter, giving a general review of Bibliography as a Science in as popular manner as possible.

I was, however, deterred from so doing by the fact that a general review, to be worth anything, would have taken far more time than I could afford to spare; and I did not think that the results would compensate for further delay in the issue of the work. Furthermore, the technicalities of Bibliography are such that a glance at the contents of the several chapters and sections of the work will probably convey much more to the reader than any number of general introductions, and do so in a more interesting manner by actual illustration of the subject. I had also originally wished that each of the introductory chapters should partake of the character of a monograph. I have not been able to adhere closely to my desire; but the opening chapters will frequently be found to repeat the same information, with necessary qualifications, so as to render them very greatly independent of one another.

Without taxing the patience of the reader further, I will therefore only say that the work commences with the very earliest stages in the life-history of a book—the stages of compilation and publication; and continues to deal with all those divisions of the subject which have most chiefly attracted my attention in recent years.

From the nature of my work, it is evident that I have been obliged to devote myself very greatly to matters of Bibliographical *Reform*. This, and the limits of time and space, have prevented me from giving the recognition which is due to the many past and present bibliographical efforts and results throughout the world which claim our admiration. And nowhere is my regret greater than in regard to Bibliographical work undertaken in America, France and Germany.

For the rest, I can but repeat that the work has been written under considerable difficulties, but I have done my best to deal honestly by a difficult question, and now offer the results as my contribution towards the many efforts of my brother librarians.



SECTION I.

—

**Introductory Chapters.**



## CHAPTER I.

# **An Introduction to the Theories of Compilation and Publication.**

### TABLE OF CONTENTS.

#### **The Value of Form in Publication.**

##### **Connection between *Form of Publication* and Classification.**

(1) Choice and Arrangement of Subjects in volumes.

(2) Association of Volumes in Series.

(3) Division of Volumes into Sections.

What is a Book ?

(4) The Title-page.

(5) Interior Details.

(6) The Learned Societies.

(7) Official Literature.

(8) Some Functions of Bibliography.

THE following essay does not assume that the principles here referred to are new discoveries, nor does it in any way pretend, in these limits, to give a full description of the subject.

What is assumed is, that, while a large number of works are, consciously or unconsciously, issued in correct form, a very large number are also issued in a wrong form ; and this is probably due to the fact that the subject has not yet received due prominence as a distinct stage in Bibliography, demanding special study and consideration, on account of its important influence, for good or for evil, on subsequent cataloguing, classifying, and indexing of Books or sections of Books.

#### **The Value of Form of Publication.**

At first sight, it may appear to some a mere matter of pedantry to use the word "Theory" in connection with the "Compilation" and "Publication" of a work. But a moment's reflection will show that it is a reasonable application of the word ; for no one will readily assert that the writing and issue



of millions of Books does, or could, continue, regardless of certain principles in connection with the arrangement of printed matter, and the form in which works are eventually published.

But while each author, consciously or unconsciously, pursues some method in regard to the final arrangement of his work, and while Printers and Publishers are ever alive to the necessity for attention to certain details calculated to increase the use, and aid the circulation of their publications, it is no exaggeration to say that a large mass of Literature appears every year which, through the neglect of certain necessary principles and details, raises gratuitous obstacles in the path of research, and defies the best efforts of librarians to remedy the evil. In using the term "Publishers," however, it is only fair to observe that the word is used in its larger sense, and that the reference is chiefly to Learned Societies and Government Printing Establishments, who are the worst offenders in the matter.

Of course, in many instances, extra precautions in matters of publication involve extra expense, in which case it is a private question for author and publisher to decide between themselves.

But, in the majority of instances, it is rather a matter of ignorance or oversight. There has not been sufficient scientific study of the subject, and men have not yet realised the full necessity for absolute co-operation between the Author, Printer, Publisher, *and* Librarian—in spite of the fact that any one of them can mar, and often ruin, the work of the others.

And of these, it is the Librarian and Bibliographer who has the most right to complain, and to insist on consideration; for it is he who is the responsible representative between the book and the public. *He* it is who, in common with the writer for the Press, has to glean information at a moment's notice—to say where it can be found, and of what nature it is. On him devolves the responsibility of answering at a moment's notice, or of enabling others to answer for themselves, all questions of research; and, if he fail to do so, it is he who is blamed.

It does not require much experience or imagination to know that the whole world, visible and invisible, exists in connection with Law and Order, implying a certain classification of all that is or HAS BEEN.

Nor does it require much experience to know that the mind of man can only imperfectly discern the order that exists; and that the difficulties of logical perception are increased (i.) by the fact of the perpetual natural intermingling of all that man is conscious

of; and (ii.) by the fact that man himself adds to his own difficulties by un-naturally confusing the different parts of existence one with another.

But while these difficulties are great, they are not altogether insuperable.

For where man cannot discern in detail the absolute classifications which exist, in spite of apparent disorder on the surface, he can discern enough to enable him to progress, by means of assigning certain arbitrary classifications of his own, supplementary to those which are, more or less, natural and self-evident.

But his progress is dependent on two important conditions:

(1) The extent to which men can agree among themselves as to the order of existence which they will recognize.

(2) The extent to which men will consistently adhere to those classifications in the events of life, and more especially in the *Printed Record* of their thoughts and investigations.

The first condition centres round the word "Classification," and is treated of in a separate chapter.

The second condition, *viz.*, the consistent recognition of, and adherence to that Classification, belongs to the present chapter as part of the Theory of Compilation.

Any consideration of the question will naturally turn on the following points:—

- (1) Arrangement of Subjects in Volumes.
- (2) The Association of Volumes in Series.
- (3) Arrangement of Volumes in Sections.
- (4) The Supply of Major and Minor Titles.
- (5) The Supply of the final fittings of a Work (Indexes, Tables of Contents, &c.)

### Arrangement of Subjects in Volumes.

The slightest reflection will show the necessity for judicious care in the choice of subjects on the part of one who is about to write a book. A writer should not combine subjects which are not kindred to one another in the same work—for the simple reason that nobody will expect to find them combined in the same volume, and they are thus likely to be buried for ever; while if the presence of the interloping subject is made known by means of cross-references in Catalogues, this is only at the expense of much care and trouble, which Librarians may not always be able to bestow. Moreover, to saddle one work with a number of others of

foreign nature is to create serious inconvenience to students, and the result is similar to men's experience in Mexico, where it is the custom to shackle the witness to the murderer, to await the trial, with the result that, as a rule, neither of them are heard of to trouble the judge!

It is true that at times it is impossible (for various reasons) to avoid combining subjects foreign to, or distantly connected with, one another; while at other times the issue of collected works on unconnected subjects (such as appear in the general Magazines) is done *intentionally*. But these cases are instances to be forgiven; and in the latter case, the evil is not so great where (as with Encyclopædias) Magazines are intentionally and avowedly of a *general* character,<sup>1</sup> for this is then expected, and men conduct their researches accordingly.

The whole question of *Collected Literature* has, however, been treated of, at considerable length, in other parts of this work, so it will be better to pass on to the next part of our subject, after reminding the reader that Literature is "*collected*" in the form of Encyclopædias, Journals, &c., of Learned Societies, and in Independent Magazines, and other periodicals.

### Association of Volumes in Series.

The Association of Volumes in Series is a most interesting subject to follow up. We read that Carlyle pronounced "the famous series of Bohn's Libraries" to be "the usefulest thing I know"—a series which was lately reported to have reached 748 volumes, to be had complete for £160.

A like eulogy has been bestowed on Baron Tauchnitz for the services he has rendered to the reading public. And Mr. Stead's last plan of issuing works in penny volumes, and *re-grouping* them in sixpenny volumes, is an interesting instance of the possibilities of the Series.

But allusion is here made to the "Series," chiefly with a view of drawing attention to the sterner technical interests involved. Let it be said at once that Series give Librarians a world of trouble, and they hate them in consequence, on account of the trouble involved in maintaining their completeness, and in cataloguing their parts. But the labour involved might be greatly

---

<sup>1</sup> General Magazines might often, nevertheless, with advantage, resolve themselves into sections.

diminished if the Learned Societies and Governments, who are the greatest offenders, bestowed more care upon the subject, which they at last show signs of doing. In **India**, the words of a subsequent editor of the "*Palæontologia Indica*" Series confirm the statement in regard to that series, in stating that

"When the *Palæontologia Indica* was begun, no rule seems to have been fixed as to what should constitute a series. A change of authors, or a very partial change of subject, was considered sufficient for a change of series," &c.

Indian Official Documents have given especial trouble in the matter. Any Librarian who may have had to catalogue the various series of Archæological Survey Reports issued, must often have bewailed the fact.

The Bombay Selections from the Records are chiefly remarkable for the questions which arise concerning Sectional Titles, Cross-References, and *Dates of Incorporation*.

(As to this latter point, it is very irritating to have (?) to incorporate a Sectional Report under the date of the volume containing it, when the Report was actually written ten years previously, and its chief interest was connected with another year).

The difficulties experienced with the Indian Series of Selections from the Records are detailed in a footnote.<sup>1</sup>

If India furnishes us with examples of Series presenting difficulties, it also affords striking examples of well-ordered systems of Publication. Indeed, in regard to Official Literature, there is no system of publication under any Government which surpasses India, either in the extreme simplicity of its full series of Documents taken as a whole, or in the attention to perspicuity and type arrangement.

Sir William Hunter's "*Imperial Gazetteer of India*," illus-

<sup>1</sup> The Indian Government has raised difficulties both for itself and for all Librarians in the past and present, by the system pursued of issuing large series of Sections from the Records which (1) are not supplied with designations which clearly distinguish one series from its predecessors or successors: (2) which include a number of other series—wheels within wheels.

Thus, whereas each series should contain only *separate works* which could be bound up as Nos. 1-10, 10-20, &c.—if the volumes were so bound up, it would separate the Series of Annual Administration Reports. Thus, whichever way you bind, you separate anew, or sanction the existing separation of, *Series of Periodical Reports*.

It is just as if the English Publishers had agreed to publish all the leading Magazines as one huge series of *Selections from the Magazines*.

While one man, who wanted a single *Nineteenth Century*, might ask for Nos. 20, 27, 35 of the series, another, impatient of all such gratuitous hieroglyphics, would ask for the Magazine by name and year.

Thus you could never bind volumes one way without causing *queries* in case of applications from the other point of view.

trates more than one principle under review. As Editor he sketched out the system of compilation, submitting a plan (pp. 144) for a Statistical Survey and an Imperial Gazetteer of India. (Cal. 1870, fol.)

Subsequently, "with a view to securing uniformity in the materials," he drew up six series of leading questions, which were circulated to the Provincial Governments under the title of "Heads of Information required for the Imperial Gazetteer." The result was a series of about 100 *Printed Volumes* aggregating 36,000 pages, which were then summarised in the Gazetteer of 9 volumes and subsequently 13 volumes (2nd edition).

Vol. 4 (1881, 8<sup>o</sup>) of the 1st Edition, contained the Article "India" as pp. 129—644.

This Article, or small book, was expanded into a large book (pp. 568), remodelled into chapters, and supplied with an Index, under title, "The Indian Empire," &c., (Trübner's Oriental Series), London, 1882, 8<sup>o</sup>. In 1886, the same work appears again in a work of 747 pages, as Volume 6 of the Second Edition of the Gazetteer.

Subsequently, in 1893, the same work was re-issued as a revised *Third* edition, by Messrs. Allen & Co., consisting of 852 pages.

In the year 1887, also, an Index to the 13 volumes of the Second Edition of the Gazetteer was issued in a *separate* volume (Volume 14), thus illustrating another principle of publication.

Here then, apart from the last mentioned fact, we witness the several processes of **Careful Sectional Arrangement**. The **condensation of information, and the subsequent expansion of the parts** by utilising the section so as to extract it as a separate volume for use in two different series and for ultimate use as quite an independent volume.

In the world of Publication, as elsewhere, there are ever two great forces at work—the forces of Centralisation and Decentralisation, of Collection and Dispersal, of Union and Separation.

In the issue of the publication known as "Epigraphia Indica," by the Indian Government, we see a notable instance of the **systematic periodical centralisation of knowledge**.

That it was greatly needed, and not less appreciated, is evident from the following quotations :—

"Hitherto, the student of Indian Inscriptions had to search for the Records, as yet published in the pages of various learned Periodicals of India and Europe, besides the volumes of the Archæological

Survey, and other independent works. The foundation of a new quarterly, exclusively devoted to Epigraphy, is sure to meet with a very warm reception, therefore, on the part of all students of Indian History."—(Prof. J. Jolly, in *Trübner's Record*).

"L'épigraphie indienne aura ainsi son *Ephemeris* avant d'avoir son *Corpus*. Si. M. Burgess arrive de cette manière à centraliser, ne fût-ce que dans une certaine mesure, les travaux épigraphiques actuellement éparpillés dans une infinité de recueils, dont plusieurs sont des publications locales absolument inaccessibles en Europe, il aura rendu une fois de plus un service inestimable aux études indiennes."—(*Revue de l'Histoire des Religions*.)

Commencing with January, 1894, a further step towards centralisation was taken when we find *Epigraphia Indica* published in quarto at more frequent intervals, "with the view of amalgamating Dr. Burgess' *Epigraphia Indica* with the *Indian Antiquary*, and of thus centralising researches relating to the ancient history of the country."

The steps taken to facilitate purchase are also to be noted, *i.e.*, the publication of the work at Calcutta, Bombay, London, New York, Chicago, Leipzig, Paris, Berlin, Vienna.

Reference is made elsewhere to the evils which result from the want of emphasizing the existence of the Separate Series of Indian, Colonial, English, Irish, Scotch, and Welsh Documents contained in the Annual Sets of English Sessional Papers.

The United States Documents exhibit instances of gratuitously buried Series in the case of the Rebellion Records, the occasional Biographical Sketches of deceased Members of Senate and Congress, and in the case of the splendid scientific works which are shoulder to shoulder with ordinary administrative Reports.

In English Literature, among the most noticeable Series are the Publications of the Record Office, and the Challenger Expedition Reports. The works of the Palæontographical Society attract special attention. In French Literature, the "Collection de Documents inédits sur l'histoire de France" merit special attention, and the large series of "Inventaires Sommaires." But, perhaps, the most interesting example of a well-organised plan of operations for compilation and publication was that formulated in connection with Napoleon's Egyptian Expedition. And the resulting work illustrates other principles as well.

One of the frequent sources of trouble to the student is the difficulty experienced in discovering the idea and arrangement of a work, and in getting a bird's eye view of it (a difficulty very frequently met with in consulting Bibliographies).

This is especially the case in long series of works, where the arrangement extends, in varied order, through several volumes.

A separate Memorandum or Key, of a handy size, may often, therefore, be of great use, such as we find under title, "A Bibliographical Account and Collation of La Description de l'Egypte, &c." (1838, 8°), in connection with the work of Napoleon's Expedition.

A copy of this magnificent work being purchased by the Library of the London Institution in 1837-38, the Managers taking a liberal view of the situation, resolved that the Librarians should compile a complete analysis of the arrangement of the work, for the benefit of their public. This analysis constitutes what may be equally styled a *Table of Contents*, or a *Collected-Works Catalogue*, occupying seventy-six pages of print.

As such it also illustrates the value of the Section and Sub-Section, the value of full description Titles; and when we remember that the original work was the result of a splendidly organised body of one hundred French *Savants*, attached to Napoleon's Egyptian Expedition, "the first of the kind which ever accompanied an invading army"; that the General-in-Chief "invited the artists and authors to meet together, for consulting upon the means which appeared to them the most proper for imparting to the work that degree of perfection which should ensure its success"; that "the French Government directed that the memoirs, charts, drawings, and all observations and materials . . . should be consolidated into one grand and comprehensive work . . . and all those persons who had co-operated in the formation of this collection, were invited to recommend what particular drawings and memoirs should be inserted in the publication; and that the direction of the whole was referred to a Commission of eight individuals, nominated by the Minister of the Interior, from a Return made by a general assembly of all the authors; by whom also were named the members of their body who should compose the Preliminary Discourse—when we read these words, we almost clap our hands in our admiration of the splendid attention to the preliminary details of Bibliography, here exhibited, and so repeatedly exhibited elsewhere by the French Race.

In **German** Literature, the "*Monumenta Germaniæ Historica*" is, perhaps as intricate (though perfectly arranged) a Series as exists, as regards the presence of *Series within Series within Series*.

In **Italy**, the Publications of the "R. Accademia dei Lincei" at Rome, afford another instance of a Series by no means simply constituted.

Of Organised *Systems of Compilation and Publication* on a largescale, the recently printed Schedule, issued by a "Committee of the British Association for the advancement of Science, appointed to organise an Ethnographical Survey of the United Kingdom," is an instance.

The "Handbook of Folk-lore" (published by Nutt), with its series of questions and directions for the collection of information, is another example of directions relating to compilation.

Dr. Mill's projected scheme for a Geographical Survey and Record of the United Kingdom may be quoted as another example of an elaborate system of Publication.

Having specified instances of notable series, it remains to learn our lesson. What we must notice is this :

(1) That while series are a protection and an advertisement to the works they include, they are apt also to hide them altogether, for the serial Title overshadows the individual Title. They also increase the difficulty of purchasing a work separately.

(2) That while there are many advantages to be derived from the proper classification of kindred works under a common title, the Constitution of Series with long Serial Titles and Sub-Titles *and* Sub-Titles ! greatly increases the difficulties of making Cross-References, and detracts from the perspicuity of the Catalogue, *e.g.*,

"Bureau of Education. Circular of Information, No. 2, 1893. Contributions to American Educational History, Edited by H. B. Adams, No. 14. The History of Education in Connecticut. By B. C. Steiner. (*Wash.*, 1893, 8°)."

We next proceed to consider

### The Value of the Section in the Arrangement of a Volume.

There are few points connected with Compilation and Publication which are more interesting, and none are of greater importance than the *Sectional* treatment of a work.

Its value consists—

- (a) In assisting the mind and eye in grasping the nature and contents of an individual work without necessary reference to other works.
- (b) In enabling you to refer by transverse reading from book to book, with the certainty of finding certain subjects according to their relative importance, dealt with in separate horizontal sections.



- (c) In rendering it possible to assign definite descriptive titles which facilitate the process of marking references to the existing sections from Catalogues and Indexes.
- (d) In enabling you to separate as Appendices those Monographs, which while necessary for supplementary illustration, would interfere with the continuity of a work, if placed in the body of it.
- (e) In facilitating subsequent collection of parallel and kindred sections, which can thus be amalgamated and re-bound in *sectional* volumes.
- (f) In enabling you to easily extract or reprint individual Sectional Articles as separate Book-pamphlets or books.

It should be unnecessary to refer to the first requisite of *perspicuity* in a work, were it not that so many works have been spoilt, or reduced in value for the student, through neglect of attention to the *section*.

A noticeable instance of the recognition of, and attention to, principles of publication occurs in the recent issue of **Mr. Gladstone's edition of Bishop Butler's Works**.

The special purpose of the edition is "to give readier access to the substance and meaning" of Butler's Works.

The means adopted are described as follows :—

- (1) The *Analogy*, and the other works with slight exceptions, have been broken into sections.
- (2) Every section has been supplied with a heading, intended to assist the eye, and, as far as may be, the mind of the reader, by an indication of its contents.
- (3) Indexes to each volume have been provided, &c.
- (4) An Appendix has been added to Vol. II., &c.

Referring, later, to the value of the Section, Mr. Gladstone asks :—"Without Sectional Divisions, would not our manipulation of the ancient philosophers be hopelessly embarrassed?"

The responsibility of authors in this respect is referred to by Mr. Gladstone in the words :—

"It would have been well if the modesty of Butler had allowed him to anticipate that his leading productions would become classics in the philosophical theology of his country, and if he had accordingly furnished them with all facilities for perusal in the mode and form which he was, of all men, by far the best fitted to determine."

And allusion is also subsequently made to the need of "*an easily available power of reference from part to part of works*."

The value of the Section may be further illustrated if we take any popular subject as an example.

The future of Literary study is greatly dependent on Special Libraries or Sections of Libraries, in which *all* the works on particular Subject-Groups are to be found.

Instead of following the principle of *first making a muddle, and then indexing it*, Scholars (Students of Educational questions), if they had their way, would demand that their material should be kept separate from other Literature.

If such a demand were impossible to satisfy, they would demand that all printed thought on Education should be printed in separate Sections, so that they would find, in the general works of all the several *branches* of learning, parallel sections, on the—

I. Education from the point of view of Philosophy ;

"	"	Religion ;
"	"	Sociology ;
"	"	Philology ;
"	"	the Natural Sciences ;
"	"	the Useful Arts ;
"	"	the Fine Arts ;
"	"	Literature ;
"	"	History ;
"	"	Geography ;

and thus be able to study the question by Countries :—

Education in G.B.I. ;

"	"	America ;
"	"	France ;
"	"	Germany ;
&c.	&c.	&c. ;

and subsequently by Ages, Sexes, and Occupations.

And, in accordance with the existence of good or bad systems of publications, so would their expectations be fulfilled or disappointed.

Needless to say, owing to existing systems of Compilation and Publication (not necessarily always avoidable), in a large number of instances, they would find their **information entangled together with information of all other kinds**, and thus would be obliged to purchase, or obtain, a considerable number of works, of which the greater number of pages referred to other subjects. This inconvenience and **Waste of Material** is especially noticeable in the lists of accessions to *Special* Libraries, which are often credited with regular Donations of Journals of Societies

and other Magazines, 80 per cent. of the contents of which have in probability no direct bearing on the interests of the particular library.

That the receipt of such works is unappreciated, or absolute waste, is not asserted. But in days when the object of most Librarians is not to accumulate what does not immediately concern the special objects of each library; the increase of long series of works for the sake of a few isolated monographs, which might often have been published in separate parts and sections, is to be deplored. And it is positively startling to think of the waste of costly *General Periodicals* which would be required by any special library which wished to have a complete collection of works on its subject.

Indian Official Documents will be found to illustrate the subject very clearly.

Perhaps in a greater degree than in any other country, Indian Official Reports include an extraordinary amount of valuable and interesting information relating to History, Archæology, Art, Botany, Folk-Lore, Geography, Geology, Mineralogy, Languages, Mythology, Religion, Zoology. Such material lies scattered in a thousand different directions, woven into certain series of ordinary "Administration" reports.

In many instances the recorders of that information, thinking only of their particular works as *isolated* works, and ignoring the difficulties of subsequent students in hearing of the existence of, and in "getting at" their information, worked it into the ordinary narrative columns, in such a manner as to doom it to a life-long burial. Others have shown more care, and have arranged their special materials in such a manner (either in separate Appendices, Chapters, or Sections) as to give the greatest assistance to the Librarian and Student of future years.

Of course, such information is often fragmentary, inaccurate, theoretical or "borrowed"; and has been, in most instances, perhaps, carefully surveyed and reproduced in revised monograph form; but there are few who have an intimate knowledge of Indian Official Literature who will not record their opinion that this has only been subsequently accomplished at a cost of immense labour, and that much information recorded is, and always will be, practically lost to mankind.

Again, if we turn our thoughts again to India, we shall see a striking example of the possibilities which might result from a due appreciation of, and careful attention to, the principle of Compilation and Publication.

The Indian Government has in the past made many and great attempts to record the important historical and economical facts of India on a systematic basis, the invaluable "Gazetteer," edited by Sir William Hunter, being one of the final results.

Now (without in the least degree presuming that the following subjects include all that should be known, or are all suitable sections) let us suppose that in each district a "Gazetteer" was compiled upon the following principles:—

	DISTRICT.	PROVINCE.	INDIA.
Chap. 1.	Geography .. .. .	Geography.	Geography.
„ 2.	History .. .. .	History.	History.
„ 3.	Languages .. .. .	Languages.	Languages.
„ 4.	Religions .. .. .	R.	R.
„ 5.	Education .. .. .	E.	E.
„ 5.	Agriculture .. .. .	A.	A.
„ 6.	Means of Communication ..	M.	M.
„ 7.	Trade .. .. .	T.	T.
„ 8.	Arts and Manufactures ..	A.	A.
„ 9.	Mines and Minerals .. ..	M.	M.
„ 10.	Geology .. .. .	G.	G.
„ 11.	Meteorology .. .. .	M.	M.
„ 12.	Zoology .. .. .	Z.	Z.
„ 13.	Botany .. .. .	B.	B.
„ 14.	Vital Statistics.. .. .	V. S.	V. S.

By pursuing a careful system of Compilation, and keeping the several Sections separate, the same Record which serves for the District, serves equally not only as a Record for the Provinces, and finally as a Record for the whole of India (and for the world, if extended), but (which is the point I wish to emphasise), serves also as a Record of a universal *Subject Group*, unfettered by association with other foreign subjects. Thus, if the Indian Government, having arranged for the Compilation of an Imperial Gazetteer on

the basis of the District, had, in the first instance, given orders for the extra printing of 500 copies of each District and Provincial Gazetteer—by binding these together at head-quarters, with special title-pages, the same material would have afforded the Indian Government a complete series of fourteen Imperial Monographs on the Geography, History, Languages, &c., of India.

Then the Philologist, both in India and all over the world, could have, *and would have*, purchased his particular Monograph; the Geographers, Zoologists, &c., &c., would have purchased theirs; and they would all have their information in as complete and handy a form as was possible, without having to travel to Central Libraries, and send for barrow-loads of Gazetteers, and spend hours in wading through their contents.

That such Monographs would all be *small* ones is not asserted: indeed, some would swell into several volumes. But, at least, many would be small: all would be complete, and most of them handy and purchaseable at a reasonable price; and (which is a special fact to note) all would have their special title-pages and indexes, which would enable proper reference to be made to them in Catalogues and Indexes; and, if necessary, all could be *summarised* at a small cost and labour.

We see a good instance of the recognised value of the Section in Mr. J. Forbes Watson's work, entitled, "The Industrial Survey of India, published in 1872, where we find (as Appendices to the First Part):—

App. A.—"Memorandum on the extension of the knowlege of Indian Manufactures and Indian Art in Decoration. (Signed) J. F. Watson.

App. B.—"A Description of the Indian Ports and Anchorages. By Tre-lawney Saunders . . . and Commander A. Dundas Taylor. Pp. 111—126.

App. C.—"Caravan Routes and Passes leading from India into the Interior of Asia. (*In the Press.*)"

The most recent instance (illustrating the *Section* as well as the *Series*) may be seen in the arrangement of "Lloyd's Natural History," which reminds me of a want sorely felt by boy-lovers of Natural History, who would, in my day, have given a *great* deal to have been able to purchase really good, Illustrated Sheets of Birds' Eggs, Butterflies, and Fossils, without having to buy expensive and bulky letter-press as well. If the Publishers had supplied the *Illustrations*, Nature herself would have supplied the letter-press.

### What is a Book?

Allusion has been made to the advantage of the Section (Part, Chapter, Paragraph) in enabling authors (where they will) to give Sectional Titles, which may be made use of in Catalogues and Indexes. This facility and power, however, raises an important question as to *What is a Book?* And it is a question demanding extreme care on the part of Cataloguers, lest in making Titles to *Sections*, we allow the possibility of confusion in a Catalogue between the *Title of a Book*, which has been issued separately, and the *Title of a Section* which the student may search for in the book-shops for all ages without being able to find it, because it has never been published separately.

The value of the Section will never be fully realised, except by attention to the number of books which were once Sections. Were they of less value *as* Sections? No; only they were less accessible. In course of reprinting many Sections are enlarged, but not always.

The "Encyclopædia Britannica" affords a bountiful supply of illustrations. Among my notes I find the following:—

(1) "War: reproduced with amendments from the 'Encyclopædia Britannica.' By Colonel J. F. Maurice."

I find also (2) a "Memoir of the Life and Works of Harvey"; (3) a work on Dürer, by Sidney Colvin; and (4) "A Short History of Syriac Literature. By the late W. Wright."

I have alluded elsewhere to the article, "Persia," in the "Encyclopædia," as consisting of some hundred pages. I have also referred to two noticeable examples—G. W. Forrest's "The Administration of Warren Hastings," and Sir William Hunter's work on India, originally an article in his "Gazetteer." The special copies of selected headings in the Catalogue of the Bibliothèque Nationale, or the British Museum, are other instances; and perhaps the most interesting example I know of, is a Greek translation of Chapter II. (Home Power) of Smiles's "Character," which the head-master at the High School at Limassol, Cyprus, asked permission to translate.

These are instances of a reversion of the principle of "Collection." The following is an instance (also of the Section) of the Sections being issued separately and then collected; *i.e.*, we read in the "Statistical Register" (New South Wales) for 1892, that "The ten parts which this volume comprises have already been issued separately, and now appear in a collective form, with a General Index."

In the preface to "Six centuries of Work and Wages," Mr. J. E. Thorold Rogers illustrates the value of the Section in the following words :

"Since I published, nearly eighteen years ago, the first two volumes of my history of Agriculture and Prices, I have been frequently urged to extract and exhibit those parts of my researches which illustrate the history of Labour and Wages."

But it is not only in Encyclopædias and ordinary works that we find Books existing *incognito* ; for we see the same principle (more rarely, of course) in the Newspaper. The "Annual Summaries," reprinted from The "*Times*," afford an illustration. And the following are only two of many examples which must occur to the reader :

"Letters from Queensland. By The '*Times*' Special Correspondent, Reprinted from The '*Times*,' of December, 1892 ; January and February, 1893."

"East and West. Being Papers reprinted from the '*Daily Telegraph*' and other sources. By Sir Edwin Arnold."

There is a temptation to try and define a "Book" from a bibliographical aspect in the following words :

"Any information which, being contained as a separate section in a particular work would be reasonably worthy of separate issue on its own merits, is already, from a Bibliographical point of view (subject to certain obvious limitations) a Book."

But, in reality, it is misleading to lay any stress on such a definition (beyond imbibing the principle), since the value of any Book-Sections must be as comparative as the value of the books they are contained in.

### Additional Memorandum.

I will conclude by appending a Memorandum on the subject which may be of use. The fact that a short chapter contained in a Book is often of far greater value than a bulky volume, is one of those circumstances, due to the inequalities of human life, which must ever fret the Student and the Librarian.

By careful examination of the Sections of Books, Librarians can make good the evil to a great extent, by giving cross-references from or to the Sections as if they were *separate* Books.

But while this practice may be pursued to a limited extent, according to circumstances, it is a dangerous one, even if it were financially and practically possible, to pursue in Catalogues, which

are ostensibly Catalogues of separate books; for the entries of *sections* may easily be mistaken for separate books; and much labour be spent in sending for them, or endeavouring to trace their existence, unless the facts are clearly stated; and, for the sake of brevity many Librarians might be tempted to omit the necessary statements; while for want of time, many students might quote the Title of a Section as the Title of a Book, thus repeating the confusion.

But, as a matter of fact, the insertion, in Catalogues of Separate Books, of titles of sections of books, is not a practical measure *on a large scale*; because the sectional notices would swamp the *bond-fide* entries of books, and increase the labour of discovering the actual books tenfold.

Nevertheless, the importance of the *chapter*, in a large number of works, is so great that it is absolutely necessary to record its existence *somewhere*, in a systematic manner, so that all the works of the year having considerable sectional chapters shall be examined, with a view to the cataloguing or indexing of those chapters.

In so doing, it would be necessary to include *again* any notices of the minority of Sectional Titles, which had, for special reasons, been granted a place in Author Catalogues as Separate Books.

### Title-Page.

The Title-page is a subject which requires very delicate handling, and I regret to have to treat it hastily. The *want* of Titles is a common evil, but it is also possible to have too many; indeed, there are too many in this particular work, except for the fact that they are inserted on purpose to show that, because a work is *collected*, it should not lose its part dignity as a *book*. This was, again, one of the reasons why some were originally *reprinted*; because, as articles in a Magazine, they were likely to be classed as "*Ephemeral*," which was not my intention in writing them!

The *first* necessity of a Book is that it shall have a Title-page.

The *second* essential is that, unless the work be one of fancy, the Title shall describe the contents of the work faithfully and accurately. The word faithfully is, perhaps, better than "*comprehensively*," because it gives due licence for *brevity*, when brevity is necessary. It should be possible both to identify, to *classify*, and to *index* a work from its Title-page alone, although



a good bibliographer would always prefer to see the book itself, if he could. The Title must therefore, if possible, convey the leading idea of the work, in order that those who cannot consult the work itself may know to what it relates.

The *third* necessity of a Book is that, if it be divided into Sections or Chapters, which are at all considerable, each Section shall have an intelligible *Title*, by which it can be referred to.

Mr. J. W. McCrindle, in his "Ancient India (iv.)," draws attention to an instance of a *misleading* Title in the case of Ptolemy's Geography:—

"From its title, Γεωγραφικὴ Τέχνη, *An Outline of Geography*, we might be led to infer that it was a general treatise on the subject, like the comprehensive work of Strabo; but, in reality, it treats almost exclusively of Mathematical, or what may be called Cosinical, Geography."

That vagueness of title has its advantages to *some one* may often be proved in an amusing manner. J. S. Mill tells us that the popularity of M. de Tocqueville's work, "*Democracy in America*," and its wide circulation among English country gentlemen, was due to a misconception, originated by Sir Robert Peel, that the author was one of the pillars of Conservatism, and the work a definite demolition of America and Democracy, whereas the reverse was the case. Thus an error did more good than the truth would have done.

To deal with the subject of the Title-page thoroughly it would be necessary to go into a great many details. Perspicuity is an essential quality of Title-pages, a matter so dependent on Type. If different gradations of type be used at all, they should represent evolution and comparative importance of idea. This is frequently not the case. In the instance of Congress 1, Sess. 2, Vol. 1, Pt. 2, the Type of Congress 1 should be blackest; and that of Pt. 2 smallest and lightest. In many similar cases, the reverse is found, so that by making the smallest factor the most significant, it catches your eye first, and you have to read backwards!

In **Official Documents** the imprint is of much consequence. As a rule, Governments give you all the information you do not want, and withhold what is really necessary. It is immaterial to everybody to know (on the Title-page) that a work was printed at the *Office of the Superintendent of Government Printing*, or to know his Christian name and surname, as is often given. All this obscures the Title-page and bothers the Cataloguer. All that he requires to know and to quote is that a work was *issued officially*.

*at a particular town, on a particular date, and this as briefly expressed as can be. Government Printer, Calcutta, 1896, is a specimen of the ideal imprint required.*

The nature of the imprint will often make all the difference whether a work is afterwards *lost* to view or not.

If an Official Document is claimed by a particular department, it will appear in the List of the publications of that Department. But if it be issued in a nondescript sort of way, sent into life as a stray straggler, the probability is that its existence will never be registered *anywhere*, or at least not where it may easily be found.

The *first* rule of Publication is that Official Documents should be printed and published and registered in the country responsible for their production.

Should they, from necessity, be actually issued in a "foreign" country, they should, nevertheless, be considered as published in the country to which they relate, and bear a corresponding imprint (provided that they are published "*on account*" of that country).

The importance of this rule will only be fully patent to those who, having experience of the number of official reports relating to India and the Colonies which have been, accidentally, so to speak, printed and published in London, are aware of the great risk of such works being totally lost to view; for a Report which is officially connected with one country, and which is issued in another, is, in a manner, the property of neither, and therefore will probably be registered in neither.

The further meaning of this is that a report relating to India, and published in London, is either published on behalf of the Indian Government, or the India Office. If the former, let it be shown in the imprint; if the latter, it should appear as a definite publication of the "India Office," whether on sale there or not.

Similarly, a Colonial Report, issued in London, is either published on behalf of—

- (a) A Colonial Government directly.
- (b) A Colonial Agent-General.
- (c) The Colonial Office.

And yet the real clue is probably omitted, while the names of the Queen's Printers' or the Stationery Office, appears on the imprint, neither of which facts are wished for, except as subsidiary items.

Before quitting this part of my subject, I must refer to the excellent plan initiated by the U.S.A. Government of inserting a page of "Library Catalogue Slips" in many of their Publica-

tions (being printed titles of Author, Subject and Series entries) ready for the librarian. They might, however, be compiled on a less pedantic plan. M. Otlet, of the Institut International de Bibliographie suggests that Publishers should note on the title-page, or somewhere, the number which each work would bear in the Dewey Decimal System. This is also worthy of very special consideration.

### Interior Details of a Work.

The Interior Details which it is important to notice, and which are so often overlooked, are of the following nature. A work should be provided with Table of Contents and Index. (In regard to Official Literature, ought we not to be more ready to recognise the fact that the Indexing of works of an Official nature is the function of Governments?)

The Table of Contents may often, with advantage, be repeated in alphabetical order, and should never be carried on in continuous sentences across the page, and should always refer to *double pages*—1-20.

When a work is complete, why not say so?

Instructions for binding are often omitted in very difficult cases. But these are details which must now be passed by. I have, as a matter of fact, referred to them fully in connection with Periodical Publications.

There is, however, an important development to notice in the Summaries, Abstracts, Précis, or Abridgments which are now so often appended to works. Lilly's "Four English Humourists of the Nineteenth Century" exhibits an instance. Voelcker's work on "Indian Agriculture" is, if my memory serves me right, another example.

### The Learned Societies.

I have already said enough about the Learned Societies elsewhere. Their Publications will always give the most trouble, on account of their *Collected* form, but they increase the difficulties of librarians and all students very greatly by their common neglect of the details of publication—and this, in spite of the fact that so many of them exist to "give . . . a more systematic direction to scientific inquiry!" Their system of burying long monographs in Periodicals is a very doubtful policy.

The United States National Museum sets a good example in always clearly defining the difference between its *Bulletin* and

*Proceedings*, which is a habit worthy of imitation. But the *Proceedings* are not a publication which the librarian likes, on account of the *Series within Series* arrangement.

If we follow the history of this *Series* backwards, we shall find—

(1) That the separate articles of the *Proceedings* are now published separately (as parts of the *Series*).

(2) That they are then collected into the *Serial Volume* entitled "*Proceedings*."

(3) Which volume was originally issued separately.

(4) And subsequently issued as part of the Smithsonian "*Miscellaneous Collections*" *Series*.

(5) Which was in turn one of several *Series* issued by the Smithsonian Institution.

This is an example of some of the bewildering cases which have to be dealt with. The main points, however, which I wish to urge upon the Learned Societies are :—

(1) That they should pay more special attention to defining the scope of particular Societies.

(2) That where possible they should restrict their publications in accordance with that scope.

(3) That they should, where possible, resolve themselves into sections which do not clash with or unnecessarily overlap those of other Societies.

(4) That they should print the titles of all articles in their *Journals* in a form suitable for immediate entry in *Catalogues*, and that such titles be printed also on separate slips for the benefit of a Central Bureau.

#### Official Literature.

I have already alluded to *Official Documents* in previous parts of this chapter. The subject of *Compilation and Publication of Official Documents* is one which must be studied by itself. In the "*Introduction to the Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue*," I have entered very fully into the matter.

Like the *Learned Societies' Publications*, *Official Documents* offend against all laws of order, in spite of the fact, repeatedly referred to, that they admit of the most perfect treatment, and are capable of being made more easily accessible than any other form of *Literature*.

I will now only refer to the subject further in respect to the

following points: The Completeness of National Series of Official Literature, i.e., the difficulty of maintaining Series of Official Documents intact.

A serious obstacle to the study of the history of *Official Administration* arises from—

(1) The dispersion of Official Records of a personal character.

(2) The existence of precautions necessary for preserving Confidential Documents for particular periods of time.

(3) The publication of Official Documents as General Literature, issued to the world through non-official channels.

As instances of (1) and (3) mention may be made of the *"History of the Indian Administration of Lord Ellenborough, in his correspondence with the Duke of Wellington. To which is prefixed . . . Lord Ellenborough's Letters to the Queen during that period. Edited by Lord Colchester. (R. Bentley and Son, London, 1874, 8°.)"*

Here we find a Series of Letters in the form of Despatches (some 450 pages), referring to the years 1841-1844, and containing important information relative to the official history of Indian Administration, published "without introduction or comment," according to the desire of "the late Earl of Ellenborough."

This, then, is an example of a work which would never *ordinarily* appear in a Catalogue of Indian Official Documents, because it was *not issued (technically) in an official form*; and thus, many a foreign student, or even English student, of India and Indian History might miss some of his most valuable information.

The principle of Selections of a Statesman's Official Letters and Minutes, &c., being afterwards published in connection with his biography, is one which cannot be called in question for a moment. In many instances, but for such an arrangement, the real man could never be known, if his fate depended on the appreciation of his colleagues, who, perhaps, differed from him, and would have candidly professed themselves biassed critics. But, what I wish to point out is that such methods of publication draw away the material which properly belongs to a Catalogue of Documents illustrating the *Official Administrative History* of a country, and that, therefore, Librarians should always be on the watch to re-fit them in their place by duplicate entries of the Titles in Catalogues of Official Documents.

Lord Metcalfe's Minutes, edited by Kaye, afford another

instance. Of Lord Metcalfe's Indian career, Kaye had previously stated that "the history of his public life . . . is to be found in his Council Minutes"; and adds that "a Collection of these Minutes would form one of the most valuable works on the subject of Indian Administration that could be given to the public."

And this must be the case with every Statesman and with every Governor whose appointment is not merely nominal. And in most cases, there is no reason why, at least those *Minutes* which are not confidential, should not be officially printed, on the retirement of every Governor in India and many of the Colonies; and not only the Official Minutes, but the Official Addresses, following the good example of the Government of Ceylon. Thus we should be able to acquaint ourselves with history before it is out of date!

India illustrates more than any other country the manner in which the results of Official experience, for want of Official outlets, is dispersed from its natural channel. To benefit by the valuable experience of many of our Indian Civil Servants, on subjects directly connected with the history of their official work, we have to trace their works in numberless magazines and other sources.

In many ways this is as it should be, and has its advantages. But it is necessary to warn students on the subject, as no Catalogue of Indian Documents, would be really complete except it succeeded in tracing and noting such stray materials.

If time permitted, the subject of *Law Reports* is one which requires investigation. Law reporting is properly a primary function of the State. If it is undertaken by the Lawyers, well and good; but private and semi-official modes of Law Reporting render it extremely hard for Librarians to know when they may, or may not, regard a Law Report as being officially recognized. This interferes with the completeness of Catalogues of Official Documents.

#### **Some Functions of Bibliography—(Re-arrangements of Material).**

One of the principles of Publication may be illustrated, with all reverence, from the Bible. Among the many marvellous characteristics of the Bible none have attracted attention so much as the variety of facts and features which it contains—facts and features which are so many-sided and far-reaching as to present fresh or varying aspects at every perusal.

And for these hundreds of years, millions of Sermons and Bible-Readings have been taking place; the majority aspiring to present, if possible, the whole, or at least a definite portion, of truth on a given subject.

A recent calculation (*vide* "*Daily Chronicle*," April 4, 1896) computes the number of sermons from pulpits within the British Isles alone, as 100,000 every Sunday! And how is this accomplished?

Where there is real study of the Bible, it is accomplished by the laborious task of personal comparison of scattered verses, at a cost of millions of references to Concordances, implying a further double reference to millions of verses. Of course, Commentaries and special theological works are greatly used. But—these (if they are to be of any value) have to be based upon the same laborious search—a search which busy men have not the time for. Moreover, many independent minds have an instinctive horror of Commentaries.

Here, then, is a real evil—a definite want to be supplied.

A Concordance is of great value, but if there be 500,000 references in a Concordance, it necessitates 500,000 (and more) turnings over of the leaves of the Bible before the verses can be found, and then, perhaps, they may not bear upon the subject according to expectations.

What then is the moral? The moral is that we should consult the Laws of Publication. And these dictate the expediency—amounting to necessity (for all who wish to study the Bible)—of reprinting collections of verses in the Bible which bear upon particular subjects.

Thus, there might be a reprint of verses bearing upon the Prophecies in the Old Testament, with the corresponding fulfillments in the New Testament.

There might be a reprint of all verses in the Old Testament which are quoted in the New Testament.

There might be separate Monographic reprints of all verses bearing upon prominent subjects, such as *Faith*, *Future World*, &c., &c.

There might be parallel reprints of the Parables, and also of the Miracles. And numerous other instances might be quoted. But these are sufficient to illustrate the point in question, *viz.*, that one of the salient functions of the art of Publication, based upon obvious principles, is that of making the most of a book—the deriving the fullest advantage from its several parts, whether

separate or interwoven—one moment grouping together materials in one collection, in order to publish them as a whole ; the next, separating them according to their component parts, in order to issue them separately for the benefit of those who are only, or for the time being, interested in the parts.

This is a process which is ever in operation. But whether it is practised as much as is possible, is a matter of opinion.

It is curious to note the omission of Titles descriptive of the Books of the Minor Prophets.

### Final Note.

#### Publication.

*Re* the difference between the principles of *Editing* and *Publication*, some may object that what is alluded to as a Theory of *Publication* is merely the ordinary work of the *Editor*. This criticism does not hold good. There is a difference, the difference being that the form of a work has two aspects :

(1) That form which is dictated by reasons of *Literary* propriety and proportion only, and pecuniary motives.

(2) That form which is dictated for purposes of publishing the material to the best advantage, from a purely technical point of view, in connection with all other works on the same subject.

We see an instance of the former, when at p. 401 of G. H. Lewes's "*The Life of Goethe*," third edition, he alludes to the arrangement of *Wilhelm Meister*, in saying : " If we accept the latter plan, we must point out the inartistic composition, which allows five books of Introduction, one of disconnected Episode, and only two of Development. This is against all proportion," &c.





## CHAPTER II.

**Works of Reference: their Kinds and Differences.**

"You must front the difficulties, whatever they may be, of making Proper Catalogues."—(*Carlyle*.)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Special Difficulty of Subject.

Varieties of Catalogues.

Object of Chapter.

Works of Reference.

Record (of Literature).

Universal Catalogues.

General Catalogues.

National Catalogues.

Territorial Catalogues.

Bibliographies.

Catalogues.

Lists.

General Terms  
Explained.

The Register.

Authors' Catalogue.

Title-Catalogue.

Classed Subject-Catalogues.

Specific Subject-Catalogue.

Index of Matters.

Works of Reference  
Proper.

*Official Documents.*

Departmental Catalogues.

National Registers of Official Documents.

National Catalogues of Official Documents.

*Miscellaneous Kinds of Catalogues.*

(a) Combined Catalogues.

(b) Supplemented Catalogues.

(c) Spurious Catalogues.

Certain Requisites in Certain Catalogues.

Miscellaneous Kinds of Works of Reference (Indexes, Summaries, &c.)

## Works of Reference: their Kinds and Differences.

The subject of "Works of Reference" is by no means an easy one to write upon, for two reasons: (i.) That there are so many Works of Reference in existence which are unscientific *compromises*, whose existence has tended to obscure the course of inquiry; (2) That there is, at present, no code of defined terms agreed upon among librarians, as there are so many *general* terms in use, and so many different aspects of the subject possible, that no one can discuss the subject with any certainty that his companion interprets his words in the manner intended. Moreover, in spite of the fact that Literature is issued with strict regard to definite areas of place and time, these distinctions have been greatly overlooked, and a host of Works of Reference have been issued, of which it is impossible to say that they have anything definite about them (except that they are all "imperfect attempts," and are not continued up to date).

And the issues have been further confused by a long-continued wrangling as to the superiority of particular kinds of Works of Reference, which can never, and which should never, be compared with one another.

As if men's wants were not the same all the world over—varied wants, it is true; but, nevertheless, identical in their very variety, and all wants based upon certain well-defined ideas, and all capable of being realised by a skilful use of the same factors (*Titles*), arranged or referred to in different ways; now *full* and now *abridged* and *more abridged*; now *complete in number*, and now *selected*.

The possible number of varieties of Catalogues will be realised when we remember that it is possible to refer to books as they are:—

- { (1) Works issued in a particular *Area*;
- { (2) Works relating to a particular *Area*;
- { (3) Works issued at a particular *Period*;
- { (4) Works relating to a particular *Period*;

### 30 WORKS OF REFERENCE: THEIR KINDS AND DIFFERENCES.

- { (5) Works relating to a particular *Group of Subjects* ;
- { (6) Works relating to a specific *single Subject* ;
- (7) Works belonging to a particular *Division* or *Sub-Division* of *Literature* ;
- (8) Works of a particular *Race* ;
- (9) Works in a particular *Language* ;
- (10) Works existing in a particular *Locality* ;
- (11) Works published in a particular *Form*, and possessing some *peculiar merit* ;
- (12) Works of a particular *Size* ;
- &c.      &c.      &c.

But whatever that variety, we use the same factors, *i.e.*, collections of *Titles*.

The object, then, of this chapter is to attempt to indicate what are the primary Works of Reference which correspond to the primary wants of literary workers, and to show their relative value. It is imperative that we should always know "where we are"; that we should understand clearly the relationship of each Work of Reference to every other work; *what it does* and *what it does not do*; *what period of time, area of space, group of subjects* it relates to, and on what system it is arranged, &c., &c.—in a word, that we should understand its *relative* value.

We will commence, therefore, by first considering the meaning of the more general terms used in regard to the record of literature.

#### General Terms for Use.

Endeavour will also be made to define those terms which are in use, or to assign terms where additional distinctions are required by bibliographers. Obviously some of the terms and their definitions must be, to a certain extent, matters of opinion. But even if the suggestions here made should meet with criticism, they will at least form a suitable ground for future debate.

#### Works of Reference.

To commence—"Work of Reference" is the term most general in its meaning, and therefore one which, long as it is, we are bound to use when we wish to avoid restricting our remarks to a peculiar Work of Reference. Thus "*Catalogue*" is not a scientific term as a general term, because it does not necessarily include "*Indexes*" which differ from Catalogues.

"*Aid*" is a term, short and convenient, which is used especially in America, but it is doubtful whether it is one which will be popular this side of the water.

### Record (of Literature).

It is commonly the custom, when alluding to the task of compiling Works of Reference, to use the words "Index" and "Catalogue," "Indexing" and "Cataloguing." There are, however, strong reasons for avoiding the use of such words in a work such as the present, inasmuch as they convey wrong or vague ideas.

Special stress is laid upon the fact that there are certain definite wants among literary workers which determine the nature of the Works of Reference required, and that these Reference Works are by no means all comprised or defined by the terms "Catalogues" and "Indexes."

In speaking, therefore, of the process of compiling Works of Reference, or of the accomplished results, the words "Record" and "Recording" are used with a purpose, as being the most comprehensive terms obtainable, and terms which bind you to no particular kind of Reference Work.

### Universal Catalogues.

When we use the phrase "Universal Catalogue," what do we mean? Each person must answer for himself. Here it will be stated what the term *may* mean.

There is no such thing, scientifically speaking, as *one* Universal Catalogue, if such a term be used as an all-including, final and complete phrase, for there are *many* possible *Universal* (or *International*) Works of Reference, just as there are *National* ones. Thus; if it be necessary for practical purposes to Record National Literature in two Divisions (General and Official), so is it necessary to divide Universal Literature into two Divisions; so that, to begin with, there are, properly speaking, at least *two* "Universal Catalogues" to be borne in mind.

But again—if it be necessary to compile different kinds of Works of Reference in the case of *National* Literature, so, *scientifically*, it is necessary to compile a like number of Works of Reference in the case of *Universal* Literature.

That is to say, we may be said to require (in the case of General Literature only).

- (1) A Universal Authors' Catalogue (of which the nearest approach is the Authors' Catalogue of the British Museum.
- (2) A Universal Large-Group Subject-Catalogue.
- (3) Universal Small-Group Subject-Catalogues (of which the South Kensington Universal Catalogue of Books on Art is an instance).
- (4) A Universal Index of Matters.

And whatever other form of Work of Reference we may choose to invent, we have only to include all the factors in every country and it is a *Universal* Work of Reference! It is evident, therefore, that when we use the phrase "Universal" we are using a much more serious word than is always realised.

That Universal Works of Reference relating to **Selected General Literature**, and Universal complete Works of Reference to **Particular Groups of Subjects** are greatly required, cannot be disputed. But that the end justifies the undertaking (even if practically feasible) in the case of a *complete* Universal Catalogue of General Literature, is a matter open to much doubt. One thing is certain, however, that chafe as we may against hard facts as opposed to dreams, we can never have *International* or Universal Catalogues, until we have first obtained *National* Catalogues.

And without National Systems of Bibliography, we shall never obtain National Catalogues of General Literature, capable of satisfactory International manipulation.

### General Catalogues.

In using the phrase "A General Catalogue," the word "General," is of course purely a relative term. A Catalogue is *general* towards its sectional parts, and its sectional parts are again *general* compared with their Sub-Sections, and all are *special* compared with their greater parts or whole.

### National Catalogues.

This seems a convenient term of distinction to use when we wish to allude to Catalogues of the Literature strictly *issued in a*

country, as opposed to Catalogues of Literature (National and Foreign) *relating to a Country* (Territorial Catalogues).

### Territorial Catalogues.

When we refer to Catalogues of National Literature it is very important that we should be clear in our own minds as to what we mean. Let us, therefore, ask the question :

What *are* Catalogues of National Literature ?

For answer :

If we ignore the fact (which it is, for the moment, convenient to do, for sake of argument) that the Literature of every country belongs to two Divisions (*General* and *Official* Literature) we find that the Literature of a Country consists of—

(1) The Indigenous Literature which has issued from its own Press.

(2) The Literature specially *relating to itself* which has been issued in other countries.

In the one instance, as a *State* or *Nation*, it is the *Author* of a class of Literature ; in the other it is the *Subject* of a class of works, which relate to it in its character of a *Territory* or Geographical Division of the globe.

It is clear, then, that from one aspect, the Record of the Literature of a Country (to use a loose phrase) is not complete without the addition of that extraneous foreign Literature which relates to it.

In what terms then shall we refer to these two different Records of Literature ? for we must be able to refer to each without fear of confusion.

The term " Special Bibliography " is of no real use for purposes of general allusion, for there is sure to be confusion as to whether such a work is a Special Bibliography of the Indigenous Literature *only* of a country, or of its foreign *related* Literature as well.

It seems, therefore, that the best way of dealing with the difficulty is to use the terms, *National Catalogues* and *Territorial Catalogues*.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The need for Territorial Catalogues was clearly felt by the writer of " Wanted : a new Catalogue " in the " Review of Reviews " (November 15th, 1894) as expressed in the words : " Yet a general classification as far as possible according to the Map for the Colonies and Foreign Countries would be open to as few objections as any other."



### Bibliography—Bibliographies.

A "Bibliography" is a convenient term to denote a Collection of Titles of Works on a particular subject<sup>1</sup> or group of subjects without specifying how such Titles are arranged,<sup>2</sup> although *chronological* order is the most generally useful, as the main idea of such works.

The phrase, "Special Bibliography," is one very frequently in use. Of course, this is merely a relative term. Thus, a Catalogue of Works on the "Natural Sciences" is a *Special* Bibliography, as regards a Catalogue of Works on "Arts and Sciences"; it is a *General* Bibliography as regards a Catalogue of Works on Zoology, which is, in turn, *Special* in regard to Zoology, and *General* in regard to a Catalogue of Works on Mammalia, and so on *ad infinitum*.

### A List.

A "List" is a term to be applied rather to an insignificant number of Titles collected together, or to a considerable number of careless Titles carelessly arranged, or to a collection of very abbreviated Titles. Although conveniently short, it is not a desirable term to use where a Work of Reference is of real importance.

### The Register.

*"As to looking at the argument through the medium of a Register, Willum Marigold came into the world before Registers came up much—and went out of it, too. They wouldn't have been greatly in his line neither, if they had chanced to come up before him."*

Dr. Marigold probably represents the views of a large number of my readers, who may, with excuse, grow impatient at the prospect of a dissertation on Registers. And yet I think they will forgive me.

If several kinds of *Works of Reference* are required, and they are composed of the same units differently arranged, it follows that you require first of all a *List* of those units.

<sup>1</sup> It is manifest that if the chief characteristic of a Bibliography is that it contain a List of Works on a particular subject, such List may be arranged, i.e., by Authors, Subject, Chronology, Place, and in a variety of other ways.

<sup>2</sup> In the case of the works of (or relating to) a particular Author, *he* is the subject. Similarly, in the case of works relating to a particular country, the *country* is the subject.

The Register is the term which it seems best to apply to such a *Foundation List* of Literature, on which all such subsequent Reference Works are based.

In the Division of General Literature, Registers are of two sorts :—

(1) General Registers which include the titles of General Literature works, irrespective of the natural Sub-Divisions (*Collections of Works, Learned Societies, Magazines, Newspapers*).

(2) Special Registers which mark the distinctions.

General Registers are naturally more excusable in small countries, where there is little to register at all. But, in large countries, the National Registers should, *if printed*, be arranged in sections, according to the natural sub-divisions of Literature.

The words, *if printed*, are specially inserted, because, as is elsewhere stated, it is found convenient to omit the actual printing of the Registers of *General Literature*, in favour of issuing the titles at once in the form of Author and Subject-Catalogues.

In the case of **Official Literature**, however, the General Registers, with their schedules of *details*, will always be required, and should, therefore, be printed, as a preliminary to the subsequent compilation of Subject-Departmental Catalogues.

### Another Explanation.

All Works of Reference are based upon the varied manipulation of the same factors—*Titles*.

Whether these titles be ultimately repeated in full, abbreviated, or simply referred to ; whether they are accompanied by lengthy or short descriptive matter—all is based upon the original existence *somewhere* of a *full descriptive Title*.

For these reasons, it is theoretically necessary that there shall be a record of Titles, entered in such a way as to at once form a solid, permanent basis, on which all subsequent work may be based (chiefly by the process of striking out superfluous matter), without the necessity for referring again to the actual book itself.

Actually, however, it is found that, in reference to Modern Literature, and in the Division of *General Literature*, it is better, if possible, to compile all possible Works of Reference simultaneously, on one and the same examination of a book ; and thus, what is known (in the form of a Receipt Book) as a National

Register, need not be printed, but can be made use of (by skipping one stage) at once for the compilation of Authors' Catalogues and Subject-Catalogues.

It should be borne in mind, however, that for want of fully developed systems of Bibliography in India, and in many of the English Colonies, State-Registers of Literature are printed, in lieu of Author and Subject-Catalogues and Indexes.

In the Division of *Official Literature*, however, there is always a special necessity for printing Registers of the Titles of *all* Documents, *together with the addition of a large number of details* which it may be useful to refer to at any future time, in spite of the fact that such details are not necessarily all required for *insertion* as part of the title of a Document in a Subject-Catalogue of Official Documents.

The Schedule arrangement of the Indian Official Documents' Register is very similar to that shown in Section 2, No. 2, but the form of Register recommended is shown in Section 3, No. 3.

### Authors' Catalogues.

An Author's Catalogue is, as the name implies, one in which the works are arranged under their Authors' names.

Where works are issued anonymously or in a manner in which the Authorship is not very apparent, the titles are arranged by rules, which are intended to fix their position in a Catalogue with as much certainty as if they had Authors' names attached.

The real value of an Authors' Catalogue is more apparent in the case of very large Libraries, where, without the aid of such a work, thousands of books would probably be lost for an indefinite period of time, while a large majority of individual works would only be found (by means of other forms of Catalogues) after considerable difficulty and loss of time.

It is very common to allude to Authors' Catalogues as "Alphabetical Catalogues." This is a pity, inasmuch as the majority of Catalogues embrace the *alphabetical* element in some degree; for which reason, to apply the term exclusively to Authors' Catalogues, is unscientific and misleading.

The special point to note concerning Authors' Catalogues, is the temptation to try and make them combine the advantages of Subject-Catalogues in regard to certain classes of works, with the result that the one chief advantage of Authors' Catalogues—the absolute certainty of finding an individual work with speed on knowing the title) is greatly endangered.

If asked to specify the several uses of an Author's Catalogue, perhaps the simplest explanation is the following :

An Authors' Catalogue enables you (on knowing the name of Author and Title of work) :—

- (1) To find with speed and certainty the individual works of any author you may wish.
- (2) To find what each Author has written.
- (3) To note the completeness or incompleteness of a collection.

Just as anonymous works are entered, properly speaking, under their first word (not an article), and as an Author's Catalogue (if it include Anonymous Works) may become partly a Title-Catalogue ; so it is sometimes customary to incorporate Title entries of all Works (which are likely to be searched for under titles) in an Authors' Catalogue.

Such a Catalogue is, of course, a combined Catalogue, which is best known by the name "**Author-and-Title**" Catalogue.

#### **Title-Catalogues.**

One of the main principles of Bibliography is the necessity for cataloguing or indexing a work *under whatever heading it may reasonably be looked for* ; and if, in so doing, you give six clues instead of one, so much the better, as the chances of the work being easily found are proportionately increased. It is scarcely necessary to note that, in many works, men remember the title when they forget every other clue. Therefore, a Catalogue, in which works are also entered under their titles, becomes a necessity. But further investigations will show that the number of works which are likely to be referred to by their titles (rather than by author or subject) are small.

For this reason it is not strictly necessary to include in a Title-Catalogue other Title-entries than those which have some specially marked characteristic, *viz.* (apart from anonymous works), the titles of novels, story-books, plays, works of poetry and poems, series of works, and periodicals.

Whether there is any real gain in printing the headings of Author, Title and Subject-entries (when combined in the same Catalogue) in different type, is a question which probably would be decided in the negative.

#### **Classed Subject-Catalogues.**

Classed Subject-Catalogues form at once the most difficult and most interesting branch of Bibliography. They are the

counterpart of that much-debated subject, "Classification." But be it observed, as a stage of Bibliography, the consideration of Subject-Catalogues precedes the stage of Classification. This is a point on which great stress must be laid, because it has been so greatly overlooked in the past; and to this oversight much subsequent confusion of thought is directly due. That is to say, many librarians have approached the subject in the wrong order, without any fixed object, except to classify something somehow, with the obvious result that they classified nothing no-how.

On the other hand, how greatly does it clear the air and dispel our difficulties if, following the *natural* order of events—a man comes up and says: "I want a list of works on this subject."

Here is a definite object. This man knows what he wants, and we must supply that want. To the winds with abstract theories of Classification. If we have not already a list of the works required, and it is a reasonable request, we must compile such a list. When collected, the titles will probably relate to a hundred other different subjects; but that cannot be helped, and does not matter. So long as they bear upon the subject mentioned we have done our duty and all that can be required of us.

Here, then, is the secret of Class-Catalogues. We shall never be able to penetrate the mysteries of the creation with *absolute* certainty; and even if this were so, it is naturally impossible to make man write absolutely to an order corresponding with the natural parts of the world, visible and invisible; especially as the world has ever been passing, and will ever be passing, through a series of kaleidoscopic changes. But we *are* able to define our own wants, and are able at least to classify Literature in an order which approximates very closely to what we require.

Let us, then, state clearly what we require in the way of Subject-Catalogues. We might theoretically require a list of works relating to *all* knowledge, but practically the question resolves itself into the fact that we require lists of works on special Subjects or Groups of Subjects. And in accordance as those Subject-Groups are larger or smaller than other Subject-Groups, so we may call the corresponding Catalogues "*Large-Group*" Subject-Catalogues or "*Small-Group*" Subject-Catalogues. It will thus be seen that the terms Large-Group and Small-Group

are purely *relative* terms, but nevertheless they are of considerable use in clearing our heads and defining our ideas by the introduction of that important element—*Proportion*!

Properly speaking, if I were asked for abstract illustrations of Large-Group Subject-Catalogues, I should refer to the ten Class-Catalogues of Mr. Dewey's system:—(0) General Works; (1) Philosophy; (2) Religion; (3) Sociology; (4) Philology; (5) Natural Science; (6) Useful Arts; (7) Fine Arts; (8) Literature; (9) History and General Geography. And I should call any of the Divisions of each of these classes "Small-Group" Subject-Catalogues. But if I was obviously discussing the subject of zoology, and the conversation were wholly confined to this branch of learning, then, in order to be able to allude to the various connected Subject-Catalogues, I should call zoology a Large-Group Catalogue, and refer to the subordinate groups as Small and Smaller-Group Catalogues.

But there are other points relative to Subject-Catalogues which must be noticed before we quit the subject. In the first place, it is of the highest importance that each country shall possess a set of Broad-Group Subject-Catalogues on the general lines of the Dewey ten Classes; and that each country shall issue sets of Smaller-Group Subject-Catalogues answering somewhat to Mr. Dewey's one hundred Divisions, and other still *Smaller-Group* Catalogues. And be it pointed out that even if the particular localisation of smaller Subject-Groups (such as meteorology) be open to dispute, yet, so long as all the works on meteorology are catalogued and obtainable by themselves as a compact whole, it is of lesser consequence *where* they are classed (except in so far as relates to their being included or not included as parts of a Large-Group Catalogue, purchased for the sake of its natural parts).

But some one will ask: "How are these Catalogues to be arranged, and are the Titles to be full or abbreviated?" I answer, "Since you cannot make an Abbreviated-title Catalogue, except from a full-title work, it is natural to compile the Full-Titled Catalogue first. *Then* if any one wishes for Abbreviated-title Catalogues, these could be easily printed by simply erasing and amending the full titles.

As to the internal arrangement, this is again a matter of *finance* and discretion. I have shown that, properly speaking, the whole five or six Works of Reference proper mentioned elsewhere, should be compiled for *any* collection of works before such works are fully

available.<sup>1</sup> But in the case of Subject-Catalogues—Special Bibliographies; if called upon to choose, most people would probably elect to have a *chronological* method incorporation, because the chief want, so constantly felt, is to know the *first* book and the *last* book on a subject; and if economy must prevail, it is at least possible to give an *Authors' Index* and a *Subject Index*.

But whatever be the arrangement decided upon according to circumstances, the great essential is that the compiler shall state clearly the character and purpose of his work, and what area of place, time, and subject it relates to, and enable the reader to see at a glance how it is arranged. It is no uncommon occurrence to have to spend half-an-hour before you have mastered the arrangement and idea of a Bibliography.

I have stated elsewhere that the task of compiling Subject-Catalogues should precede (unless effected simultaneously) all other Catalogue work, because the fullest titles are wanted.

I have also alluded to the subject in "Some Works of Reference and what they teach us" (Sect. II., No. 5).

I have alluded to the comparative advantages and disadvantages of Classed Subject-Catalogues (Sect. II., No. 7).

I will now pass on to the consideration of Specific Subject-Catalogues.

### Specific Subject-Catalogues.

In enumerating the different kinds of Works of Reference proper I have, in my previously published papers (and in some parts of this work) specified them as:—

- Authors' Catalogues;
- Title Catalogues;
- Subject-Catalogues (Large Group);
- Do. (Small Group);
- Indexes of Matters.

In so doing, I was not forgetful of the existence of *Specific*

---

<sup>1</sup>The following is an interesting instance of the manner in which the Record Stage may be applied to any collection of works. An enterprising German Bookseller (Herr Gustav Fock) at Leipsic, takes the collections of German School Programmes and University Dissertations, and groups them in 150 Specific Subject-Groups, and then sells them as Classed Collections. Thus, on the subject of Bakteriologie there were "800 Abhandlungen" for sale; on "Chemie" 5,500 works for sale; on Englische Philologie u. Litteraturgeschichte "1,000 Abhandlungen"; on "Ægypten," 60 works.

This also illustrates the necessity for International system of Bibliography in a forcible manner.

Subject-Catalogues. But since it is impossible<sup>1</sup> to get any large-sized Catalogue of Units which does not partake of the nature of a Small-Group Catalogue, I thought the above list correctly represented the case.

On further thought, however, it appears to me that I was wrong not to make special allusion to a Specific Subject-Catalogue, for, although it is true that such a work must always be very greatly a Small-Group Subject Catalogue, yet this is, as it were, *accidental*, whereas, its character as a Specific Subject-Catalogue, or Catalogue of *Units*, is *intentional*.

I think, therefore, that the List of Works of Reference proper, whose nature is well-defined, and on which the main amount of reference work hinges, should include a "Specific-Subject" Catalogue.

As explanatory of the system of one well-known Specific Subject-Catalogue (the "Subject Alphabet" Section of "The American Catalogue"), the following is here reprinted :—

#### " Note on Subject Entries.

*Subject Entries.*—The Subject Alphabet, though in one respect a Topical Index to the first (Author-and-Title) alphabet, is, nevertheless, complete in itself, and can be bound, if desired, as a separate volume for independent use. Novels, juveniles, plays, and poems (excepting anthologies) are not repeated here, as the first alphabet, giving them under authors and titles, supplies the entries under which they are sought; and the placing of these large classes in the subject alphabet would interfere seriously with its practical use. Laws and Law Reports, entered under the names of States in the first alphabet, as well as sermons and essays identified only by the names of the authors, are also not repeated in this part. With these exceptions, the material of the first alphabet is duplicated in the second alphabet, but arranged on a different plan, to answer a different purpose. The

---

<sup>1</sup> It is obvious that the Unit Catalogue, in a great measure, rapidly ascends to the Small-Group Catalogue. If the World invisible and visible consists of a billion Thought-Subjects, you could theoretically have a Catalogue in which the titles were arranged under a billion Specific Subject-headings; but a large number of titles are never brought together without there being very many which are kindred to one another; and thus, while theroretically the Catalogue is a *Unit* or *Specific* Subject-Catalogue, it becomes practically a combination of the Unit and the Small Group Catalogue.



object of the present alphabet is to show what books have been issued on any given topic.

"The arrangement is by *Specific Subjects*, not by general classes. Books upon kindred topics are not grouped under a general heading, but each is placed under the particular subject of which it treats. Thus, histories of the United States will be found under 'United States,' not under 'History'; histories of Massachusetts, under 'Massachusetts,' not under 'United States'; and histories of Boston, under 'Boston,' not under 'Massachusetts.' Lives of individuals are, in like manner, placed under their names, and not under 'Biography'; treatises upon the different metals, under the name of each metal, and not under 'Metals.' Only Universal histories, collected biographies, general works upon science, &c., are entered under 'History,' 'Biography,' 'Science,' &c.

"When a title relates to a subject and also to a place, though often entered under both, preference is given to the subject, as: 'Ridgway, R., Manual of North American Birds,' will be found under 'Birds,' rather than under 'North America.' For this reason, for sub-divisions not found under 'America,' 'North America,' 'United States,' &c., turn to the general subject. References are freely made from the general to the special; but, as a rule, they are not considered necessary from the special to the general. References are also made to nearly-related subjects, and from the synonyms of the adopted headings. There are many cases of books with obscure, ambiguous, or meaningless titles, *in which it has been impossible, in the absence of the books themselves, to determine with certainty their specific subjects*; these have been placed under general subjects, when the general subjects were evident. The user of the Subject-Alphabet should remember that by reference to a more general heading he will often find what might otherwise escape him on the specific subject or kindred topics. In most cases books have been placed under one specific subject-heading, and cross-headings have been made from the synonyms. In a few cases, however, there will be found entries under practically synonymous headings, following the word used in the actual title of the book. 'Church Music,' 'Anthems,' 'Hymns,' 'Songs,' &c., furnish a case in point.

"In searching for books on specific subjects, the extended

Catalogue of Bibliographic Aids, prepared by Mr. Leypoldt personally, as a preface to the Subject volume of the original American Catalogue (1876), is still of the greatest value, and should be consulted by the student. The numerous bibliographies of special subjects, now forming so extensive a literature of their own, should also be utilised."

### Indexes of Matters.

The value of an Index of Matters may be briefly summed up in the words—*Brevity of entry ; freedom from rule.*

Given a Catalogue containing the titles of any collection of works, whether arranged under their authors or classed by Subject-Groups, and assuming that the titles contain catch-words specifying exactly what the works relate to, it is evident that an Index is required to those catch-words ; so that any student, by searching out the probable catch-words, may be directed to the works upon the subject.

Theoretically, some one might object that a Specific Subject-Catalogue answers this purpose. The answer is, "No." There are a large number of works which, while they relate to *one* subject *especially* and directly, relate to *several* subjects *indirectly*. For this reason, it is impossible, in one Catalogue of a large collection of works, to repeat the same title over several times under each of its subordinate catch-words, otherwise the expense and size of the Catalogue would be enormous. It is only possible to enter it *once* under the Specific Subject as a principle. But supposing that you shorten the title-entries to a *tenth* of their original size, then you can repeat them ten times over, if need be, under different headings, and your work will still be within bounds of size and expense, as much as it ever can be. Thus, take such a title as "Evolution in History, Language and Science"; in a Specific Subject-Catalogue, this would be entered under Evolution only as a *full* title ; in an Index of Matters the student would be directed to it from three different sources, if he looked under any of the words, "History," "Language," or "Science."

So far, however, we have gone on the assumption that Titles of books always express fully and accurately the contents of the works they refer to. This is, however, *not* the case. For this reason, any Index of Matters which took titles for granted, and referred solely to them as found, would be very incomplete and misleading.

On the other hand, how is the difficulty to be met? The answer is simple. Under a proper system of Book-Registration, Titles would always be amended by trained Bibliographers, by means chiefly of *Notes*, sometimes by words inserted in square brackets—such notes to be made specially in regard to necessities of Classification and Indexing. Indexes of Matters would then be made simultaneously while the subject was fresh in their minds, and would thus, and thus only, be works of scientific accuracy and value. Whether the Indexer should take note of Sectional Titles is a matter for deeper consideration.

The sole remaining point to consider is the *form* of an Index of Matters. How is the Index to point? Presumably to the *Authors' Names*; sometimes to the title, sometimes also to the page, sometimes to a number—according to circumstances.

In conclusion, it should be pointed out that Indexes of Matters may naturally be compiled as relating to any *General* Collection of Literature, or to a particular *Class* of Literature, in which latter case they may be referred to as *Class-Indexes of Matters*, but *not* as *Classed* Indexes of Matters. At the same time, just as in the case of Specific Subject-Catalogues on a large scale, it seems certain that Indexes of Matters to any very large Collection of Books must ultimately contain such numbers of kindred factors as will contribute to the formation of a number of Subject-Groups, *not intentionally*, but in spite of all intentions!

Among **Mr. Panizzi's Rules** for the compilation of the Catalogue of the Reform Club, appears the following very valuable memorandum:—

*Index of Subjects.*

“6th. An Alphabetical Index of Subjects to be kept up at the same time (as the Authors' Catalogue), and, *under each leading word* of the Title, a reference to be made to the name of the Author, or word under which the book is entered in the Catalogue.

*Obscure Titles*

“7th. If a Title-page be so obscure as not to give an idea of the subject of the work, a very brief description of its subject to be added [in square brackets] to the entry of the Title-page, *from which to take the word or words* for Index of Matters.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Italics are inserted.

## Official Documents.

### Departmental Catalogues of Official Documents.

Departmental Catalogues may be of two kinds :—

- (1) Abbreviated Sale Catalogues.
- (2) Detailed Catalogues for the special help of Officials and Librarians.

Detailed Catalogues are, unfortunately, of rare occurrence, and Sale Catalogues are equally so. And Sale Catalogues too often mix up selections of past years' documents with those of the new year, so as to render it impossible to pick out the desired list of the publications of a particular year.

Under a proper system, periodical detailed catalogues are issued, containing the new publications of each separate Department, or group of Departments; and these, when put together, constitute the *Register of Official Documents*.

### National Registers of Official Documents.

It has been shown in many parts of this work that Official Documents must be treated as a class separate by themselves. It may here be taken as granted that it is impossible to catalogue Official Documents properly, except the Cataloguer be in possession of a large number of detailed facts concerning the history of each Document.

These details can alone be supplied by the Department which issues a Document, and, therefore, the first preliminary to a Catalogue of Official Documents is a complete collection of *Departmental* detailed Catalogues for the year. These, from their particular form, when put together, constitute what may be called a **Register of Official Documents**.

### National Catalogues of Official Documents.

In several parts of this work I have alluded at length to the special characteristics of Catalogues of Official Documents. For the sake of this chapter I here sum up their main features.

Official Documents must, as a class, be catalogued separately, because, as a class, they have no Authors' names attached.

Theoretically it would appear as if it were only necessary to catalogue the Official Documents of a country in some ten to twenty groups, corresponding (in most countries) to the several

Ministries of Agriculture, Education, Public Works, Marine, War, &c., &c.

But further consideration will show that these groups are too general and wide to render it possible easily to find individual documents.

It would next appear, theoretically, as if it were only necessary to catalogue documents under their departments.

But this is never exactly the case.

(1) The Departments seldom exist in ideal relation to the existing subjects with which they have to deal.

(2) Thus, in certain countries (as India) Departments are undergoing perpetual change, enlargement, or modification.

(3) They are generally too large, and deal with subjects so numerous and varied that they are often useless; as headings in a Catalogue they are too *general* (e.g., the Department of the Interior, U.S.A.).

(4) They not unfrequently issue reports on subjects unconnected with their special functions.

(5) The reports are frequently issued with no clue as to the name of the Department from which they originate.

For these reasons, it is impossible to slavishly enter reports under their connected Departments, even if they be known, although it is often possible to enter them under the Sub-Branches of a Department.

But, furthermore, the chief value of a National Catalogue of Official Documents is that it should be a *Specific* Subject-Catalogue.

(1) Because the general public invariably search for specific documents.

(2) Because even if they wished for a long series of connected Departmental Reports, these could be found from the *Departmental* Catalogues (which are equally necessary for the building up of the Departmental Register).

(3) Because it is possible to connect the several parts of a Specific Catalogue (when that connection is not obvious) by means of Cross-References.

Thus, in a Catalogue of Indian Documents, it is more generally useful to have separate headings of *Civil Justice*, *Criminal Justice*, *Police Administration*, *Prisons*, than to catalogue them all under *Judicial Administration*.

This, then, is our lesson—that **National Catalogues of Official Documents must be mainly Specific Subject-Catalogues.**

### MISCELLANEOUS KINDS OF CATALOGUES.

The following memoranda are intended to draw attention to the existence of certain kinds of Catalogues worthy of especial notice :—

- (1) Combined Catalogues.
- (2) Supplemented Catalogues.
- (3) Spurious Catalogues.

#### Combined Catalogues.

##### Author and Title Catalogue.

In reference to Combined Catalogues, it is a favourite theory of Bibliographers to combine all kinds of Catalogues in one. While this is possible with small collections of works, or with the output of a single year, it is impossible to do so in dealing with very large collections of Literature. Let the reader picture to himself the results of trying to combine a Subject and a Title Catalogue with the Authors' Catalogue of the British Museum !

The " Author-and-Title Alphabet " of " The American Catalogue " affords a very good illustration of an Author and Title Catalogue combined.

##### Author and Subject Catalogue.

The " Index-Catalogue of the Library of the Surgeon-General's Office, United States Army," containing, as it does, 176,364 Author-Titles, and 679,669 Book and Journal Subject-Titles in its 16 volumes, is a most remarkable instance of an Author and Subject-Catalogue combined.

#### Author-Subject-and-Title Catalogues.

The majority of Free Public Library Catalogues in England are of the above description. That is to say, the title of each work is entered (not necessarily at the same length) under its Author, Title (subject to certain limitations) and Specific Subject, in one continuous alphabet.

Thus, if we look in such a Catalogue, we shall find :—

**Blue Fairy Book**, ed. by A. Lang, 1892.

**Fairy Tales.**

Lang, A., **Blue Fairy Book**.

**Lang (Andrew).**

**Blue Fairy Book.**

It is common, among librarians, to refer to this form of Catalogue as the "**Dictionary Catalogue**." The definitions given in Mr. C. A. Cutter's "**Rules for a Dictionary Catalogue**" are as follows :—

"*Dictionary Catalogue*, so called because the headings (Author, Title, Subject, and form) are arranged, like the words in a dictionary, in alphabetical order.

"*Dictionary and other Alphabetical Catalogues*. These are differentiated, not, as is often said, by the dictionary having specific entry, but (1) by its giving specific entries in all cases, and (2) by its individual entry."

### **Supplemented Catalogues.**

**Authors' Catalogue**, supplemented by a **Subject (and Title) Index**.

**Classed Subject-Catalogue**, supplemented by an **Author's Index**.

**Classed Subject Catalogue**, supplemented by a **Subject-Index or Index of Matters**.

### **The Dewey System.**

In view of the controversy ever raging on this subject, it is very necessary to localise Mr. Dewey's form of Catalogue among other Catalogues. To begin with, it is a *Supplemented Catalogue*. That is to say, it depends for its full success on the supplementary help of an adjunct. It is also a Subject-Catalogue classed in Small Groups under Large Groups. As such, it has all the advantages of a Classed-Catalogue, while the disadvantages which it would otherwise necessarily share, are greatly overcome by the means of an Index of Matters which enables it to very greatly combine the advantages of a Specific-Subject Catalogue. But only *very greatly*. It does not absolutely obviate the need of a Specific Subject-Catalogue, in that in the latter form of Catalogue you are able to find your work by *single*-entry and *single* search; whereas in the Dewey Catalogue you must find a work (of which the grouping is minute and obscure) by *double* entry and *double* search, *i.e.*, the Index directs you round the corner. At the same time, it must also be remembered that, as the Dewey Classification is so carefully and clearly worked out, in proportion as the student understands its classification and system of rotation, so does he become greatly independent of the Index in regard to a very large number of subjects, thus being able to make direct search, using it as a Specific Subject-Catalogue.

So far as I can judge, the opinions I have consulted agree that, if comparison is necessary, the Dictionary Catalogue (which is, of course, the cheapest and easiest form of Catalogue both for compilation and consultation) is more suited to a popular library, where the readers are not very exacting as to their intellectual requirements. But that where you have a higher class of readers, if it is only possible to have *one form* of Catalogue, the Dewey Catalogue is to be preferred ; because it not only trains readers to read and work logically, but it also responds to their requirements in reference to Classed Lists of Works—not to mention other advantages relating to the economy of a library.

Apart from its nature as an ordinary Classed Catalogue, there is another feature of the Dewey Catalogue which is worth noting, *i.e.*, its character as a *Class Register*, or *Preliminary Class Catalogue*, *i.e.*, a stock-pot of Classification, from which all sorts of Classed Catalogues may be afterwards compiled.

If you have a thousand hieroglyphical factors, which you may afterwards require to manipulate in a million different ways (all of which relate to one another in varying proportion), the only way to deal with the difficulty is to class the factors in a peculiar order, according as certain factors are more kindred to one another than to other factors, and then to make an Index to them. By this means, if you number each subject-group separately—whatever the combination of letters—your Index should enable you to collect all the factors you require in any combination, while the existing class arrangement will also often render you very greatly independent of the Index.

### Spurious Catalogues.

There are certain Reference Works which are very hard to describe, by reason of their attempting to combine the functions of several Catalogues at one and the same time, and accomplishing their object only in an imperfect manner. Their nature being thus vague—neither one thing nor the other—they are useless for accurate reference, and, therefore, unscientific. It is right to call these “Spurious Catalogues.” They are so numerous that each student will be able to illustrate the fact from his own experience.

### Certain Requisites in Certain Catalogues.

#### Periodical Scientific Literature (Catalogue of Articles).

The following are the words of M. Robert de Lasteyrie in the



preface to tom. 1 of the *Bibliographie Générale des Travaux Historiques et Archéologiques, publiés par les Sociétés Savantes de la France*, when brought face to face with a mass of *Periodical Scientific Literature*, the contents of which are to be catalogued. How is he to proceed? Is he to select the longer Articles and reject the shorter ones? Let him speak for himself; these are his words:—“In searching through the Proceedings in order to extract the important Articles, I was necessarily compelled to considerably enlarge my intended programme. How, for instance, was I to get over the difficulty of distinguishing the Articles which deserved to be extracted from those which should be rejected? Was I to be guided by their Titles? But often the Articles—even the longest ones appearing in the Sessional Reports—possess no Titles. Was I then to be influenced by their length or shortness? Hardly; for surely length is no criterion. Are the longest Articles always the best? Does not many an author know how to condense, within three pages, more facts than another writer, more diffuse, is able to compress into ten pages?”

I have, therefore, found it necessary NOT to take the length of Articles into consideration. But whenever, in Bulletins and Proceedings, I have found an Article, or a communication if only of a single page, I have mentioned it under the shortest title which I could frame.

The last sentence might appear to assume that he abbreviates titles. This, is, however, so far as I know, not the case; nay, the writer has taken infinite pains to supplement the imperfect titles, thus showing his appreciation of the principles so strongly held by Sir Anthony Panizzi, of entering *full* and *comprehensive* titles in each case.

#### Classed Subject-Catalogues.

**Dryander (J.)** — *Catalogus Bibliothecæ Historico - Naturalis Josephi Banks. 5 tom. Londini, 1798-1800. 8°.*

In giving evidence before the British Museum Committee, 1849, Mr. Panizzi (as he was then), while no professed friend to Class Catalogues, characterises Dryander's Catalogue of St. Joseph Bank's Collection as “the best classed Catalogue. . . . that has ever been made,” for two especial reasons (1) that he “drew up his titles in the fullest possible manner”; (2) that “he classed not only independent and substantial works, but *all* articles in Transactions and Journals . . . with an accuracy which is really wonderful.”

### Catalogue of a Library of General Science.

The following were Sir Anthony Panizzi's views as to the ideal nature of the General Catalogue of a Scientific Library, such as that of the Royal Society :—

“The Catalogue of a Library like that of the Royal Society should be as complete as possible ; that is, it should give all the information requisite concerning any book which may be the object of inquiry. Whether a work be printed separately, or in a collection—whether it extend to a greater part of a Folio Volume, or occupy only part of a single leaf—no distinction should be made : the title of each should be separately entered. Hence, every one of the *Mémoires* or papers in the acts of Academies, every one of the Articles in Scientific Journals, or Collections, whatever they may be, should have its separate place in the Catalogue. . . . It is only by carrying this principle to the fullest extent that a Catalogue can be called complete, and a Library, more particularly of books relating to Science, made as useful as it is capable of being.”

### Indexes.

The confusion which centres round that hateful little word, “Index”—*Index of*, *Index to*—is far worse than any confusion which need arise on the subject of *Classification* ; and I regret to say that time prevents me from reducing my notes on the subject to order, in order to contribute my small portion of help in the matter. My chief object must be to warn students on the subject, and to direct their attention to the need of defining a difference between *Indexes* and *Catalogues* (even though it has seldom been observed), and the emphasizing of the fact that there are *Indexes* to *Catalogues*, *Indexes* to the *Titles* in *Collections* of *Books*, *Indexes* to the *Contents* of *Books*, and *Indexes* to things which are *not* *Books*. The chief point concerning *Indexes* as a class is that they are *Indexes to* rather than *Catalogues of*. The general characteristics of *Catalogues* are that their titles are *longer* than *shorter* ; that a title in a *Catalogue* has often *one* place only,<sup>1</sup> and always *one* place *essentially* ; and that a *Title* is more often subject to strict rules of entry. The general characteristics of *Indexes* (in regard to *Catalogues*) are : abbreviations of *Title*—even to the

---

<sup>1</sup> Especially in regard to the matter of finding an individual report with certainty, and for making cross-references to it.

repetition only of Catch-words or phrases ; many repetitions (because so easily and economically made) of the same idea under different catch-words in different places in the alphabet ; and a convenient immunity from rules as rigid as those which determine the construction of Catalogues.

### Indexes to the Contents of Books.

Indexes to Books rank as a kind of Work of Reference, and are such necessary aids to research, in particular kinds of works, that it is worth while considering them for a brief moment :—

(i.) In regard to their value and the manner in which they are compiled.

(ii.) In regard to the want of them.

(iii.) In regard to their relative position among other Works of Reference.

On the first head, it is scarcely necessary to state there is a great deal of most unsatisfactory work. This is due chiefly to lack of trained workers. The subject has been referred to, in past years, by Mr. W. Wheeler, in the *Review of Reviews*, in reference to the need of a " College of Indexers." It is, perhaps, part of a much larger question, the need in each country of an Institution for the training of librarians in every branch of their work. But, pending such possibilities, there is urgent need for the institution of Index Societies, which should investigate and publish the theory of the whole subject, both in regard to the internal character of Book-Indexes, and also very specially as to improvement in type and type arrangement.

Mr. Wheatley draws our attention to the fact that "in the 'Instructions for an Index to the Statute Law,' by Sir Henry Thring, . . . we find the following . . . definitions," relative to indexing the *Contents* of Books :—

*"The basis of an index to a book of the ordinary kind is a series of titles or catch-words, arranged in alphabetical order, and indicative of the main topics treated of in the book."*

*"The object of an Index is to indicate the place in a book, or collection of books, in which particular information is to be found. Such an index is perfect in proportion as it is concise in expression, whilst exhaustive in its indication of every important topic of the subject to which it is an index."*

Mr. Gladstone throws further light on the subject in the preface to Butler's works, in the following words :—

*"But what is the proper basis of an Index? Not to present an exhaustive analysis, but rather to supply an aid to the memory of the student. The student ought to find in the several items of an index, under the most natural and (so to speak) salient heads, every point of his author's text, to which it is likely that, in default of exact recollection, he may desire to refer. This has been the conception or plan on which these Indexes have been constructed; but the task is difficult, and, though labour has not been spared, the execution may be far from perfect."*

Certain "Rules for obtaining uniformity in the Indexes of Books," drawn up by the Committee of the late "Index Society," appear in Mr. H. B. Wheatley's "What is an Index?"

Mr. Wheeler's preface on the subject, in his interesting and valuable "Digest Index" to the *Spectator* (London, 1892, 8°), will repay perusal; and further information on the subject may be gleaned from the pages of the *Review of Reviews*, and from a study of Miss Hetherington's valuable "Index" [-Catalogue] in conjunction with Mr. Poole's great work, and its supplements.

(1) In regard to the want of Indexes to Books, I believe the remedy lies more with the *Authors* than the Publishers. If authors realised how greatly their works are reduced in value for want of Indexes, they would not be so content to issue them without making due provision for the same.

But even when provided, Indexes are too often deprived of their full value for want of being issued in separate volumes. Of course, this only occurs in the case of large works. But it is a frequent occurrence, and should be guarded against. Sir William Hunter's "Indian Gazetteer" is an instance where the Index has been issued as a separate volume.

The Index to the *Pharmacographia Indica* (pp. 1-84), published in 1893, being hand-cuffed to an Appendix (pp. 85-206), at once loses much of its value as an Index.

(2) In regard to the relative value of Indexes, as Works of Reference, it is this: there are, perhaps, a hundred volumes, either of a single journal, or separate works, which you might like to consult (knowing that they bear upon your subject), if you knew the exact nature of the contents.

(1) For want of Indexes to those volumes, you either have to send for each of the hundred volumes, to find, to your cost (and that of the library staff), that 60 per cent. of them are useless to you.

- (2) You do not send for them, and you have lost 40 per cent. of works bearing upon your subject.
- (3) And when you have the 40 per cent. of books, you have to spend a week, instead of one hour, examining their contents.

The moral of which is that there should be more care spent in adding proper indexes to books published, and that extra separate copies of these indexes placed in the reference shelves of a Reading Room would be of the greatest service to everybody concerned.

### Concordances.

In discussing the subject of Indexes, we must not forget the existence of "Concordances," the main principle of which is to index every word of a work. A Concordance is the most extreme type of Index possible.

### Abstracts, Summaries, or Digests.

Abstracts of Works, or of particular Sections of Works, constitute a kind of Work of Reference. A Title tells you a little about a book ; a Table of Contents tells you more ; an Abstract tells you still more ; an Index tells you sometimes more, and sometimes less.

### Digest-Indexes.

The *Digest-Index* is another form of Work of Reference to bear in mind, *i.e.*, a combination of an Index and an Abstract of Subjects, in contrast to mere Word-Indexes. The Index to Mr. Gladstone's edition of Butler's Works appears to me to be of this description. An instance of such a work on a large scale is seen in "The Spectator: a Digest-Index. By William Wheeler." *Lond.*, 1892, 8°.

*Note.*—Some of these latter kinds of Works of Reference do not properly fall within the limits of this work ; but it is necessary to note their existence as parts of a complete scheme of Bibliography.

F.C.

*Note.*—As a further illustration of the subject of this chapter, I have added a Memorandum on "Some Works of Reference, and what they teach us." (*Vide* Sect. II., No. 5.)

## CHAPTER III.

**An Introduction to the Theory of the Classification  
of Literature.**

"It often seems to me as if History was like a Child's Box of Letters, with which we can spell any word we please. We have only to pick out such letters as we want; arrange them as we like; and say nothing about those which do not suit our purpose."—(*Froude*).

[So is it with the Science of Classification; but we *must* have the Letters.]

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Past Prejudices : their Cause.  
 The one Essential.  
 The Present Situation.  
 The Remedy.

*The Theory.*

Object I. To classify the Literature *issued in* a Country.  
 Object II. To classify the Literature *relating to* a Country.

## Disturbing elements in Classification.

Dispersion of Materials of History.  
 Scattered Records of Materials of History.  
 Illogical Association of Subjects in Books, and Series of Books.  
 Insufficient Titles.  
 Pamphlets *v.* Books.  
 Rare Books  
 Time (Archæology).  
 Other Factors.

## Methods of Classification.

Direct Classification.  
 Transverse Classification.  
 Large-Group and Small-Group Classification.  
 Intermingling of Subjects.

Periodical Re-definitions of the Sciences required.

Gradations of Classification.

Mode of Classification recommended.

General Memoranda.

## An Introduction to the Theory of the Classification of Literature.

“What is history,” said Napoleon, “but a fiction agreed upon”—a doctrine which the German Socialistic leader, Herr Liebknecht, has lately preached. Thus extremes meet. The only point on which librarians are united is that classification is a question *disagreed upon*? And yet some classifications are very easy—as that of the lady (Principal Shairp’s friend) who spoke of “people that kindled, and people that didn’t.” We most of us are able to class our little worlds into two sections—possible and impossible people; and are thus classed in return. Was it not Sir Joseph Hooker who divided humanity in two classes—the man with whom you could go tiger-shooting, and the man with whom you couldn’t! “But,” cries a learned librarian, “a man can’t be two things at once; it is impossible; I won’t allow it.” So, while Sir William Hooker is catalogued as a Botanist, poor Sir Joseph Hooker is classed with the Tiger-Shooters!

Here is the history of Classification in a nutshell. For years, librarians have allowed themselves to regard the question solely from the aspect of Classification of Books *on the Shelf*. “You cannot *place* the same book on two shelves”—which is true! but, unfortunately, they transferred the same argument to the Catalogue, and implied that you could not *catalogue* a book in more than one place. So much for the evil resulting from this unfortunate principle of making “**Shelf Catalogues**” of libraries the sorry substitutes for proper “Subject-Catalogues.”

But the above is not the only cause of error and bewilderment. I have shown, in another part of this work, how the cause of Classification has been condemned, solely through a misunderstanding of the relative value of the different kinds of Works of Reference required. Having demanded of *Class-Catalogues* that they should perform the duties of *Author-Catalogues*, many librarians have maligned them, and pronounced them useless, because they (obviously) failed to comply—there being as much sense in such a request as there would be if you discharged your coachman because he could not cook.



But the other chief cause alluded to is the long-cherished fallacy that Classification was impossible and useless; because it was impossible for two men to agree together upon the subject—as if two men ever agreed upon any subject in its details (except, perhaps, “Pip” and Herbert at the “Geographical Chop-house”). It has been dinned into our ears, by inference, that, unless we could discover a divine chart of the natural laws of Classification, we had better not try and imitate them; *whereas, the only one really essential factor in the whole controversy is that, in our studies, we should know what we want.* Lieber is said to have desired “a sort of *Œcumenical Council of jurists, without a Pope and without infallibility.*” This is what we want among Bibliographers. Let us pursue the subject in reference to a particular case. I am interested in Architecture. I do not care how you choose to classify the works relating to the subject. Classify them as you please; scatter them in a hundred different directions. But give me the works I want—all the works bearing on Architecture. I know what I want, and you must satisfy me. There is a work on Building-Stones, written by a Geologist, and classed with Geology? Give it me. The Chemist has written on Mortar? Send to that Chemist. The Lawyer has written a treatise on the *Law* of House-building. Hand it me, quick! The men of Physics have discoursed on Acoustical laws, on Laws of Light, on Mechanics; I want all their books whenever they bear upon Architecture. The men of War have written about Norman Castles; the men of Art have helped them; the Physicians have treated of porous walls and sanitation; Artists on Studios; Chemists on the theory of Laboratories; Librarians on the ventilation of Reading Rooms; and a hundred other professions have each contributed their quota. Give them all to me.

“I am very sorry,” says the librarian, “but I cannot supply your requests. I can, however, direct you to the Geologist, the Chemist, the Lawyer, the Physicists, the men of War and of Art, to the Doctors and the Chemists, and *they* will be able to help you.”

My face falls and assumes a look of blank despair. “But why cannot *you* supply me with the books?”

“Well, sir, because the scientific men took them all away. Each one said that the particular work belonged to *him*, and that it was of no interest to anyone else; and each one said that if I wished to catalogue the work, I was to catalogue it under his particular profession, and under no other. And so I did.”

The above is no exaggeration of the state of Bibliography. The presence of General Libraries renders it possible for most men to get the books they require. But in regard to the *Titles* of the books on particular subjects, it is not so. Here we find the case is exactly parallel to the above sketch. Each branch of learning, thinking only of itself, grabs a title and runs off with it, and all the other branches are defrauded. "But," says a mortal (who, not having suffered himself, is very complacent in the matter), "why not let each one come and take what he wants?" "Very well," you answer, "let us try the experiment." So the library is placed at the disposal of the men of "Natural Science," who remain there a month and then go away. The Theologians, the Philosophers, the Historians, and eight other branches of learning each have their month's turn. At the end of the year it is discovered that they have each of them catalogued 40 per cent. of the same titles twelve times over; and the only way to avoid the waste of eleven months is to have twelve libraries containing the same books, for if they were all to attack the same library at the same time, they would get in one another's way and quarrel.

What, then, is the remedy? The remedy is simple. Let one staff at the library which possesses the complete collection of the books, catalogue the books once well, and distribute copies of the printed Catalogue to the twelve Branches of Learning, and the whole thing is done—at the least, the worst part of the work. "But," says one professor, "I have not time to look through all these titles to find the ones I want; I wish you (turning to the staff) would be my agents, and do it for me. Just make a list of all the works on my subject, and I can touch it up afterwards." And in course of time each branch of learning finds it to its advantage to follow the same example. Thus, all wants are supplied. The Lists of Works are made by a trained staff in one place, from a *complete* collection of works, with the greatest speed and accuracy. All that is required is that each branch of learning shall state what it wants, in order that those wants may be supplied.

But are there no other difficulties to be overcome? Will the staff encounter no obstacles in classifying Literature? For answer: They will meet with difficulties; but with no difficulties which they will not be able to overcome or greatly minimise.

The chief necessity is a grasp of the *principles* of Classification, and the relationship between the several branches of learn-

ing. The following remarks are offered as a contribution to the subject—a very imperfect contribution, but yet, it is hoped, one which may not be altogether useless to students of Bibliography.

The first point of importance is to be clear in your own mind as to what you are going to do. You are going to classify the books before you. For what purpose? For answer: We must remember that there are two ways in which Literature must be classified.

- I. We wish to classify Literature that is ISSUED in a particular country.
- II. We wish to classify the Literature RELATING to a particular country. (And the majority of works *relating* to a country should naturally (in theory) be published *in* that country).

### **Disturbing Elements in Classification.**

The first subject which should engage our attention, preparatory to embarking on actual classification work, is the consideration of those factors which are elements of *disturbance*, over which we have little or no control.

Apart from the inability of human knowledge to grasp the absolute relationship of the various parts of the visible and invisible, we are confronted by the fact that the natural elements are ever changing, developing and intermingling in such a way as to greatly hinder the clearness of all record of them.

But apart from the “automatic” changes in nature, and in the natural growth of nations, man himself contributes very greatly to the difficulties of classification, from the fact that one nation is perpetually playing the historian for another by proxy, and by the frequent removal of the materials of history from one part of the world to another. In Sir Clements Markham’s words, “*Locality* is the basis on which nearly all human knowledge rests.” The natural order of historical study is to study the life of each territory on the spot, and to record those studies on the spot, or in obvious connection with the particular locality. Yet the chronicler of the history of any particular country finds a large amount of his material scattered in every other country but the country itself, and records his observations in another quarter of the globe, and publishes them with other Series of Records, of a greatly different nature. The natural law of historical record is

that primarily each country records its own history; that that history should be recorded on the spot, and be published on the spot, in definite connection with the particular locality. Thus the record of knowledge in connection with Egypt, India and Palestine, should be issued as parts of complete Local Series, of which all the parts were united.

	AMERICA.	EGYPT.	INDIA.	PALESTINE.	G.B. & I.
SUBJECTS OF HISTORY.	Agriculture.	—	Agriculture.	—	Agriculture.
	Art.	—	Art.	—	Art.
	Botany.	—	Botany.	—	Botany.
	History.	—	History.	—	History.
	Philosophy.	—	Philosophy.	—	Philosophy.
	Religion.	—	Religion.	—	Religion.
	Zoology.	—	Zoology.	—	Zoology.

But, in the course of the world's life, what do we find?—the reverse. If we were able to trace the parts, we should find that a great deal of the materials of the history of the Art, natural history and religion of these countries was removed to Europe (England, France, Germany, &c.) and America; and that likewise the printed historical records, based upon those materials, were buried in the literature of Europe and America, in addition to the fact that the greater part of *any* published records would be issued in countries other than the one most interested.

A writer (W. Marsham Adams), in the *Standard* of February 10th, 1896, emphasises this fact in a letter on "The Records of Ancient Egypt," of which the following is the first paragraph:—

"To the Editor of the *Standard*.

"SIR,—Heavy as must be the pressure on your space just now, I hope you may find room for a matter having interest for all who care for the extension of *our historical and social knowledge*. It is not necessary for me to enlarge on the unique value of the Egyptian papyri, nor to dwell upon the

circumstances under which they have been dispersed over half the museums of Europe, to say nothing of the private collections, *where they lie well nigh as profoundly buried as if they were in their original tombs*. Some of these institutions, it is true, have published catalogues drawn up by Egyptologists of celebrity; but even these are necessarily *confined to the particular collection*, and usually to a special class of document. And there is, I believe, scarcely an Egyptologist living who could say what collections, public or private, or even what countries it would be necessary to visit, in order to collate all the evidence extant in regard to any particular period of Egyptian history, or any particular point of Egyptian doctrine."

It is not alleged that such removal of materials is necessarily wrong; for, in most cases, but for their removal, the sources of history would have perished long ago, or the history would *never* have been recorded. All that is pointed out is that the system by which the history of one nation is written disjointedly by a score of other nations, is a very serious disturbing element in the Science of Classification; because, so far as the record of knowledge is not an abstract record, but one in direct relationship to particular countries, *complete* Classified Records are an impossibility, in the absence of a much more perfect International Bibliography than at present exists.

In one sense, Egypt and Palestine are doubtful countries to choose as types; because in such cases Orientalists do take very special measures to record the literature which interests them; but this can only be a comparative record, even though it be of a high order.

Owing to the above causes, we are unable to classify the Literature RELATING TO a particular country completely; because the factors are scattered over the face of the earth.

### Compilation and Publication.

#### (Collected Literature).

The next element of disturbance to note is that which is treated of, at greater length, in other parts of this work, in connection with the stages of *Compilation* and *Publication*, viz., *the treatment of diverse subjects in the same section, book and series*.

### **The Value of the Section.**

To grasp the value of the **Section** in Classification, it is only necessary to imagine that if the Governments of every civilised country agreed to issue a simultaneous Census Report relating to their territories, and these Census Reports were compiled upon the same system, and divided, so far as circumstances allowed, into similar sections on *Education*, *Labour*, *Religion*, *&c.*, and all agreed to use the same sectional titles, and to strike off a few extra copies of such sections; the binding together of these sectional reports would constitute so many Reports on *Education*, *Labour*, and *Religion* in the whole civilised world.

### **Illogical Association of Subjects.**

As regards, more especially, the evil of illogical association of **Subject-Matter** in **Books** and **Series of Books**, it is evident that if a man deliberately writes about *Politics* and *Architecture* in the same book, and, moreover, weaves in a treatise on *Philosophy*, and a publishing body associates the work in a series relating to *Natural Science*, the Bibliographers will have a little unravelling to do. And yet this is an evil which, avoidably and unavoidably, is repeated every day on a large scale.

This (from the Bibliographer's point of view) ill-assortment of subjects is most noticeable, as the result of the different forms of publishing, which result in the issue of *Collected Literature* in *Ordinary Collected Works*, *Journals of Learned Societies*, and *Independent Periodicals*; and in order to extract the hidden parts, there is no other way but to first obtain an exact periodical record of the titles of every work which contains such collections.

### **Insufficient Titles.**

Insufficient Titles constitute other disturbing elements, in the cases—so common—where literary workers cannot examine the works themselves, and are obliged to guess the nature of the books, as best they can, from the Titles. This has been a source of much evil, not only in many libraries, but to innumerable scholars.

### **Pamphlets.**

The separation on the shelves of "*Pamphlets*" and "*Books*" (when imitated in the Catalogue) is another obstacle to Classifica-

tion, since it creates two libraries instead of one, or is made to do so. Such a separation has its use on the shelf, but it is *very questionable* how far it is justified in a Catalogue.

### "Rare Books."

The existence of Works characterised by some special individuality, such as *rareness*, art-workmanship, curiosity, &c., while not *necessarily* a disturbing factor in classification, is responsible for the result that Bibliographers have been greatly indifferent as to the issue of Systematic Subject-Catalogues (on International principles), so long as the works they were interested in had once been catalogued as Collections of "Rare Books."

### Other Factors.

There are yet other factors to mention, such as ordinary *Time*, *Place*, *different periods of Time*, and *different Place-areas*. But these are not so much disturbing elements as natural qualifying factors, which affect all literary record.

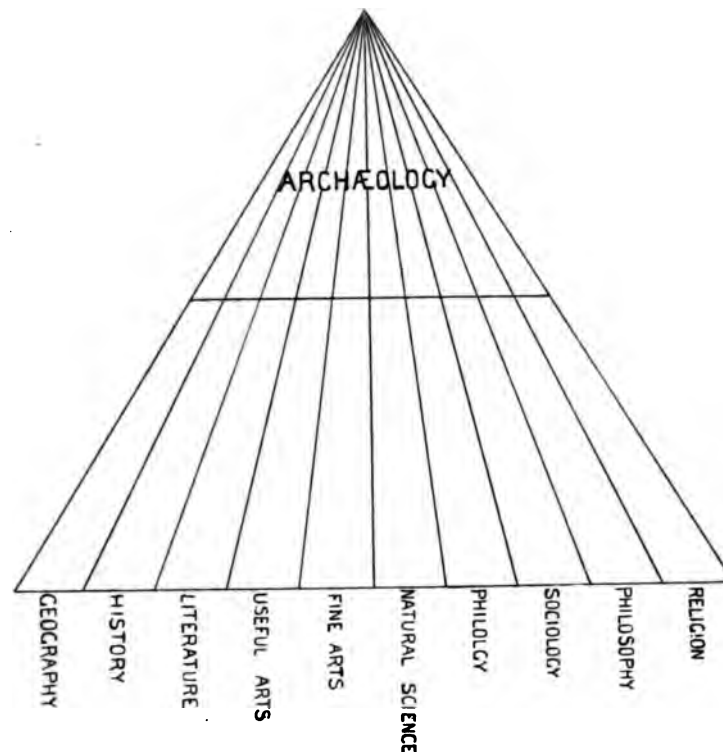
### Time.

In connection with particular phases in the life-history of the world, *Time* has proved a serious factor of disturbance in Classification, in so far as it creates separate worlds of Literature—an Ancient World, a Mediæval World, a Modern World. Thus, under the terms, **Archæology**,<sup>1</sup> **Antiquities**, **Antiquarianism**<sup>1</sup> and **Classics**, the continued sequence of *subject-history* is interrupted in an indefinite manner, and Classification seriously interfered with. It is necessary for the student to bear this in mind.

There is also a danger of associating the term Archæology too exclusively with art, sculpture, inscriptions, &c. Perhaps the best antidote to such a tendency is to read a letter by Professor G. Schweinfurth in the *Times* of August 20, 1895, where he complains of the destruction (by archæological excavating parties) of vegetable remains (offered to the dead), and shows how other sciences, "as well as Botany and Zoology, are losers" thereby. It is well to remember that Archæology is, strictly speaking, represented by the following Diagram :—

---

<sup>1</sup> " *Antiquarianism* deals with relics of the past rather as objects of mere curiosity, or as interesting merely on account of their antiquity; Archæology studies them as means to a scientific Knowledge of the past." (The Century Dictionary).



### Methods of Classification.

Having considered the disturbing elements, we should now endeavour to get a clear idea of the various methods of Classification. There is, first, the method which we may call

#### Simple or Direct Classification—

*i.e.*, that method which regards Literature in the light of a number of direct streams (*e.g.*, *vide* Dewey), which streams branch away into other minor streams, which again sub-divide indefinitely.

These streams, it will be observed, have primarily no connection with one another. But in accordance with the laws of the world, there are cross-streams of Literature, which give rise to what may be called

#### Transverse Classification.

*Transverse* connection of Subjects is an obvious process always in operation. It is evident that it needs only a sufficient



amount of intellect or imagination to show how every subject will ultimately affect every other subject in some way or other, directly or indirectly.

The symbol of Direct Classification is that of addition only, e.g., *Painting and Sculpture among the Ancients* would be represented by *Painting + Sculpture*. The symbol of Transverse Classification is primarily that of multiplication. Thus, "Browning and the Christian Faith" would be represented by *Poetry × Religion*. But there is also *Sectional Classification* to consider, i.e., the putting together of parallel sections, which, while primarily intended to illustrate one subject generally, illustrate another specially, if compiled on the same lines. This symbol is that of addition. Examples are quoted elsewhere in reference to *Gazetteers of India*, and a *Census of the world*.

The above is also represented by the statement that works relate

- (1) To one single subject or group of subjects.
- (2) To more than one in equal proportion.
- (3) To more than one in unequal proportion.
  - (a) Art.
  - (b) Art and Religion. (Simple or Direct Classification).
  - (c) The Philosophy of Art. (Transverse Classification).

The following diagram (p. 67) represents the ideal transverse connection of subject, i.e., a case in which any one subject-group is viewed from the standpoint of any other subject-group.

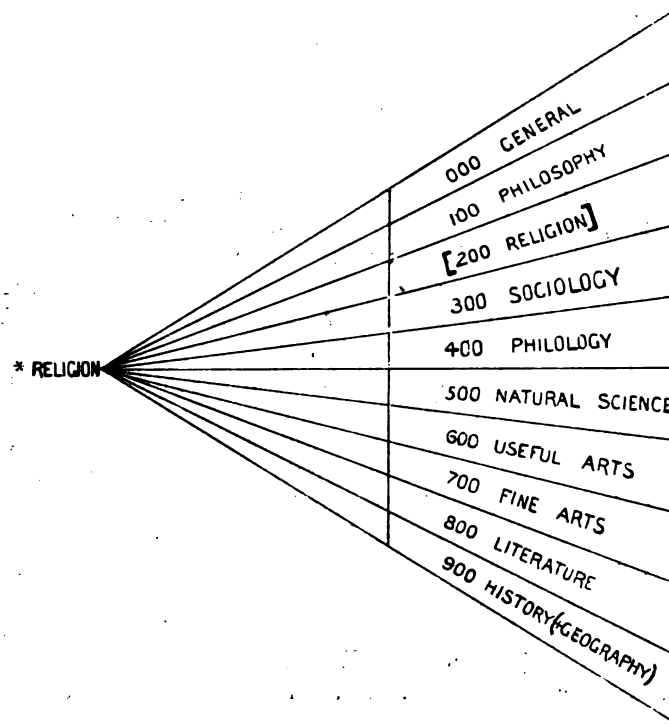
### Large-Group and Small-Group Classification.

I have dealt with this part of my subject elsewhere in reference to the composition of Subject-Catalogues.

It is necessary that we should have some sort of terms to use in reference to the grouping of subjects. And the above terms will be found useful, even though they are purely relative terms.

### Intermingling of Subjects.

Transverse Classification is a subject to which we must return, on account of its extreme importance. But having once clearly realised the factor of *Transverseness*, it is perhaps better to consider it under the above heading, in urging that such interaction between different subjects should be studied as a special branch of Bibliography; both by general Librarians, who have



† For which substitute Philosophy, Sociology, Philology, Natural Science, Useful Arts, Fine Arts, Literature, History, Geography—as the case may be.

time to contribute their help, and by Librarians to the special Professions.

The action of the mind of man (wave-thought) may be compared to that of a River which, streaming onward, is alternately flushed with other streams, so that you cannot say absolutely: "This is," but only "This is—as near as we can estimate," or "It is more of *This* than of *That*." As the stream-wave is directed to any well-defined point, and passes through a particular territory, so we periodically check it off between locks, and regard the intermediate stretches as the first, second, third, &c., developments of the subject.

This *relativeness* of Classification is alluded to by John Stuart Mill in the following words:—

"The ends of scientific classification are best answered when the objects are formed into groups, *respecting which a*

*greater number of general prepositions can be made, and those prepositions most important [? for the particular end in view, than those which could be made respecting any other groups into which the same things could be distributed."*

The same idea has been expressed by Sir Clements Markham in regard to the sectional arrangement of the Moral and Material Progress Report of India, where he says that each section treats "of a special administration subject, or group of subjects, the aim being to include in each section *those subjects which have more characteristics in common with one another* [for the purpose in question] *than any of them have in common with any other report not in that section.*"

Compare the preface to a work on Geology, published in 1864, where the author (Medlicott) writes:—

"The following Memoir is, primarily, a record of Geological observations; but, as work of systematic Geological observation could not be carried on without implicating many questions in physical Geography and other kindred sciences, this report treats also of these subjects, *in so far as they appear to be connected with the geology of the District.*"

Compare also Prof. Marshall on the Classification of the Physical Sciences (in contrast to Economics):—

"In physical sciences . . . whenever it is seen that a group of things have a certain set of qualities in common, and will often be spoken of together, they are formed into a new class with a special name; and as soon as a new notion emerges, a technical term is invented to represent it."

A knowledge of the inter-action of subjects, and the fine distinctions between the several branches of learning is so valuable, even from the point of view of an ordinary education, that more serious study should be bestowed upon it.

Do we all know what is the difference between Legislation and Jurisprudence? We probably do not, and should confound the two ideas. But read J. S. Mill's review on "Austin on Jurisprudence," and you find that while "Mr. Austin's subject was Jurisprudence, Bentham's was Legislation." Read further, and you find the subject of Jurisprudence subtly analysed:—"Mr. Maine's operation is essentially historical; not only in the mode of prosecuting his inquiry, but in the nature of the inquiry itself. He investigates, not properly the *Philosophy of Law*, but the *Philosophy of the History of Law*."

Whereas, Mr. Austin's method of treatment is different:

"He considers them ("Legal Systems") in respect of what may be called their *organic structure*," and then Mill proceeds to further explain at length Austin's different treatment of the subject. A further perusal of Mill's review will convince Librarians that the would-be Bibliographer (in the field of Classification) has not completed his education unless he has a knowledge of the outlines of John Austin's "The Province of Jurisprudence determined" (1863) "On the Uses of the Study of Jurisprudence" (1863).

Allusion has been made to the power of the *imagination* in interpolating ideas. Here is a pretty example:—a work entitled "New and Rare . . . Plants." This would be simply a work on Botany. But insert two words: "New and Rare *Beautiful-leaved* Plants," and at once you have the transverse influence of the factor Art introduced. To draw those leaves in stiff pattern, you would require some geometrical knowledge—here is mathematics. This reminds you that someone has written on mathematics as "a means of culture," and that Prof. Marshall has alluded to the value of mathematics in Economic Questions—and thus the stream of thought runs on.

But the repeated intermingling of different subjects in different combinations is more noticeable in the case of the Natural Sciences as a class, and this is a subject which may well engage serious study in the future, in order that the evil may be diminished and controlled. A natural instance is seen in the report of the "Seventh International Congress of Hygiene and Demography . . . London, 1891." Here we find the following table of contents:—

*Division I.—HYGIENE.*

Section I. Preventive Medicine.

- .. II. Bacteriology.
- .. III. Relation of the Diseases of Animals to those of Man.
- .. IV. Infancy, Childhood and School-Life (Education).
- .. V. **Chemistry** and Physics in relation to Hygiene.
- .. VI. **Architecture** in relation to Hygiene.
- .. VII. **Engineering** in relation to Hygiene.
- .. VIII. **Naval and Military** Hygiene.
- .. IX. **State** Hygiene.

*Division II.—DEMOGRAPHY.*

Section I. Demography, Statistics and Industrial Hygiene.

In a lecture at the Johns Hopkins University . . . 1876,  
No. 17 of "Physiological Papers, by H. Newell Martin," pub-

lished by the University, 1895, we see another instance of the laws of inter-action.

"We meet together to-morrow to formally begin the Biological work of this University—to commence that systematic study of animal and vegetable form and function, relationship and distribution, which we include under the names of Comparative Anatomy, Zoology, Physiology and Botany, or in the general terms, Biology or Natural History.

\* \* \* \*

"Furthermore, no one can properly study any branch of Biology without some knowledge of its other divisions. The fundamental laws of Animal and Vegetable life are identical, and only fully realised by comparison; so while the scientific Botanist, to fully appreciate the facts of his own science, must be something of a Zoologist, so must the Zoologist know something of plants; no one living being, or group of living beings, can be properly understood by itself," &c., &c.

In "Notes on the Year's Naval Progress," July, 1894 (*Washington*, 1894. 8°), we find the following headings in a list of

**"Some Standard Books on Professional Subjects":—**

Armour.	Metallurgy, Chemistry, &c.
Compasses.	<i>Meteorology, Laws of Storms, &amp;c.</i>
Chronometers.	Naval Ship Construction.
Electricity and Magnetism.	Navigation, Surveying, &c.
Explosives.	Ordnance.
<i>Hygiene.</i>	Tactics.
<i>International Law, &amp;c.</i>	Miscellaneous.
Machinery.	

The programme of the International Congress of Anthropology at Chicago, in 1893, included amongst its subjects:—

Physical Anthropology.	Folk-Lore.
Archæology.	Religions, and
Ethnology.	Linguistics.

A very good illustration of the inter-actions of different branches of learning is to be seen by the perusal of Gen. Richard Strachey's lecture on the subject, given before the Royal Geographical Society in 1887; and in the various addresses given on the same subject by the Presidents and members of that Society. And a recent discussion concerning the relationship of History and Biography shows (from an educational point of view) how necessary it is to define the scope and object of *every* branch of learning, if only to clear our own minds on the subject.

In a letter to the *Daily Chronicle*, September 19, 1894 (*vide* Sect. IV., No. I.), I referred to the necessity for men of science coming to the aid of the librarian, by defining as nearly and as clearly as possible the scope and limits of their respective branches of learning, so that librarians might co-operate in supplying the Subject-Catalogues they required.

In making this request, I am not unmindful of the many definitions of the sciences and their branches<sup>1</sup> which already exist, and Librarians should do *their* part by collecting such extant definitions from the speeches and writings of men who are qualified to judge, in order that they may be published as a handbook of Classification, which would form a basis of future operations.

But even if all allusions be collected in one volume, we must remember that the scope of the different sciences is perpetually enlarging, according to the necessities of evolution and the increased knowledge of man. It will therefore be necessary, year by year, for men of science to review the situation afresh, and to acquaint librarians with the results of their survey, and the extent of their needs.

To sum up briefly, what we require is—

- (1) That the Scientists should take steps to record, in a suitable manner, the most recent developments of classification in their respective spheres.
- (2) That such a Record take the form of a Standing Manual, with Annual Supplements.
- (3) That, as progress of ideas varies in different countries, each of the leading countries should issue their own Manuals of Classification, based upon some common general principles.

I have already stated that from a National point of view we require to classify and Catalogue—

- (1) The works issued *in* a country.
- (2) The works relating *to* a country.

We have next to consider what method of classification to adopt. For answer :

The methods possible are—

(A) **Broad General Classifications**, in which we are content to collect the titles (with no particular sub-arrangement) under the leading, largest Subject-Groups in ordinary use, such as appear in Mr. Dewey's Catalogue on General Works ; Philosophy ; Religion ; Sociology ; Philology ; Natural Sciences ; Useful Arts ; Fine Arts ; History (and Geography).

---

<sup>1</sup> Such as is given in the recent work issued by the New Sydenham Society on *Pharmacology*.

(B) **Small-Group Classifications**, which would increase the number of Class-Catalogues to about one hundred. (*Vide* Dewey.)

(C) **Smallest-Group Classifications**, *i.e.*, that system which classifies until it can classify no longer, thus resolving all groups into their lowest factors.

These being the methods possible, what is to determine our policy? The answer depends upon the *object* of the Class-Catalogues.

There are two kinds of Classification to bear in mind—

- (i.) The very minute Classification required by Specialists (especially in the Natural Sciences).
- (ii.) The more *general* Classifications, which would suffice for the wants of an ordinary general student, with a greater command of time at his disposal.

It is evident, then, that if we can supply both wants at the same time we shall effect an economy.

It is also evident that it is impossible that the General Classification should content the Specialist, since he requires, at a moment's notice, to find whatever has been written, on the smallest sub-division which can exist. Therefore, since the special Classification need not impede the general scholar (because he has the *same* factors set out before him), the obvious policy is to compile a *Specialists'* Catalogue, and refer the general student to it. This is what Mr. Dewey has done, and his policy seems justified in every way.

The next question which will be asked, is one relative to the possibilities of planning a *perfect* Classification. It is a common idea to imagine that unless a Classification is perfect (whatever that may mean) it must be useless. This is not the case. There are **Three Essentials**.

The *first* I have already referred to, *viz.*, that when we approach a Catalogue, we should **know what we want to find**.

The *second* is that the Classification, being a natural one (as opposed to fanciful one involving prolonged processes of thought), and **approximately correct**, should be consistently maintained.

The *third* is that **men should agree to it**.

And this consistency of execution is made possible by means of the Index of Matters, suggested and used by Mr. Dewey. Suppose the worst case. Suppose a case in which a mad Librarian had classed Geography under Philosophy, or Classification of

Literature under Engineering. So long as his successors continued his policy, or remedied it very quickly, it would not be a vital error, provided that all the works on Geography and Classification were each kept together as *compact sections*, because I should soon know that Geography was entered under any Block 100, and that Classification was under 620; and if I forgot these facts, the Index would always set me right.

As a matter of fact Meteorology appears under Geology in the Dewey Catalogue. While, perhaps, technically necessary, this might surprise a good many people. Yet it is not a vital error, *so long as it is kept in the same pigeon hole, and that pigeon hole is numbered.*

With the above remarks I must conclude, merely appending a few rough notes of a general character, which may be of use as suggestions to somebody.

#### General Memoranda.

The titles of Books, in a Nation's Literature, are common property, which should be monopolised by no one classified List as belonging to it by peculiar right.

Classification is both *Absolute* and *Relative*. Classification is affected by—

- (1) Geographical and Political Area.
- (2) The Race Element.
- (3) The Natural Divisions of Literature.
- (4) The Artificial Divisions of Literature.
- (5-6) The Natural Divisions of the Visible and Invisible.
- (7) The object with which a work is written (if that object be fulfilled).
- (8) The proportion in which one subject enters into another.
- (9) Evolution of Mind and Matter and the action of Man.  
(Artificial application.)
- (10) Due attention to or neglect of the Laws of Compilation and Publication in regard to  
Association of Thought.  
Association of Section or Paragraph.  
Association of Series.  
Choice of Title.
- (11) Simple or Direct order of Classification.
- (12) Transverse order of Classification.

The larger the number of works the greater the need for subdivision.



The more special the work the greater the need for Classification.

Classification of *the same class of works* will vary—

According to the length of a catalogue (often affected by TIME).

According to the class of Readers (General Readers or Specialists).

According to the system of Publication pursued in the Series.

Artificial Classifications are permissible when they follow the prevalent line of Thought, Action, and Writing; but not permissible as the result of a fanciful creation, *e.g.*, which endeavours to force unnatural conclusions involving a series of processes of thought.

If a work belong to Six different classes, enter it six times over. Why not?

It is wrong to depend for Bibliographies upon the Shelf-Catalogues of Libraries.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

### The Influence and Functions of the Learned Societies in regard to Bibliography.

“ I have forced the Rivers to flow where I willed, and I have willed them only where it was useful.”—QUEEN SEMIRAMIS.

#### TABLE OF CONTENTS.

The Keynote	
Increase of Societies.	
One Publishing Body.	
Their Publications—One Series	
(1) Including numerous privately printed Periodicals containing (2) :—	
(2) Collected Literature ;	
(3) Their scope often vague and undefined, thus increasing the difficulties of Classification ;	
(4) Lack of Works of Reference.	
(5) Not a matter for Private Enterprise alone ;	
(6) Need for State Systems of Bibliography ;	
(7) The increase of Congresses, National and International.	
What is required of the Learned Societies ?	
International Aspects.	
Past and Present efforts of the Learned Societies in Bibliography.	

#### The Learned Societies.

The Publications issued by the “ Learned Societies ” naturally occupy so conspicuous a position in the world of Literature, that any work on the Theory of Bibliography must refer to them in a very special manner, both on account of the extraordinary increase in their number and value, and also on account of the peculiar difficulties which they raise, and the special treatment they require.

I have dealt with certain aspects of the subject in two papers written in 1895, the one on the Record of the Literature of Geography (Sect. II., No. 9), and the other on Periodical Literature (Chap. V.) ; but there are certain other points which it is necessary to touch upon, in writing a general review of the subject.

If any grey-headed octogenarian were concluding an address to an assembly of Learned Societies, and wished to give them

some fatherly advice, he would say: "*Organise yourselves more exactly according to the natural divisions and sub-divisions of Science. Study and write according to those Divisions. Publish your works according to those Divisions, and then they will be already classified, and will only have to be catalogued and indexed in order to be easily accessible to the student.*"

Sound as such advice would be, it could, of course, never be strictly practised. At the same time, such recommendations would be based upon one of the great fundamental principles of Bibliography, and are, therefore, here quoted as the keynote of the following essay:

The first feature of our subject which strikes us is the extraordinary **increase in the number of Societies** of different kinds. Thus in 1883-1884, the President of the Italian Geographical Society stated that while in 1830 there existed but three Geographical Societies (Paris, Berlin, and London), and in 1867 sixteen societies, in 1882 no less than seventy-nine were enumerated in Behm's "*Jahrbuch*;" and, of course that number has been still more increased. And there is a corresponding increase in many other sections of the scientific world.

The next point to notice is the fact that the Learned Societies constitute

### **One Publishing Body,**

which, having mapped out the world of science in a general manner, publishes treatises of a particular nature, which may be said to constitute *one Series*,<sup>1</sup> made up of many Series, and which, therefore, requires special treatment as a Series.

In regard to other matters for consideration, the chief points of interest to notice concerning the Publications of Learned Societies are:--

(1) That a very large number of them are **Periodical Publications** (*Privately Printed*);

(2) That these, under a variety of unimportant names (Journals, Transactions, Proceedings, Bulletins, &c., &c.), chiefly contain *monographs* of varied length, *i.e.*, "**collected**" Literature;

(3) That, whereas the majority, perhaps, of Societies deal, in the main, with distinct branches of Learning, their **scope** is not as clearly defined as it might be, with the result that the

---

<sup>1</sup> The admirable Catalogues of German University Dissertations and School Programmes illustrate this principle of the *Series*.

articles contained in the same magazine refer to many diverse subjects, thus increasing the difficulties of classification and study for the bibliographer and the student respectively;

(4) That, whereas such Periodical Literature deals with questions, not only of the day, but even of the hour, the progress of knowledge is much delayed for want of Works of Reference, which shall inform students of the titles and nature of articles printed;

(5) That the primary compilation of such Works of Reference is beyond the power of private enterprise, and can only successfully be undertaken by Governments;

(6) That the want of such Works of Reference, in most countries, dealing with such Periodical Literature, is, therefore, due to the want of National systems of Bibliography;

(7) The remarkable increase of National and International Congresses, representing the Learned Societies.

#### Privately Printed Publications.

The result of (1) the Publications of the Learned Societies being, in so many cases, *privately* printed, is that they do not fall under the provisions of Copyright Law, and are thus more liable to be lost. The Learned Societies are, however, most generous in presenting copies of their publications to various libraries. But there are two points, elsewhere alluded to at length, in which the Learned Societies are, as a body, great offenders. They are unbusinesslike in the regular despatch of their Publications; and they are careless concerning the numerous details of Publication, which may so easily make or mar a work.

These inconsistencies are great—in fact, they may be said to comprise every sin of omission or commission which could possibly be committed against the laws of Bibliography, if we include the faults occurring in connection with the publications from the many different countries.

In Chap V., App. C., I have endeavoured to attract attention to the subject by suggesting the points to be borne in mind, but which are too frequently ignored.

It is not, therefore, an unreasonable request to ask that the Learned Societies, as a body, shall take steps to investigate and report on the present systems of Publication with regard to their improvement.

### Collected Literature.

In regard to (2), it is easy to prove that the Learned Societies have abused the system of inserting articles in Journals, in the numerous cases where monographs of great length and value have been gratuitously massed together with other lesser productions, in envolved series of Collected Works, so as to render them less accessible than they might otherwise be; and that this practice is nowhere less defensible than in the case of the immurement of Special Bibliographies.

Of course, there are reasons to account for the practice, *viz.*, financial considerations, and the fact that it is easier, from a secretariat point of view, to circulate works printed and bound in one volume, than to circulate several isolated works; and, at least, the works of a particular Society will be kept together, and not lost, if bound in collected volumes.

On the other hand, it is possible to "pack works away" so securely that nobody will ever find them. It is worthy of consideration, therefore, whether the Societies should not avail themselves, to a larger extent, of the principle of issuing the works referred to as Series of numbered but *separately paged* and *separately stitched* Monographs, as we find adopted in certain instances.

### A More Exact Mapping out of the Field of Knowledge.

In reference to (3), it seems probable that, with the advance of time, societies (which are not purely *dilettante*) will agree to divide the area of knowledge more definitely between them, so as to avoid trenching upon one another's provinces. At the same time, it must be borne in mind that no attempts to define scientific areas will absolutely overcome the fact that where the various sciences meet and cross one another, the several exponents will always continue to trench upon one another's ground, and this is the strongest argument in favour of there being (5-6) a

### Central Registering Bureau.

which would effect a mutual exchange of registered titles among the interested parties. As an instance of a Society, which (on account of the size of the island and smallness of the community) is obliged to be of a very general nature—thus increasing the difficulties of classification and rendering a central Bureau imperative—the following is a striking instance:—

"The design of the Ceylon Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society is to institute and promote inquiries into the **History, Religions, Languages, Literature, Arts and Social Condition** of the present and former inhabitants [(Archæology)] of the Island of Ceylon, with its **Geology** and **Mineralogy**, its **Climate** and **Meteorology**, its **Botany** and **Zoology**."

Thus, in the absence of one central system, and on the supposition that its programme is no further extended, there are some thirteen different branches of learning here directly represented, apart from those indirectly represented. According to present systems, thirteen different persons will all have to peruse the Publications of that Society in order to extract each their one-thirteenth share; whereas, if the Publications were once carefully catalogued at a Central Bureau, and that Catalogue were printed, it could be distributed to the other twelve, and thus save nearly twelve-thirteenths of time and labour.

Similarly, if the learned Societies number one thousand, nearly 999 parts of the labour are saved through this one process, so far as the work of *search* and the plain copying of titles is concerned.

### Amalgamation of Societies.

In future years we are bound to see a yet greater tendency for Societies to amalgamate or affiliate themselves together, for the attendant advantages are so great. Thus those who were interested in a particular subject could subscribe to particular Societies with the knowledge that their money was expended absolutely on that subject.

They would, moreover, be having the benefit of access to a *really* Special Collection of the similar works of other absolutely kindred Societies. They could also meet together to discuss their *one* object, without discussing objects which did not immediately concern them. It would, moreover, be possible to develop the excellent principle adopted by the "Archæological Societies in union with the Society of Antiquaries," of instituting the compilation and printing of Co-operative Annual Catalogues and Indexes to their several Series of Publications.

The Annual Report of the Department of Agriculture of Ontario, uniting as it does (1894, Vols. 1-2) the reports of the small Agricultural Associations mentioned below, affords an instance of the principle of the amalgamation of the publications

of kindred Societies. And those who are acquainted with the world of Science, Literature and Art, will call to mind more striking examples of the same kind.

Agriculture and Arts' Association.	Entomological Society.
Agricultural College and Experiment Station.	Farmers' Institute.
Agricultural and Experimental Union.	Fruit Experiment Stations.
Bee-keepers' Association.	Fruit Growers' Association.
Creameries Association of Ontario.	Good Roads' Association.
Dairymen's Association of Eastern Ontario.	Industries, Bureau.
Dairymen's Association of Western Ontario.	Poultry and Pet Stock Association.
	Sheep Breeders' Association.
	Swine Breeders' Association.

### Congresses.

In reference to (7) the process of Societies combining temporarily in accordance with the subjects which interest them, is more vividly illustrated every year, and nothing is more remarkable than the tendency (almost unconscious) to recognise the common cause of humanity in every department of life, regardless of barriers of race, country, language or creed.

This movement illustrates again the incessant operations of the process by which knowledge is evolved.

Just as the works of the Learned Societies form a natural group—to be recognised as such,—so the publications of the various Congresses, representing as they do the summary of scientific knowledge of each succeeding year, constitute an *inner* group representative of the Learned Societies, and demand, therefore, a corresponding special treatment.

In other words, if librarians are to keep pace with the progress of Science, and facilitate that progress, they must publish annually:

(a) National Name-Lists of the Congresses (Conferences) which take place in their respective countries;

(b) Annual National Catalogues and Indexes of the publications of those Congresses, which must be afterwards united in the form of

(c) International Name-Lists, &c.;

(d) International Catalogues and Indexes of the several Congress publications.

In connection with the same subject (as a matter regarding the **Theory of Publication**), it will not be considered unreasonable to express the hope that we may one day obtain, as an annual

volume, the Presidential addresses delivered at the several Congresses, reprinted. Such a volume would have a special value as affording exact evidence of the progress of science in each year.

If, then, we ask :

**What is required concerning the Learned Societies in each Country ?**

The answer is :

(1) That the Learned Societies in each country be registered up to date, year by year.

(2) That the Learned Societies try to define their several jurisdictions more sharply, so as not to overlap if it can be helped.

(3) That, where possible, they should endeavour to classify the works issued in more uniform series prior to printing.

(4) That they should pay greater attention to the details of publication.

(5) That they should issue a Report on the *history* of the Bibliography of their Literature up to date, showing what has been done, and what remains to be done.

(6) That there be a Register of Names of all such Societies kept up to date.

(7) That each Society print during each year **Lists or Catalogues** of

(a) Its **Periodical Publications**, with the full titles of the Papers contained.

(b) Its **Non-Periodical Publications**, with the full titles given.

(8) That these Titles be printed so as to perform the double office of titles for Tables of Contents, and Titles for despatch to a Central Government Bureau.

(9) That the Government Bureau shall edit them on one system in the shape of printed

**Author-Catalogues,  
Subject-Catalogues,  
Indexes of Matters,**

and hand over the results to the Scientific Societies—and anyone else, to elaborate at will.

It is notorious that many Learned Societies register the literature of every other society but themselves ! If you consult their annual reports you will see long Catalogues of the accessions to their libraries for the time being, but a List of their own Publica-



tions--none! and if a List there be, it is probably hidden in the interior pages. And yet it would cost so little trouble or expense. For (in regard to the papers contributed) what is easier than to effect this by printing the Title-entries in the Tables of Contents so as to conform to the standard of a Bibliography or Catalogue? Some Periodicals (*e.g.* the "Jahrbuch der Hamburgischen Wissenschaftlichen Anstalten") very nearly do this, but *only* a few.

That the want of suitable Catalogues of Scientific Literature is sorely felt, is shown by this very eagerness with which some Societies make desperate efforts to atone for the defect. Thus, if you consult the "Bullettino Bibliographico" Appendix to the "Rendiconti" of the R. Istituto Lombardo di Scienze e Lettere, Series II., vol. xxv., published in Milano, 1892, you will find that more than two pages (pp. 135-36-37) are occupied by a List of the Contents of the "Comptes rendus . . . des séances de l'Académie des Sciences, Tom. 114, No. 21-23" alone, and that the greater part of the 280 pages of the Bulletin consists of similar lists of the Contents of Learned Society Periodicals received from home and foreign countries during the year 1892.

If then this enterprising Italian Society finds it to its advantage to lay such stress on registering the Contents of the Journals of Foreign Learned Societies, how much more necessary is it for such countries each to register the Contents of their own Periodicals for themselves on a National and International system?

### International Aspects.

The International aspects of the subject are seen at a glance, if we suppose that all the Agricultural Societies, Archæological Societies, Art Societies, &c., &c., were amalgamated together in each country, and published their works on a common system, and compiled National Catalogues of their Publications, the putting together of these Catalogues would, with the incorporation of the Contributions of other general Societies, form *Universal* Catalogues of the Publications of all Learned Societies on the particular subjects specified.

### The Past and Present Efforts of the Learned Societies to Record Scientific Literature.

If time permitted, I had wished to have given a sketch of the past Bibliographical work in the field of Science, especially in connection with the work of the Royal Society; the recent efforts

of the Congrès Géologique International (Washington, 1891); the Meteorologists (Rome, 1879); the Congress of Russian Naturalists; the Geographical Congress at Berne; the Zoological Bureau at Zurich; the Royal Geographical Society; and other efforts in the same direction. I have not, however, been able to carry out my desire, and all that I can do is to show here that I am not unmindful of the work initiated, nor of the possibilities of the future; but I still feel strongly that all such scientific work should be carried on in connection with, and not independently of the National Libraries, in order to obtain the highest results, which views I have endeavoured to explain in the following Appendix, and in the paper I read before the International Geographical Congress (*vide* Sect. II., No. 9).

## APPENDIX I.

### The Position of the Learned Societies in regard to the record of Scientific Literature.

In regard to the whole question of the Record of Scientific Literature I cannot help feeling that there is a misunderstanding on the part of some sections of the Scientific world in imagining that if Governments claim to be able to record Literature completely, it is a criticism on their own powers and work, and that such Governments are aspiring to do their own work for them.

A moment's consideration will show that this is not the case. Governments must say: "We cannot perform the work of the Learned Societies." But equally: "Nor can the Learned Societies perform the work of Governments."

I have reason to suppose that the paper which I had the honour to read before the International Geographical Congress last year was not clearly understood, and, in consequence, I have decided to append this essay on the subject to the present chapter. And as the Science of Geography, in its general aspects, illustrates the principle which applies, in a lesser degree, to all other Societies, I here allude more especially to Geography.

I wish it to be distinctly understood that I do not for one moment assume (as will be seen from the argument) that Government is to *finally* record the Literature of Geography for Geographers. What I *do* assume (and I cannot conceive of *any* stronger arguments) is—

tions--none! and if a List there be, it is probably hidden in the interior pages. And yet it would cost so little trouble or expense. For (in regard to the papers contributed) what is easier than to effect this by printing the Title-entries in the Tables of Contents so as to conform to the standard of a Bibliography or Catalogue? Some Periodicals (*e.g.* the "Jahrbuch der Hamburgischen Wissenschaftlichen Anstalten") very nearly do this, but *only* a few.

That the want of suitable Catalogues of Scientific Literature is sorely felt, is shown by this very eagerness with which some Societies make desperate efforts to atone for the defect. Thus, if you consult the "Bullettino Bibliographico" Appendix to the "Rendiconti" of the R. Istituto Lombardo di Scienze e Lettere, Series II., vol. xxv., published in Milano, 1892, you will find that more than two pages (pp. 135-36-37) are occupied by a List of the Contents of the "Comptes rendus . . . des séances de l'Académie des Sciences, Tom. 114, No. 21-23" alone, and that the greater part of the 280 pages of the Bulletin consists of similar lists of the Contents of Learned Society Periodicals received from home and foreign countries during the year 1892.

If then this enterprising Italian Society finds it to its advantage to lay such stress on registering the Contents of the Journals of Foreign Learned Societies, how much more necessary is it for such countries each to register the Contents of their own Periodicals for themselves on a National and International system?

### International Aspects.

The International aspects of the subject are seen at a glance, if we suppose that all the Agricultural Societies, Archæological Societies, Art Societies, &c., &c., were amalgamated together in each country, and published their works on a common system, and compiled National Catalogues of their Publications, the putting together of these Catalogues would, with the incorporation of the Contributions of other general Societies, form *Universal* Catalogues of the Publications of all Learned Societies on the particular subjects specified.

### The Past and Present Efforts of the Learned Societies to Record Scientific Literature.

If time permitted, I had wished to have given a sketch of the past Bibliographical work in the field of Science, especially in connection with the work of the Royal Society; the recent efforts

of the Congrès Géologique International (Washington, 1891); the Meteorologists (Rome, 1879); the Congress of Russian Naturalists; the Geographical Congress at Berne; the Zoological Bureau at Zurich; the Royal Geographical Society; and other efforts in the same direction. I have not, however, been able to carry out my desire, and all that I can do is to show here that I am not unmindful of the work initiated, nor of the possibilities of the future; but I still feel strongly that all such scientific work should be carried on in connection with, and not independently of the National Libraries, in order to obtain the highest results, which views I have endeavoured to explain in the following Appendix, and in the paper I read before the International Geographical Congress (*vide* Sect. II., No. 9).

## APPENDIX I.

### The Position of the Learned Societies in regard to the record of Scientific Literature.

In regard to the whole question of the Record of Scientific Literature I cannot help feeling that there is a misunderstanding on the part of some sections of the Scientific world in imagining that if Governments claim to be able to record Literature completely, it is a criticism on their own powers and work, and that such Governments are aspiring to do their own work for them.

A moment's consideration will show that this is not the case. Governments must say: "We cannot perform the work of the Learned Societies." But equally: "Nor can the Learned Societies perform the work of Governments."

I have reason to suppose that the paper which I had the honour to read before the International Geographical Congress last year was not clearly understood, and, in consequence, I have decided to append this essay on the subject to the present chapter. And as the Science of Geography, in its general aspects, illustrates the principle which applies, in a lesser degree, to all other Societies, I here allude more especially to Geography.

I wish it to be distinctly understood that I do not for one moment assume (as will be seen from the argument) that Government is to *finally record* the Literature of Geography for Geographers. What I do assume (and I cannot conceive of any stronger arguments) is —

tions--none! and if a List there be, it is probably hidden in the interior pages. And yet it would cost so little trouble or expense. For (in regard to the papers contributed) what is easier than to effect this by printing the Title-entries in the Tables of Contents so as to conform to the standard of a Bibliography or Catalogue? Some Periodicals (*e.g.* the "Jahrbuch der Hamburgischen Wissenschaftlichen Anstalten") very nearly do this, but *only* a few.

That the want of suitable Catalogues of Scientific Literature is sorely felt, is shown by this very eagerness with which some Societies make desperate efforts to atone for the defect. Thus, if you consult the "Bullettino Bibliographico" Appendix to the "Rendiconti" of the R. Istituto Lombardo di Scienze e Lettere, Series II., vol. xxv., published in Milano, 1892, you will find that more than two pages (pp. 135-36-37) are occupied by a List of the Contents of the "Comptes rendus . . . des séances de l'Académie des Sciences, Tom. 114, No. 21-23" alone, and that the greater part of the 280 pages of the Bulletin consists of similar lists of the Contents of Learned Society Periodicals received from home and foreign countries during the year 1892.

If then this enterprising Italian Society finds it to its advantage to lay such stress on registering the Contents of the Journals of Foreign Learned Societies, how much more necessary is it for such countries each to register the Contents of their own Periodicals for themselves on a National and International system?

### International Aspects.

The International aspects of the subject are seen at a glance, if we suppose that all the Agricultural Societies, Archæological Societies, Art Societies, &c., &c., were amalgamated together in each country, and published their works on a common system, and compiled National Catalogues of their Publications, the putting together of these Catalogues would, with the incorporation of the Contributions of other general Societies, form *Universal Catalogues* of the Publications of all Learned Societies on the particular subjects specified.

### The Past and Present Efforts of the Learned Societies to Record Scientific Literature.

If time permitted, I had wished to have given a sketch of the past Bibliographical work in the field of Science, especially in connection with the work of the Royal Society; the recent efforts

of the Congrès Géologique International (Washington, 1891); the Meteorologists (Rome, 1879); the Congress of Russian Naturalists; the Geographical Congress at Berne; the Zoological Bureau at Zurich; the Royal Geographical Society; and other efforts in the same direction. I have not, however, been able to carry out my desire, and all that I can do is to show here that I am not unmindful of the work initiated, nor of the possibilities of the future; but I still feel strongly that all such scientific work should be carried on in connection with, and not independently of the National Libraries, in order to obtain the highest results, which views I have endeavoured to explain in the following Appendix, and in the paper I read before the International Geographical Congress (*vide* Sect. II., No. 9).

#### APPENDIX I.

##### The Position of the Learned Societies in regard to the record of Scientific Literature.

In regard to the whole question of the Record of Scientific Literature I cannot help feeling that there is a misunderstanding on the part of some sections of the Scientific world in imagining that if Governments claim to be able to record Literature completely, it is a criticism on their own powers and work, and that such Governments are aspiring to do their own work for them.

A moment's consideration will show that this is not the case. Governments must say: "We cannot perform the work of the Learned Societies." But equally: "Nor can the Learned Societies perform the work of Governments."

I have reason to suppose that the paper which I had the honour to read before the International Geographical Congress last year was not clearly understood, and, in consequence, I have decided to append this essay on the subject to the present chapter. And as the Science of Geography, in its general aspects, illustrates the principle which applies, in a lesser degree, to all other Societies, I here allude more especially to Geography.

I wish it to be distinctly understood that I do not for one moment assume (as will be seen from the argument) that Government is to *finally record* the Literature of Geography for Geographers. What I *do* assume (and I cannot conceive of any stronger arguments) is —

That NOWHERE is a complete collection of National Literature to be found, except at the National Libraries.

That Geography, like every other Science, is closely interwoven with every other Branch and Sub-branch of Literature.

That this is specially so throughout the domain of Periodical Literature.

That, in order to obtain a complete List of the Literature of Geography, it will, therefore, be necessary to survey the *whole area* of Literature, in order to obtain the Geographical factors required ;

That when this is done, perhaps one-third (if not more) of the factors obtained will be found to be *common property* to all, and will, therefore, be equally sought for by a score of other Scientific bodies as well.

Are, then, each of these Scientific bodies to similarly *re-survey* the whole area of Literature, in order to obtain the factors *they* require?

There are only two apparent alternatives :—

(1) For the Geographical bodies to collect and distribute such factors as they deem of interest to other Scientific bodies—in fact, to be agents for the whole of the scientific world.

(2) For the Scientific Societies, in each country, to combine, and to institute, in each country, a sub-divided Bibliographical Bureau, common to all, as a preliminary starting point.

But, even if we suppose this latter alternative—which has many advantages, and is most likely to happen in the future—the fact still remains that there is a vast amount of *General Literature* and *Official Literature* issued in each country, not directly connected with the Learned Societies, which relates to Science.

Are the Learned Societies going to register that, as well as the Literature for which they are more directly responsible as a body? “Oh, yes,” answers some one; “everybody who writes a work bearing on Science will send a copy of its title either to the Society which represents the subject, or to the Central Bureau.”

But *will* this individual do so? And will his description of his own work be a sound and accurate one? And even if it were so, a man would only send a note of his work to *one* individual Society, in spite of the fact that it had an interest for several different Societies. And suppose that he sent a description of

his work to the Central Bureau, there are hundreds of writers who would not do so, in which case the work of the Bureau would be incomplete. And if they all *did* send a description of their works to the Bureau—even allowing (which could not possibly be the case) that their descriptions were all accurate—we should then get this anomaly, that the Bureau would be a National Bureau, in theory performing the work of the State absolutely and thoroughly; in which case we should be in this ridiculous position, that there would be *two National Staffs of Bibliographers*—in fact, two National Libraries or Bureaus, with this difference, that the one Bureau would possess the Books, while the other Bureau would record their] Titles? Surely is not this sound argument, to which one might affix the letters Q.E.D.?

Since a proper record of Literature can only be made from the Books themselves, and since a *complete* collection of the National Literature is to be found nowhere except at the National Libraries, all common sense seems to dictate that it is *at the National Libraries* where the Books may be delivered immediately, that that Record must *first* be made, if it is to be complete (and completeness is what we are all aiming at).

The object of the Learned Societies is admirably expressed in a courteous letter which I received in 1895 from Dr. H. Haviland Field, in which he said: "We are forced . . . to choose between a Bibliography, such as would serve primarily for the purposes of the investigator in the special field which we intend to cover, and one which would appeal more directly to the Libraries, and contribute to the needs of a more universal but less elaborate Index. We thus leave entirely out of account the country in which a contribution to knowledge appears. . . . We also undertake to give him the results of a detailed examination of all that is published, this examination to be carried out by Specialists in the particular science involved." My only suggested observation is that you cannot be sure of recording the universal literature of a subject, except you first obtain the full list of works appearing in each country, and that, for this reason, the Learned Societies of the world would obtain their object best by the preliminary *national* measures of:

- (1) Registering their *names as Societies* at a Central Bureau;
- (2) Registering the *titles of their Publications* at a Central Government Bureau;
- (3) Registering the *titles of the contents of their Publications* at a Central Government Bureau;



thus ensuring the nearest approach to completeness possible, while such co-operation on the part of the Societies would facilitate and reduce the work of the Official National Bureaus enormously.

Then the National Bureaus, having sorted the material received, and printed the contents in Subject-Catalogues, according to certain well-defined outlines, would hand back the results in printed form (to be purchased cheaply) to the Learned Societies, who would thus receive *all the factors*, which they could thenceforth shuffle and elaborate as they pleased.

And, of course, such a scheme does not prevent the Learned Societies, either individually or in combination, from pursuing their own methods independently the year throughout. Thus we see the operation of that beautiful law of Nature, in which the interests of all bound up together, each supplying that which the other cannot, and thus eventually building up the perfect whole.

To sum up, I merely ask the members of the Learned Societies—"If Governments were able to, and offered to supply you with all the preliminary factors of your work, is it possible that you would refuse the offer?"—F.C.

## APPENDIX II.

In the "Year-Book of the Scientific and Learned Societies of Great Britain and Ireland" for 1894, the Societies are classed as those occupying themselves with—

- (1) Science generally.
- (2) Astronomy, Mathematics and Physics.
- (3) Chemistry and Photography.
- (4) Geography, Geology and Mineralogy.
- (5) Biology, including Horticulture, Microscopy and Anthropology.
- (6) Economic Science and Statistics.
- (7) Mechanical Science and Architecture.
- (8) Naval and Military Science.
- (9) Agriculture.
- (10) Law.
- (11) Literature and History.
- (12) Psychology.
- (13) Archæology.
- (14) Medicine.

The following work should be mentioned in connection with this chapter:—"The Learned Societies and Printing Clubs of the United Kingdom: being an Account of their respective Origin, History, Objects and Constitution, with a General Introduction,

and a Classified Index. Compiled from Official Documents,"  
by the Rev. A. Hume, LL.D. . . With a supplement, &c.  
*London*, 1853. 8°.

#### ADDITIONAL APPENDIX.

The following is a copy of the Resolution passed at the Sixth International Geographical Congress held in London, 1895, affirming the principle of State-Printed Registration of Literature :—

##### "Geographical Bibliography."

"That this Congress expresses its approval of the principle of State-Printed Registration of Literature as the true foundation of National and International Bibliography, and approves the appointment of an International Committee to further the said object, the constitution of the Committee to rest with the Bureau of the International Geographical Congress."

"Introduced by Mr. Frank Campbell, approved by the Vice-Presidents, voted upon and carried."

---



CHAPTER V.

**The Bibliography of Periodical Literature.**

[*The Library*, February, 1896.]

The following chapter was originally a Paper written for the Annual Meeting of the Library Association, held at Cardiff, September, 1895.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

**Introduction.**

**Kinds of Periodicals characterised.**

- (1) Newspapers.
- (2) News-Magazines.
- (3) Article-Magazines.
- (4) Non-Magazine Periodicals.

**Further Characteristics of Periodical Literature.**

(Collected Literature).

Difficult to Catalogue.

Varied Length of Articles.

Dispersion of Literature.

**The Remedy.**

**The Record of Periodical Literature.**

**The Interests of the Librarian.**

**The Responsibilities of the Editor.**

**App. A. Schedule showing Various Modes of treating Periodicals.**

**App. B. Co-operative Bibliography.**

**App. C. Principles of "Publication."**

### The Bibliography of Periodical Literature.

*"I entertain a high idea of the utility of Periodical Publications. . . . I consider such easy vehicles of knowledge more happily calculated than any other to preserve the liberty, stimulate the industry, and ameliorate the morals of an enlightened and free people."*

Such were the sentiments expressed by Washington in the year 1788; and the experience of a century will most certainly confirm the statement here quoted.

But without inquiring closely as to what the term "Periodical Literature" conveyed to the author of these words, there was one contingency which probably never occurred to him, viz., that Periodicals would increase to such an extent as, in a measure, to defeat their own object.

Periodicals exist to *disseminate* information; but they also exist to *record* it; and when we find that the *momentary* dissemination of knowledge is obtained at the cost of the *permanent* record of it, we may well pause and ask ourselves whether there is not a danger of a blessing being changed into a curse, unless we take measures to prevent it.

To be brief, I may say, at once, that the development of Periodical Literature has been such as to constitute a very considerable danger to the progress of knowledge; for while, on the one hand, it has encouraged an excessive output of short and fragmentary articles, it has, on the other hand, equally attracted to itself a large number of very considerable works, which should naturally have been issued as *Separate* "Books"; and, having shorn them of their dignity as "Books," has issued them to the world in the humble guise of "Articles," so buried amid other "Collected Works" as to be comparatively useless for reference.

For this reason, and because Periodical Literature forms so important a part of our Libraries, it will, I am sure, be conceded that the subject is one which should more seriously engage the attention of Librarians.

But what does "Periodical Literature" consist of? And

although the term has been defined more than once—for the purposes of this paper, I will restate the case.

Books are issued as:—

- (1) Works which are complete in single parts.
- (2) Works which (although issued in parts) are not intended to be continued for an indefinite period of time, nor necessarily issued at intervals.
- (3) Works which are issued generally with the intention of their being continued at regular intervals, for an indefinite period of time, and which are, therefore, called "Periodicals."

Such a definition, however, would be incomplete, unless it be stated that there are different *kinds* of Periodicals, differing in nature, one from the other, and thus requiring different treatment.

#### Kinds of Periodicals Characterised.

In the first place it is necessary, for obvious reasons, to include *Newspapers* under the heading of Periodical Literature, but only to immediately exclude Newspapers again as a class of Literature to be dwelt with separately.

With this provision, Periodical Literature may be said to consist of:—

(1) **Newspapers**, the chief characteristic of which is that they are issued at very frequent intervals, and relate to the current events of the hour, being, for this reason, edited on the principle of a very miscellaneous collection of detached paragraphs.

(2) **News-Magazines** (Reviews, &c.) appearing in Magazine form at less frequent intervals, but which, being edited on the same principle of short semi-detached paragraph articles, present nothing for the Cataloguer to lay hold of.

(3) **Article-Magazines** (Reviews, &c.) which are characterised by the presence of *Series* of detached articles which constitute so many "Separate Works" collected, and which, both on account of their more average length and distinct titles, present something which it is both possible and necessary for the Cataloguer to notice in a special manner.

(4) **Non-Magazine Periodicals**, *i.e.*, works which are issued periodically, not with the idea of their being read as Magazines, but issued in connection with other objects than literary ones; *e.g.*, Works issued as Calendars; Works of Reference (Guide

Books); Catalogues, Lists, &c.; Works issued in connection with Institutions and Societies (Year Books, Annual Reports, &c., &c.)

That the designations I have used are the best, or that the classes are always absolutely exclusive of one another, I do not assert. But the designations are the best that I can think of, and the classes, from a general point of view, are technically correct, and at least serve my present purpose of emphasizing the presence of Periodicals differing in nature, and therefore demanding, according to circumstances, difference of treatment. For, if we are to solve the problems connected with Periodical Literature, we must have a clear knowledge of the *nature* of the material with which we have to deal. Because Periodicals containing Separate Books are from force of accidental circumstances mixed up with other Non-Literary Periodicals, the existence of the latter should not lead us to ignore the former; and because *Article-Magazines* are necessarily associated with *News-Magazines*, the former should not be allowed to suffer on account of the presence of the latter. And the same remarks apply to the existence, side by side, of inferior and superior Literature.

What, then, are the further characteristics of Periodical Literature which it is important for us to note?

#### Further Characteristics of Periodical Literature.

The first characteristic worthy of note is the difficulty encountered by Librarians in assigning the proper place of Periodicals in our Catalogues—a subject which has been debated before now with some vigour.<sup>1</sup>

I do not propose to enter into the details of the arguments which it is possible to advance on either side of the controversy, but wish rather to point out that, like every other question of "Catalogues," it is a matter depending in a great measure upon circumstances—upon the special objects in view, upon the size of a Library, and upon the particular functions of each Catalogue.

In Libraries of any considerable size the character of the Authors' catalogue is naturally a matter of the very highest importance, and there is no doubt that in a catalogue which is *strictly* an Authors' catalogue, the only really scientific system is

---

<sup>1</sup> I have appended (App. A) a Table showing a number of possible methods of treating Periodicals.



to catalogue each Periodical under its own name when it is an *Independent* Periodical, but the treatment of Periodicals issued by Learned Societies should be different.

Theoretically it would appear that the person who knew the name of the title of a Periodical would also know the name of the Society which published it, and that the man who knew the name of the Society would probably know the name of the place where the Society held its head-quarters. Practically, however, this is not so in the case of the general Student. It is true that in our own Country we generally know where a Society has its head-quarters; but foreigners would not, neither should we have the same intimate acquaintance with Foreign Institutions; and on the Continent the difficulty of knowing the location of Societies is probably far greater than in this Country.

And I am assured by Dr. Emil Reich, whose researches in the field of Periodical Literature are very considerable, that in the large majority of instances, especially in the case of foreign Literature, writers, in referring to an Article, merely quote the name of the Periodical, and that unless the name of the connected Society is a necessary part of it, it would rarely be noted. These are, I believe, the similar experiences of all whose researches lead them into the domain of scientific periodicals: and therefore it would seem to be an absolute argument in favour of placing Societies under their names, and for making similar provision for Periodicals. But it must be carefully borne in mind that a Society is the Author of its Publications, and therefore, in an Authors' Catalogue, all its Publications, periodicals included, must appear under its name. But this does not prevent the possibility of making special cross-references from the Press-marked titles of the Periodicals in question, which would serve all purposes.

In regard, however, to the strict application of such principles, it must be borne in mind that in any Annual Records of National Literature which may be made, the final form of such Records must greatly depend upon the system already in vogue at the several National Libraries.

The next characteristic is the presence of Articles of varying quality and length, all mixed together, a feature which it is important to allude to, for it naturally suggests the plausible idea that it is both expedient and possible to discriminate between Article and Article, and thus that the idea of "Selection" is a right principle to act upon.

While this contention may be theoretically justified under certain circumstances, one of the greatest Librarians of the age has denounced it, and in recent years the same opinion is upheld independently, by one whose experience in the field of Periodical Literature must command the greatest respect.

In giving evidence before the British Museum Committee, 1849, **Mr. Pannizzi** (as he was then), while no professed friend to Class Catalogues, characterises Dryander's Catalogue of Sir Joseph Banks's Collection as "*the best classed Catalogue.*"

. . . . *that has ever been made," for two especial reasons :*

- (1) that he "*drew up his titles in the fullest possible manner*";
- (2) that "*he classed not only independent and substantial works, but all articles in Transactions and Journals . . . with an accuracy which is really wonderful.*"

He further states in reference to the then projected Catalogue of the Library of the Royal Society that :—

"*The Catalogue of a Library like that of the Royal Society should be as complete as possible ; that is, it should give all the information requisite concerning any book which may be the object of inquiry. Whether a work be printed separately, or in a collection—whether it extend to the greater part of a Folio Volume, or occupy only part of a single leaf—no distinction should be made : the title of each should be separately entered. Hence every one of the Mémoires or papers in the acts of Academies, every one of the Articles in Scientific Journals, or Collections, whatever they may be, should have its separate place in the Catalogue. . . . It is only by carrying this principle to the fullest extent that a Catalogue can be called complete, and a Library, more particularly of books relating to Science, made as useful as it is capable of being.*"

The significance of these words—the words of a man of genius—is such that they should be written in letters of gold.

Now mark the words of **M. Robert de Lasteyrie** in the preface to tom. i. of the *Bibliographie Générale des Travaux Historiques et Archéologiques, publiés par les Sociétés Savantes de la France* ; and note that the latter volume appeared nearly half a century later, and that it is a hundred to one that M. de Lasteyrie ever read Sir Anthony Pannizzi's views on the subject. Here is a practical man and no theorist. He reviews the situation in which he finds himself when brought face to face with a mass of Periodical Literature, the contents of which are to be catalogued. How is he to proceed ? Is he to select the longer Articles and reject the shorter ones ? Let him speak for himself ;

these are his words:—"In searching through the *Proceedings* in order to extract the important Articles, I was necessarily compelled to considerably enlarge my intended programme. How, for instance, was I to get over the difficulty of distinguishing the Articles which deserved to be extracted from those which should be rejected? Was I to be guided by their Titles? But often the Articles—even the longest ones appearing in the *Sessional Reports*—possess no Titles. Was I then to be influenced by their length or shortness? Hardly: for surely length is no criterion. Are the longest Articles always the best? Does not many an author know how to condense, within three pages, more facts than another writer, more diffuse, is able to compress into ten pages?"

"I have therefore found it necessary NOT to take the length of Articles into consideration. But whenever, in *Bulletins* and *Proceedings*, I have found an Article, or a communication if only of a single page, I have mentioned it under the shortest title which I could frame."

The last sentence might appear to assume that he abbreviates titles. This is, however, so far as I know, not the case; nay, the writer has taken infinite pains to supplement the imperfect titles, thus showing his appreciation of the principles so strongly held by Sir Anthony Pannizzi, of entering *full* and *comprehensive* titles in each case.

Here, then, are two views, the evidence of which, taken in conjunction with our own experience of facts, appear to me to be conclusive. And what applies to the Scientific and Historical Sections of Literature applies to *all*. And the weight of such opinions is further increased when we note that this is but the application to Collected Literature of the same axiom which is applied to Separate Works, regarded from the National point of view, *viz.*, that the length of a work is no criterion of its value, and that there being no possible standard of comparison between Literature worthy or worthless, every attempt to make an arbitrary selection must result in comparative failure.

The third characteristic to note is that of the *Dispersion* of Literature which takes place in Periodicals.

Those who are acquainted with the contents of any representative collection of Periodicals cannot fail to have been struck with the extraordinary haphazard scattering of articles which is ever taking place, regardless of any factors of Country or Subject. And this accidental occurrence of Literature, good bad

and indifferent, in every direction, is so prevalent as to exercise a very significant influence over matters bibliographical, for—as I endeavoured to prove at the recent London Geographical Congress—in the absence of National Registers of the Contents of Periodical Literature, it is impossible for any Learned Society to obtain *complete* lists of the Literature in which it is interested, without surveying the *whole* field of Periodical Literature. Now, even supposing that this were possible, it is manifestly absurd for every Learned Society or International body to be independently re-surveying the whole ground again and again, when one efficient survey thoroughly carried out would suffice for all.<sup>1</sup> But, as a matter of fact, it is absolutely impossible for private enterprise to succeed in such an undertaking, for the simple reason that really complete Collections of National Literature exist nowhere but at the National Libraries; and with the very best intentions, it would be impossible to allow every branch of learning wholesale access to the incoming books day by day.

I lay the greatest stress upon this characteristic, because until the Learned Societies realise this fact more clearly, and acknowledge it, they will still continue to attempt the impossible, instead of seeking for the real and final solution of the problem in another direction.

In summing up, then, the results of the characteristics mentioned, and without stopping to refer to the Departmental difficulties raised in connection with the Checking, Binding, and daily issue of Periodicals, it is evident that the predominant feature of Periodical Literature is the introduction of confusion by the issuing of Separate works in a collected form, and the consequent burial of a large mass of literature. And it is evident that in most countries, and in regard to most branches of learning, the evil continues unchecked and unremedied.

### The Remedy.

What, then, is the remedy? And this brings me to the most important part of my subject.

The remedy is the one already indirectly alluded to—the application of the same principle to Articles in Periodicals that we apply to “Books.” They must be *catalogued*. And in so saying I am not recommending any startling doctrine, but only

---

<sup>1</sup> As a basis of operations.

one the truth of which is already testified to, not only by the existence of the Royal Society's Catalogue of Scientific Papers, but by the fact that a Modern Bibliography is not considered complete except it contain all the articles connected with the subject which have appeared in Periodicals. I wish especially to emphasize the existence of the Royal Society's Catalogue, because it is the strongest argument which any advocate could wish for in favour of the object of my paper. For while it is a standing proof of the inability of the most powerful of Societies to attempt the record of even one section of Bibliography without the financial support of Government, it is a living assertion of the principle that Articles in Periodical Literature should be catalogued as Books, and not simply indexed with abbreviated Titles only. And the question must naturally occur to every one, if it is thus considered necessary to catalogue Articles after the lapse of years, in order to obtain a record which is probably incomplete, at a great extra expenditure of money and labour, how much more important is it to catalogue such Articles year by year up to date, when they can be recorded completely with comparative ease and economy. Do Articles increase in value through the lapse of time? No! and most certainly in the Scientific world, the lapse of a single year, as often as not, decreases their general value. The argument, therefore, in favour of the periodical systematic Cataloguing of Periodical Literature would seem to be so insuperable, that the only real question for debate is the manner in which such an undertaking should be carried out.

#### **The Record of Periodical Literature.**

Supposing, then, that the need for the Registering of the contents of periodical Literature is agreed to—on what principles is that Record to be effected?

*First.*—It must be carried out according to **Countries**. Each State must perform its own Bibliography; and while it is legitimate to incorporate the selections of the Periodical Literature of one Country with that of another, it is not legitimate (because not possible) to attempt to do so on any large scale until each country publishes its own guaranteed Record from which to select.

*Secondly.*—The work must be performed by **Governments**, because Governments alone have the power to carry it out in a satisfactory manner.

*Thirdly.*—The work must be performed by Years—each year must do its own work.

*Fourthly.*—The task must be undertaken in connection with the Natural Divisions of Literature: (1) General Literature; (2) Official Documents.

*Fifthly.*—Before we can obtain a Register of the contents of Periodicals, we must obtain a Complete List of the Periodicals themselves.

Then comes a question of a most perplexing character, involving very delicate appreciations of the subject, but capable, I believe, of a satisfactory answer.

Periodical Literature includes a number of works which I have alluded to as "Non-Magazine Periodicals." Are we to include them? This apparently innocent question opens up a number of queries. In the first place, in order to answer it, we must first settle what kind of Record we are referring to, for there are many kinds of Records. Is it a Record for the sake of finding *individual* Books with speed and certainty (*i.e.*, an Authors' Catalogue)? Or is it a *Class* Record for finding a collection of works on one subject?

For answer, I would say that we must first, before all things, have an Authors' Catalogue to enable us to find individual works on knowing the Author and Title of a Work.

Periodicals must then be approached, first as Individual Publications (without any reference to their being Collections) so that we may assign them their proper place in an Authors' Catalogue.

But I have already touched on the principles of such Catalogues, and have pointed out that in regard to National Literature Schemes, the Rules of an Annual Authors' Catalogue must depend to a great extent on the plans adopted in the existing National Library Catalogues.

I therefore pass on to the subsequent stage, the feature of which is that we are now dealing, not with Periodicals because they happen to be issued periodically, but with that portion of Periodicals which exists as *Collected Literature*—as a Class.

For this reason we exclude those works which I have alluded to as *Non-Magazine* Periodicals, but we include, by courtesy, the works which I have referred to as *News-Magazines*, for the reason that there is no absolute line of division between them and the rest, and because, having a near resemblance to them, and at times, even containing stray articles, they at least require to have notices of their titles given.

Then we meet with a new difficulty, for, remembering that we are all the time dealing with Periodicals as a *Class of Collected Literature*, we find that they belong to two Classes—wheel within wheel—i.e., the classes of Learned Societies and Independent Magazines.

Now, of course, the heading of "Learned Societies," or "Academies," is an arbitrary and in many ways an unsatisfactory one in an *Authors' Catalogue*, but the fact remains that Societies do exist more or less as a special subject-group, dealing with the main branches of knowledge in a special manner, and thus there are special reasons for issuing a special Annual Record of such Societies complete in itself, as distinguished from the class of Independent Magazines.

It is true that Independent Magazines exist in corresponding groups, very greatly dealing with the same subjects, but they treat the subjects in a more uniform manner, and since the articles approach more the nature of a large series of Essays, Independent Magazines may be said to form a Natural Group of themselves.

Are we, then, or are we not to register the Periodicals of these two groups together, or are we to register them separately?

The balance of opinion will probably be found in favour of the plan of keeping the two groups separate in the *first* stage, in order that the Learned Societies may have an annual Record of their own Literature intact by itself.

Having, then, decided to register the Learned Societies' Publications (including their Non-Periodical works also) and Independent Magazines separately, showing clearly what are the contents of the Periodicals of either group for each year, it remains to incorporate the results together in a special *Authors' Catalogue*, *Title Catalogue*, and *Subject Catalogue*, and to add an *Index of Matters*.

There is only one possible variation from this course which should be alluded to, and that is the possibility of Classing both Societies and Independent Magazines in *Subject-groups* from the very commencement.

As to this course, it is only necessary to say that if the area of human knowledge were clearly mapped out, and the scope and subject of Societies and Magazines corresponded with the divisions of that Map, this would be easy. *But*, except in certain subjects, such as Law, this is not the case, and therefore such Classification must always be very comparative unless So-

cieties and Magazines confined themselves very rigidly to such areas.

At the same time, as Periodicals continue to increase, it is probable that the time will come when a real attempt will be made to group Societies and Magazines together according to the subjects they deal with, and to register their publications under them accordingly. This plan has already been tried among the Archæological and Antiquarian Societies, and is all the more likely to be adopted in the future because of the necessary tendency to specialism, and because while it would not in any way affect the compilation of Authors', Subject, and Title Catalogues, it will enable each Branch of learning to play with its own particular Records without being obliged to purchase and scan the Records of other Branches.

### The Interests of the Librarian.

What, then, are the special interests of the Librarian in Periodical Literature? It is important to ask this question, because there must be very many whose Libraries necessarily contain only a limited number of Periodicals, and who, not being called upon to catalogue the contents of the same, at least not on any large scale, might ask: "What has all this to do with me? In response to which—always supposing that the Class of Readers is such as will appreciate the efforts made on its behalf—I will for a moment place myself in the position of a "Reader," and I will suppose myself a member of the "Local Press," about to write an article which may meet the eyes of thousands, and which is therefore a matter of considerable importance.

I arrive at a Public Library: I wish at a moment's notice to peruse every work which some eminent man has contributed to the Periodicals of this country, and, in addition, wish to see all the reviews on his books, and every notice of his life. It is of the highest importance that I obtain this information at once. In order to do this, I ask for the Authors' Catalogues to the Periodical Literature of the last fifty years.

Again, I wish to find a list of the *Titles* of many of the articles which have appeared during the year. Or I may wish to obtain a complete Catalogue of all the Articles on a particular *Subject-Group*—large or small. Or, again, I may wish for a Work of Reference as a clue to the whole of the Periodical



Literature issued during the year, or perhaps simply a clue to the particular Literature which happens to exist in the nearest Public Library. And I think it will be conceded that these wishes are not unreasonable. But can they be satisfied?

I will then submit the following five propositions, with your permission (substituting the word "you" for "Librarians" for sake of brevity).

*Firstly.*—If you possess no *complete* Catalogue of the contents of Periodical Literature, how are you to obtain a real knowledge of the current Literature of the day?

*Secondly.*—If you do not *yourselves* catalogue the Articles appearing in Periodical Literature, you need someone to catalogue them on your behalf.

*Thirdly.*—If you *do* catalogue such Articles, you are all doing the same work over and over again.

*Fourthly.*—If you *already possess* the Periodicals in your Libraries, it is important that the contents should be made accessible in every reasonable manner.

*Fifthly.*—If you have *not* the Periodicals in your Libraries where men may at least search for themselves, it is of still greater importance that they should be informed of the existence of literature *somewhere*, even if *elsewhere*, so that they may be able to pursue or purchase it.

But some will say, "We have Poole's Index to Periodicals, the Co-operative Index, and Miss Hetherington's Index" (which, by the way, seems to me greatly superior to the American Co-operative Index, and deserves greater support).<sup>1</sup> So you have, but those are only *Indexes* and not *Catalogues*. They refer, moreover, to *mixed* Literatures, to a *selected* number of periodicals (chiefly popular ones), to a *selected* number of Articles; they refer mainly to the *specific* subject, and necessarily contain very *abbreviated* titles. These works are of great value *as Indexes*, but they do not, and cannot supply the need of *Author-, Title-, and Subject-Catalogues*.

When you wish to know generally what is in a book, you do not look at the Index, you look at the Table of Contents, and

<sup>1</sup> It is difficult to make any statement on this subject without lengthy qualifications. Miss Hetherington's Index does not always or altogether realise my own ideas as to "Full Titles," but on the whole, her Index does contain an immense number of Full Titles, and I owe her an apology for not being clear on the subject. As to comparing her Index with the American Index, I find that there are greater radical differences than I at first suspected; these I can only show by a special study which I include as Sect. II., No. 5A.

just as a list of contents is necessary for a single Periodical, so is it necessary to have a Table of Contents to a Thousand Periodicals.

Why should it be necessary for me to send for all the volumes of a Periodical Library in order to know what they contain?

It is true that Mr. Stead has for some years initiated a Table of Contents in connection with Miss Hetherington's Index, and it has always seemed to me that this was one of the most valuable Bibliographical ideas of the day ; but, while these illustrate and confirm the principle of chronological lists of the titles appearing in particular journals, these, as already hinted, necessarily refer only to a *limited* number of Periodicals and to a *selected* number of articles.

Without further argument, then, I trust that I have shown that there is much yet to be done in the world of Periodical Literature, and my own belief is that the best method of accomplishing the desired object is for the Governments of each Civilised Country to vote the small extra annual sum, which would be necessary to enable the Periodical Literature thus to be registered completely and efficiently, once, and for ever, year by year.

#### The Responsibilities of the Editor.

I have now alluded to the interests of Librarians and Readers. It would be a grave omission if I failed to refer to the responsibilities of Editors of Periodicals in doing *their* share towards helping the Student and Librarian—especially the Editors of Learned Societies' Publications. I am sure that many an exasperated Librarian must have often wished to have been able to condemn such Editors to catalogue their own publications! They would then be a little more thoughtful in regard to the *details* of publication. But while they have greatly tried the patience and temper of Librarians, it is obviously from a want of thought, which is accidental, and it is certain that Librarians have only to make their reasonable wants known, for Editors cordially to co-operate with them—especially as it is for the good of the Societies and Sciences which they—the Editors—represent. And it is time that we did make our wants known for it is impossible that Cataloguing should be good if the Editing of Title-pages and other important details of publication continues to be bad. Gentlemen, we must *not* be slaves to the accidents of *Publication*. At present, we are. We continue to re-

ceive in our Libraries without a remonstrance, works which defeat our best efforts in attempting to remedy the defects of careless editing—works which, if they are to be properly catalogued, involve Librarians having to do the work of Author, Editor and Printer, if their contents are to be made properly accessible. This should not be. I trust therefore that, in the future, Librarians will speak with one voice on the subject.

What, then, is it that we expect of Editors?<sup>1</sup> I think that the following requests will not be considered unreasonable.

*Firstly.*—That Editors should be prepared annually to submit complete and accurate Lists of the Publications issued by them—this being all the more important, because at present, in very many instances, such publications are not subject to the Copyright Law.

*Secondly.*—That in regard to Papers printed by them, they should provide for the supply of comprehensive Titles drawn up with a view to the possibilities of subsequent insertion in Catalogues.

*Thirdly.*—That they should print Annual Author Catalogues, Annual Subject Catalogues (according to circumstances), Annual Title Catalogues and Indexes relating to the interior contents of their Publications.

*Fourthly.*—That they should be willing to attend to the many minor details necessary for facilitating research.

In regard to the latter point, there is one detail which is not a minor detail. It is not for Librarians to dictate, but it is nevertheless necessary for *somebody* emphatically to point out, viz., that many of the learned Societies are doing much to increase the difficulties of research by inserting in their Periodicals, works which should and which could have been issued quite easily as separate monographs, and circulated as such. I have in mind numberless instances of works thus gratuitously buried in involved Series—wheel within wheel, and in no case is the evil so conspicuous, as when we find, which we do frequently, Bibliographies thus issued to the world, which, in the majority of instances, are not supplied with proper Titles—if any at all—are not even separately struck off, nor even printed on separate appendix-sheets.

---

<sup>1</sup> Under the titles of "Co-operative Bibliography. How Editors . . . can help Librarians," and "Principles of Publication. Some points to observe in the Editing of Journals, &c." I have enlarged on this subject. (Vide App. B and C.)

This concludes my observations on matters which have seemed to me worthy of your attention. I have merely to add that in laying all stress on the proper ordering of Periodical Literature, I am only drawing your attention to a subject which has a unique and ever increasing value of its own. It were unnecessary to quote the statement that "There is almost no field in Bibliography so important to the Special Student, and few so fruitful to the general inquirer, as that of the Publications of 'Learned Societies,'" were they not the words of Mr. R. R. Bowker, whose work in the field of Modern Bibliography is so well known, and who thus unconsciously supplements my text supplied by his great countryman a century ago. And it would be a truism for me to press the matter further except to remind you that in constituting the chief medium of National progress, Periodicals reflect the daily life and thought of a nation in a manner which other "Books" are incapable of.

In instituting, therefore, an exact Record of what the world is thinking about, we not only aid and hasten that progress for all time, but we hand down a true Record of the same to the future Historian, and thus perform one of the chiefest duties entrusted to us as Librarians.

#### APPENDIX A.

### Schedule showing Various Modes of Treating Periodical Publications.

**We have to deal with Theories and Methods of Cataloguing :**

- I. THE TITLES OF Periodicals.
- II. THE TITLES OF Articles contained in Periodicals.

#### I. TITLES OF PERIODICALS.

**Titles of Periodicals may be arranged differently—according as the Periodicals are PUBLISHED AS :**

- (i.) *The Publications of "Learned Societies."*
- (ii.) *Independent Magazines, &c.*

**—according as they are ENTERED IN :**

- (iii.) *Authors' Catalogues.*
- (iv.) *General Class-Catalogues, subordinate to their subject matter (See Dewey's Catalogue).*

**—according as they are ISSUED AS :**

- (v.) *Class Catalogues by themselves :*

**In an AUTHORS' Catalogue proper (iii.) the Titles of Periodicals may be arranged:**

- (a) *By their Names* ... .. **Nineteenth Century.**
- (b) *By the Place of Publication* **London.—Nineteenth Century.**
- (c) *Under the Name of a Society*  
*(when published by a*  
*Society)* ... .. **Royal Geographical Society.**  
**Journal.**
- (d) *Under the Place where a*  
*Society is situate (when*  
*published by a Society)* **London.—Royal Geographical**  
**Society. Journal.**

**In regard to the Titles of Periodicals collected in the forms of CLASS CATALOGUES (v.)—in addition to the above possible forms of entry—such Titles may be arranged:**

- (e) *According to Subject-Groups* { **General Periodicals.**  
*(large and small)* .. ... { **Philosophical Periodicals.**  
   { **Religious Periodicals.**  
   { **&c., &c., &c.**
- (f) *According to Chronological* { **Dailies.**  
*intervals of appearance* ... { **Weeklies.**  
   { **Monthlies.**  
   { **Quarterlies.**  
   { **Annals.**  
   { **&c., &c.**
- (g) *According to their internal* { **Newspapers.**  
*character and composition* { **News-Magazines.**  
   { **Article-Magazines.**  
   { **Non-Magazine Periodicals.**

**Of course all the above Factors may be further affected, in so far as it is a question of:**

- Place* ... .. **(One or more Countries).**
- Time* ... .. **(One or more years).**
- Completeness* ... .. **(All Magazines).**
- "* ... .. **(All Articles).**
- Selection* ... .. **(All Articles).**
- "* ... .. **(Selected Articles).**

## II. TITLES OF ARTICLES CONTAINED IN PERIODICALS.

**In dealing with the Titles of Articles contained in Periodicals, they must be manipulated in regard to the necessities of :**

- (a) *Authors' Catalogues.*
- (b) *Title-Catalogues (subject to certain modifications).*
- (c) *Large-group Subject-Catalogues.*
- (d) *Small-group Subject-Catalogues.*

**Nor must the necessities of :**

- (e) *Indexes of Matters* be forgotten.

FRANK CAMPBELL.

Nov. 11th, 1895.

*The above Schedule was drawn up as a separate Supplement to my paper, entitled "The Bibliography of Periodical Literature."*

## APPENDIX B.

### Co-operative Bibliography.

**How Editors of Journals and Magazines can help Librarians.**

In regard to the record of the Titles of "Separate Works" appearing in Periodicals, it is suggested that the Editors of Journals and Magazines might do much to aid the efforts of Librarians, if they would frame "Tables of Contents" so that the contained entries should approximate as nearly as possible to the entries required in Author and Subject Catalogues, and if they would also add Indexes of Matter to *every* volume.

If this were done, and Editors consented to send extra copies of the same to a Central Bureau, one of the chief difficulties connected with the Record of Periodical Literature would vanish.

FRANK CAMPBELL.

Nov., 1895.

The following consists of a few entries of articles appearing in the Proceedings and Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada, 1893, showing the principles on which the Royal Society might aid in the establishment of an Annual Catalogue of Works appearing in Canadian Periodicals, and at the same time supply an Annual Contribution to the Record of the Literature of Canada, and of the British Empire.

It will easily be seen that the same Titles which serve for the Authors' Catalogues will (if carefully drawn up) provide the foundation for Subject Catalogues as well. It is not asserted that such Titles could be used without some further editing of details, but, if only drawn up as here suggested, they would lighten the labour of any Central Bureau fifty per cent.

The details of such a scheme remain to be illustrated on another occasion.

#### Table of Contents.

*A contribution towards an Annual Authors' Catalogue of Canadian Literature.*

- Sect. 2. 77-108. **Bourinot (J. G.)**  
Canadian Studies in Comparative Politics. Parliamentary compared with Congressional Government. [Conclusion of Series. With Bibliographical Notes.] 1894 fol.
- Sect. 2. 4-54. **Bourinot (J. G.)**  
Our intellectual Strength and Weakness: A short review of Literature, Education and Art in Canada. [With Bibliographical Notes.] 1894 fol.
- Sect. 1. 65-108. **Faucher de Saint-Maurice (N. H. E.)**  
Le contre-amiral Byng devant ses juges et devant l'histoire 1894 fol.
- Sect. 1. 33-64. **Gosselin (A.)**  
Un historien canadien oublié: le Dr. Jaques Labrie (1784-1831.) 1894 fol.
- Sect. 4. 45-50. **Hay (G. U.)**  
The Flora of New Brunswick. 1894 fol.
- Sect. 3. 55-60. **Johnson (A.)**  
On the need of a "Coast Survey" for the Dominion of Canada. 1894 fol.
- Sect. 2. 55-66. **Kingsford (W.)**  
Sir Daniel Wilson. In Memoriam. By W. Kingsford. 1894 fol.
- Sect. 3-31. **Sulte (Benjamin)**  
Les Tonty. [A Genealogical Memoir] 1894 fol.  
*Proc. and Trans. Roy. Soc., Canada, 1893.*

#### Index of Matters.

*A contribution towards an Annual Index to Canadian Literature.*

- Art (Canadian). 1893 Sect. 1. 3.
- Bibliography.  
Art, in Canada.  
Education, in Canada.  
Government, Theory of.  
Literature, in Canada.
- Biography.  
Byng Hon. John, *Admiral*.  
Labrie, Dr. J.  
Tonty, Family of.  
Wilson, Sir Daniel.
- Botany.  
New Brunswick, Flora.
- Byng, Admiral.  
Coast Survey, need of, in Canada.  
Comparative Politics.  
Congressional Government, in America.  
Education (Canadian).  
Flora. *See* Botany.
- Genealogy. *See also* Biography.  
Tonty, Family of.
- Government, system of, in America.  
Government, system of, in Canada.
- Historians.  
Labrie, Dr. Jacques
- History.  
Byng, Admiral.  
Labrie, Dr. Jacques.
- Literature (Canadian).
- Naval History.  
*See* Byng.
- New Brunswick, Flora.
- Parliamentary Government, in Canada.
- Politics, Comparative.
- Tonty, Family of.  
Wilson, Sir Daniel.

## APPENDIX C.

## Principles of "Publication."

## Some Points to Observe in the Editing of Journals, etc.

(Many of the following Notes may seem to be truisms, unnecessary to mention, nevertheless they are points which are daily neglected in very numerous instances.)

If the work of a Society embraces more than one distinct branch of learning, it is important that it should resolve itself into a corresponding number of Sections—if it be large enough. Nature of a Society.

These Sections should be clearly designated, both by word and numeral.

Its Publications (if numerous) should be issued subordinate to such sections, in separate series, with appropriate Serial Titles. Sections.  
Series.

The inclusion of Series within Series, *within* Series should be avoided if possible, for much confusion is often caused thereby, and the difficulties of subsequent cataloguing and reference greatly increased.

The incessant institution of "New Series" of the same Journal should not be encouraged, and at least a running volume number should be preserved throughout (such as Poole's Index refers to, whether it exists or not).

Titles of *Sub-Series*, or of Monographs, should not appear on the page containing the *Main Series* Title. If this is unavoidable—the relationship of one series to another, and the separate existence of more than one Title, should at least be clearly shown by difference of type and by leading. Title-pages.

The Title-page should show clearly the name of the Society, and the town where its headquarters are permanently situated.

On the conclusion of a part or volume, the fact should be clearly stated. Volumes and Parts.

If the appearance of certain parts or volumes is indefinitely delayed, the fact should be clearly stated on the subsequent numbers.

If the same article appears in more than one Journal, the Author should state the fact in each subsequent edition, noting any changes—if any. Articles.

The Titles of Articles should be framed so as to indicate, concisely, yet fully and accurately, the nature of the contents, thus rendering it unnecessary to send for each volume and peruse each article in order to identify it or know what it relates to. (See page 1.) Framing of Titles of Articles.

Each Title should be framed so that it explains itself, even if appearing without any context, in a General Catalogue.

In accordance with the character of the Series, Articles should, according to their length and importance, be furnished with Title-pages of their own. Minor Title-pages.

Every real part or volume should be provided with a Table of Contents in which the Articles are arranged under their *Authors*, the form of Titles being approximated as nearly as possible to that of a Title in an Authors' Catalogue proper. Tables of Contents (Authors).



This implies :--

- (a) Printing the Author's name in a heavy type.
- (b) Placing the same, arranged alphabetically at the head of the Title on a line by itself.
- (c) Having lines of moderate length—neither too long nor too short.
- (d) The omission of "Indentions" which hinder rather than help the eye.
- (e) Noting the number of pages of which an article consists.
- (f) The supply of date of publication and size at end of line (if possible on a line by itself).
- (g) Noting the pages at which each article begins and ends.
- (h) Stating (somewhere) what abbreviations the Association and its Serials are generally known by.

Tables of Contents (Subjects). It is often useful to repeat the same Table of Contents, arranging the Titles by *Subjects*.

Tables of Contents to Individual Articles. Because a considerable work is included in a Periodical in the shape of an "Article," that is no reason why it should be edited without a Table of Contents to itself. Editors might remind Authors of this fact.

Maps, Plates, &c. A numbered List of Maps and Plates, etc., included in a volume, should appear in a prominent place—on the back of the Title-page; or before or after the Table of Contents.

Appendices. Paragraphs of a unique character or value may often, with advantage, be included as separate Appendices with Titles by which they may be referred to. A list of Appendices should follow the Table of Contents.

Pagination. In case of Articles of systematic length, there should be *separate* as well as *continuous* pagination.

Arrangement of Articles. Important Articles should not be printed commencing on the end and ending at the beginning of another Article, if it can be avoided.

Fragmentary Notes and scrappy Articles of trivial character should not be included among the more uniform ones, but should be added as a *Miscellaneous Appendix*.

Exclusion of Monographs. Single Articles containing hundreds of pages are often included in Periodicals. This principle, apart from secretariat advantages and financial necessities, is radically wrong. To christen a long "Book" as an "Article," and to conceal it in a Periodical, necessitating the quotation of two or three long reference titles instead of one, is to create unnecessary difficulties. Cannot Societies more often undertake to publish such works as *Monographs*?

The Americans err greatly in this respect. Their system of concealing long and valuable Monographs, behind the shadow of an "Annual Report" of an Institution, is most misleading and mischievous.

Index of Matters. An Index of Matters should be added to every volume of importance.

Lettering. In regard to Periodicals, each volume should be lettered or labelled on the back with—

- (1) Name of Society.
- (2) Name of Periodical (abbreviated if necessary).
- (3) Year in which Papers were read.
- (4) Running No. of Vol., &c., &c.

Annual Lists of Publications. Finally, it is most desirable that all Societies should print Complete Lists of the actual Publications issued during the course of each year, on the covers of their Journals and on separate leaves inserted.

It is not assumed that all Societies can comply with all the above requirements, but it is believed that when once their attention is drawn to the

importance of such details in facilitating reference to their publications, they will willingly do their best to co-operate with Librarians.

The above Notes appeared too late to accompany my Paper on "The Bibliography of Periodical Literature," read before the Library Association, November 11th, 1895.

London,  
Dec., 1895

FRANK CAMPBELL.

Should any criticisms or suggestions occur to Editors or Secretaries who may read the above memoranda, the Author will always be grateful for a communication of the same.

---

## CHAPTER VI.

**Official Documents.**

It would be a truism to say that Official Literature is distinguished in general by being inaccessible: the fact is notorious. It is pitiful to witness the efforts continued in many a country, for many long years, and with small success. And all the more so, because success was always easily attainable, if the subject had been approached in the right way. In former years, it is curious to note that a remedy for the evil was sought for by *abstracting* or *summarising* the annual Collections of Documents. Thus, in 1856, we find Professor Leone Levi undertaking the arduous task of issuing the series known as the "Annals of British Legislation." These Annals were a "Digest of the Parliamentary Blue Books," and arranged and classified in nine sections:—

- (1) Finance, Commerce and Agriculture.
- (2) Diplomacy and War.
- (3) Ecclesiastical Affairs and Education.
- (4) Railway, Shipping, and Postal Communication.
- (5) Law, Justice and Crime.
- (6) British India, Colonies and Dependencies.
- (7) Municipal, Population and Parliamentary.
- (8) Health, Enclosures, &c.
- (9) Miscellanies.

The work was published in two series of fourteen and four volumes respectively, applying to the Sessions 1856-66. But in 1868 it seems to have been abandoned, and we probably find a chief reason in the fact, stated in the preface, that the amount of encouragement which the work had received had "not sufficed to protect the publishers from loss, or to reward adequately the talents and labours of the editor." In 1858, the idea was taken up in India, where we find that Mr. Meredith Townsend commenced a similar series, entitled, "The Annals of Indian Administration." In the preface to this work he states: "The

Records of one Presidency are scarcely known in another. The Books are not very readily procurable. . . . It costs an hour to find a fact, and in India, men who care about facts cannot spare hours. The object of the compiler is to remove this defect, to do for the official information of India what Mr. Leone Levi is doing for the Blue Books of England. The Annals will comprise every fact, and almost every opinion of any importance in the Records of the Quarter." This series had a longer life, and was continued certainly till 1875 in eighteen volumes edited successively by Mr. Townsend, George Smith, and George Easton.

Each volume has an Index of its own, and finally a Continuous Index to the whole series was published. The idea of summarising Official Documents seems further to have been revived in England in more recent times, for we find Messrs. Allen & Co., in 1880-82, publishing, in four or five volumes, a "Précis of Official Papers: being Abstracts of all Parliamentary Returns directed to be printed by both Houses of Parliament," relating to the Sessions 1880-81 and 1882. The classification of Papers is hard to discern, but the volumes have Tables of Contents and Indexes. Three enterprises commenced and abandoned, or not continued! What is the moral? First, that private enterprise cannot do Government work; secondly, that *Abstracts* on a large scale are questionable benefits, because they in turn require abstracting; thirdly, that a remedy for the evil must be sought for elsewhere. "*Indexes*," cries a listener. "No, *not* Indexes, but a proper understanding of the bibliography of the subject." "*Indexes* have been: they exist, but the evil continues." This is the answer, and this is the solution, and the following is an attempt to trace the outlines of it.

This chapter is intended to give a brief view of the Bibliography of Official Literature, and to include brief allusions to those salient features of the subject which it is necessary for the student to bear in mind.

With this object, the subject will be approached in the following order:—

- (1) Natural Divisions of Literature.
- (2) Natural and Un-Natural Sub-Divisions of Official Literature.
- (3) Registers and Catalogues of Official Documents.
- (4) Compilation and Publication.
- (5) Binding and Lettering.

- (6) Financial aspects.
- (7) International Bibliography.
- (8) International Exchange.
- (9) Bibliographical Societies.
- (10) Official Documents' Libraries.
- (11) Government Printer-Librarians.

### (1) Natural Divisions of Literature.

I have shown elsewhere at length that Literature falls into two great Natural Divisions—

**General Literature ;**

**Official Literature ;**

and that these two divisions have to be recorded absolutely independently of one another, chiefly owing to the fact that while the majority of the works issued as "General Literature" have Authors' names, and constitute no one related Series, the majority of Official Documents form one related series, and have, as a rule, no Authors' names, for which reason they can be catalogued according to the Rules of a Subject-Catalogue only.

### (2) Natural Sub-Divisions of Official Literature.

We have next to consider what Official Literature itself consists of. We shall find that it falls into natural sub-divisions.

- (A) *According as it issues from a particular Source.*
- (B) *According as it relates to Particular Territories.*
- (C) *According as it relates to a particular Subject.*

#### (A) Source of Publication.

In regard to **A**, the Official Documents comprise :—

- I.—*Official Documents issued by the Supreme Government of a State or Territory.*
- II.—*Official Documents issued by the Supreme Government of a Collection of States.*
- III.—*Official Documents issued by the various Minor Forms of Local Government<sup>1</sup> existing in different countries, such as in England are represented by—*
  - County Councils,
  - Municipal Bodies,
  - Parish Councils.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Appendix to chapter.

The United States furnishes the best example of a Confederation of States, each of which should publish separate Records of its Official Documents ; the Records of the Supreme Government being also necessarily recorded separately.

British India is an instance where the Publications of the Supreme, and the Local Government, may, with advantage, be recorded together in the same volume.

**(B) Territory.**

In regard to **B**, Official Documents have naturally to be treated according to the administrative constitution of each Country, and the form in which reports are published.

In the case of our own Empire, Official Documents exist as

**(X) Home Publications.**

- (1) Those relating to the **United Kingdom** generally.
- (2) Those relating to **England**.  
**Ireland.**  
**Scotland.**  
**Wales.**
- (3) Those relating to any combination of 2.
- (4) Those relating to the **Colonies** (generally and separately).
- (5) Those relating to **India**.
- (6) Those relating to **Foreign Countries** (generally and separately).

**(Y) Documents issued by the Colonial Governments.**

**(Z) Documents issued under the Government of India.**

And again the **Home Publications** exist as

**Sessional Papers.**

Documents issued by Parliament, as a Department of State.  
Departmental Documents laid before Parliament, and printed as Sessional Papers.

**Non-Sessional Papers.**

Departmental Documents, not printed as Sessional Papers.

**(C) Subject.**

Finally, Documents exist, or may be arranged according to certain Subject Groups, such as Agriculture, Education, Commerce, &c., &c.

It is evident, therefore, in view of these numerous natural sub-divisions, that considerable care is needed in the recording of Official Literature, so as to be able to put all the kindred parts together as required. And the solution can only be arrived at successfully by first registering Official Documents according to (A) their *source*; and then it is a mere matter of detail to arrange and re-arrange the factors, as required, as parts of Territorial Catalogues, or as parts of Subject Catalogues, or (as regards single years) in Catalogues which deal with Territories *as* Subjects.

### (2) Un-Natural Sub-Divisions of Official Documents.

Before passing from this part of my subject, it is necessary to warn the student against an existing fallacy in regard to ways of treating Official Documents. I have elsewhere alluded to the fallacy that it is possible, on a *large* scale, to make a selection of Official Documents which are of value and those which are of "no value." But, apart from the tendency to select Documents which may appear to some to be more important than others, for special inclusion in General Catalogues, there is another tendency to select, which must be guarded against, *viz.*, the belief in the possibility of separating "Statistical Documents" in order to catalogue them by themselves.

It is true that there are a few—very few—Documents issued annually in every country, which contain nothing but statistics, pure and simple. For the rest, probably 50—75 per cent. of Official Documents every year contain statistics of some sort or another, *subordinate, however, to narrative text.*

If, therefore, attempt is made on any large scale to make an artificial distinction where no *natural* distinction exists, there can be but one result—the creation of two imaginary Series of Documents, each of which is incomplete without the other, thus detracting very greatly from the value of either, and rendering it generally necessary to make double search in two libraries and two Catalogues. In short, such a policy means disaster to research in the domain of Official Literature.

There are yet other minor groupings of official Documents to be alluded to; but, as these are connected more nearly with the theory of Publication, I will refer to them, under that head, in this same chapter.

### (3) Registers and Catalogues of Official Documents.

Registers and Catalogues of Official Documents must naturally correspond with the natural Sub-Divisions of Documents

already alluded to. The only point to consider is that of precedence. And this is not a matter of difficulty. Documents must be recorded first according to their source of issue, *i.e.*, in our own country :—

(1) **Parliamentary Sessional Papers ;**

(2) **Non-Parliamentary (Non-Sessional) Papers ;**

and then it will be possible, subsequently, to compile any other form of catalogue required by different combinations of the same factors.

The one point to keep clearly in mind is that the necessity for a preliminary **Register** of Official Documents (*vide* Sect. III., Nos. 1 and 3) in which all Documents are entered under their Departments (including Parliament as a Department), and in which all the details which future Cataloguers may require are fully stated, thus forming the foundation of all subsequent Catalogues.

We next require to define the exact object which a Catalogue of Official Documents should fulfil, *i.e.*, its **special character**. This also is easy to answer. A National Catalogue of Official Documents should be absolutely *complete*, and it should be so arranged as to enable both librarian and student to find any single work, or any group of works, on any subject at a moment's notice, and with absolute certainty. This is a task, the difficulty of which varies with every country ; but, if the proper principles are observed, absolute success can be obtained. In order to effect this, such a Catalogue (which is naturally a *Subject-Catalogue*) must be arranged on the principles rather of a *Specific Subject-Catalogue* than as a *Large-Group Catalogue*. That is to say, it will not do to catalogue your reports under large *Natural* groups, as " Law, Justice and Crime ;" or under large *Fancy* groups, such as " Diplomacy and War." Such groups must be reduced. At the same time, where works increase which belong to a subject so well-defined as " Products and Industries," there are special reasons why it is advantageous to follow such a grouping.

There is only one other point to allude to, *viz.*, that in the case of countries such as India, where we find a number of small Governments subordinate to a supreme Government, there are two ways of cataloguing their Official Documents.

(1) By **Subjects** subordinate to Countries.

(2) By **Countries** subordinate to Subjects.

Both plans have their relative advantages, although the plan of cataloguing Documents first under their countries (*source* of



issue) has a primary importance, and is the most *generally* valuable one to pursue.

#### (4) **Compilation and Publication.**

I have shown in other parts of this work<sup>1</sup> that the main difficulties experienced in cataloguing Official Documents proceed from

- (1) Illogical Association of Matter prior to Printing.
- (2) Illogical Grouping of Reports in Volumes and Series when Printed.
- (3) General neglect of details necessary for the completion of a Work (want of Title-pages, proper Titles, Tables of Contents, Appendices, Indexes, &c., &c.).

It will be unnecessary, therefore, to further discuss the subject in this chapter, beyond emphasizing the fact that until Government printers pay more serious attention to the subject, they must continue to frustrate in a great measure the best efforts of Librarians.

#### (5) **Binding and Lettering of Documents.**

This properly falls under the previous head of "Publication," but it is well to make it prominent in order to emphasize the fact of the evil results ensuing from present prevailing systems in this also.

The Australian Governments, in particular, bind up their Documents in volumes which are far too thick and heavy. It would be a great advantage if they split them up into volumes of more reasonable size.

In connection with **Indexes** to Documents, which appear periodically, the prevailing customs dictate that they shall be bound up in the volumes to which they relate.

This is perfectly right, provided that extra copies of such Indexes are supplied for separate use; but if extra copies are not thus supplied, it is generally more advantageous to appropriate the existing Indexes for special binding.

Thus, if a reader wishes to consult one hundred volumes of a particular Government Gazette, with a view of finding, not *what* they contained, but *whether* they contained any information on a particular subject—he would, as a rule, have to send for each of

---

<sup>1</sup> Sect. I.

the one hundred volumes from the shelf; whereas, if he had the one hundred Indexes bound in one volume (or two), not only the reader, but the staff of messengers would be spared the waste of a prodigious amount of energy and time.

But not only this—for if it were, as it ought to be, a recognized custom to print and sell extra copies of such Indexes, students would be able to purchase them, and consult them at their own homes, and thus often be spared fruitless visits to a Public Library—or, at least, they would have more time for actual study when they got there.

And just as the systems of Binding are very defective, so are the habits of lettering (or *not* lettering) the outsides of bound volumes of Documents. This subject also will bear improvement.

#### (6) Financial Aspects.

I regret to say that it has been difficult to obtain the statistics which I had wished to be able to quote, giving the sum of money spent annually by various Governments on the issue of their Official Documents. I can only suggest that some one may find it a profitable study to investigate the matter. But I can safely say that if we realised the vast sums spent on the issue of such Documents, in contrast to the pittance spent in rendering them available, we should be astounded.

In 1895, in reference to complaints made in the House of Commons concerning the Consular Reports, Mr. Curzon made a counter-complaint that such Reports were not read by the very merchants who should be most interested in them, in spite of their often containing “suggestions of the highest value.” Recent statements concerning the apathy of British Traders confirms this statement. But it is not only Consular Reports which are unread, but the majority of Blue Books. And this is chiefly due to the lack of small Subject-Catalogues.

The “Index to Reports . . . on Trade and Subjects of General Interest” . . . 1886-1894, is a step in the right direction: but this is only an Index and not a Catalogue. But if we analyse human nature, and our own feelings, is there not another reason, in that they are all tarred with the same brush—good, bad, and indifferent? They are “*only* ‘Blue-Books.’” The most interesting work in the world, if it has the misfortune to be printed as a Blue-Book will fail to overcome the prejudice.

The next part of our subject which merits attention is the part which officials play, or might play, in a system of

**(7) International-Bibliography.**

This will, however, be more fully treated under the chapter on "International Bibliography," so that I will say no more now, except to remark that if a real effort was made to systematise the issue of Official Literature throughout the civilized world, so as to afford a basis of comparative study of State Problems and Statistics, it is a matter which could be accomplished with ridiculous ease.

**(8) International Exchange.**

This also is a subject of extreme importance, *viz.*, the facilities for the exchange of Public Documents between the Governments of one country and another. This also is treated of separately, so need not now be discussed, except to give the subject its proper place in the chapter.

**(9) Bibliographical Societies.**

In my "Memorandum relative to . . . Special Bibliographical Societies" (1894), I have expressed the belief that a Society for the investigation of the Bibliography of State-Papers was wanted in every country. I still hold the same belief. The need for the investigation and study of the subject is very great.

**(10) Official Documents' Libraries.**

We come now to a most important part of the subject, *viz.*, the need for National Libraries of Official Documents. This is a need which has been imperfectly recognized in most countries.

In America they are awaking to the fact of its necessity. The theory of the subject is simple. Official Documents form a division of Literature wholly distinct in itself, requiring a separate treatment in every way.

As a division, it consists mostly of Periodical Literature, and increases rapidly in bulk, wherefore it requires a roomy building capable of expansion.

Official Documents are very heavy: therefore the building should not be more than two stories high, and there should be extensive room for the reading public on the ground floor, so that a mass of volumes can be consulted direct by the readers themselves. Such a building should be adjacent as part of a National General Library, on account of the fraction of Official Literature,

which belongs equally to a General Library. These are the main points to remember. But as said before, it is no use Librarians attempting to catalogue Official Documents, unless they are published with a view to subsequent necessities of cataloguing. This necessitates therefore, that the Government Printer shall be a

(11) **Government Printer-Librarian;**

—that is, the *Librarian* must be represented on his staff. This need is being recognized in America, in the creation of the office of the “Superintendent of Public Documents.” Let it be hoped that the same example may be followed in every civilized country.

**APPENDIX.**

**The Need for Recording the Literature of  
Minor Forms of Government (County  
Councils and Municipalities, &c., &c.).**

**Provincial and Municipal Official Documents.**

The Official Documents issued by large Municipalities<sup>1</sup> in modern times have developed so greatly in bulk and in value, in addition to the existing collections of old and valuable Records, as to necessitate a special reference to them in a work devoted to National systems of Bibliography. It is scarcely necessary to remark that the prosperity of Municipalities, as dependent on sound systems of administration, lies at the heart of *National* prosperity in the future.

All Municipalities are fighting the same battle; are investigating, consolidating, or modifying past policies of administration in regard to such vital matters as taxation, sanitation, education, &c.

It is of the utmost importance, therefore, not only that all cities shall be able readily to benefit by the past experience of one another, not only that students of Sociology shall find printed statistics easily accessible, but also that Civic Documents shall be housed in special libraries, and catalogued, with a view to rendering any flagrant mal-administration or any attempts at jobbery the more easy to detect.

---

<sup>1</sup> Where the word “Municipalities” occurs, add County Councils.

With this view, no National system of Bibliography is complete which does not include a scheme for the systematic collection and cataloguing of all Municipal Documents. And as they are essentially of the same nature as *State* Official Documents, there is absolutely nothing to puzzle out or to settle concerning their treatment, beyond the simple decisions—

(1) That all Towns of a certain size shall contribute the materials, and contribute towards the cost of preparing a systematic series of:

(a) Catalogues of past Official Documents of Specified Towns.

(b) Annual Series of Catalogues of the present and future Official Literature of the same Towns.

(2) That proper provision be made for preserving such Literature, and for rendering it accessible to the Public.

It must necessarily follow that such measures will lead to greater uniformity of statistical returns than may exist at the present moment.

*P.S.*—I have not had time to make the necessary inquiries regarding the actual state of the record of Municipal Literature in our own country. Certain Municipal librarians have been energetic in the matter. But can this be said of the majority of towns?

I have never yet seen a single Catalogue of County Council Literature. Perhaps they exist. But why do we not hear of them?

F. C.

---

## CHAPTER VII.

**The Record of the Literature of the British Empire.**

Amid all the discussions that have taken place on the subject of Imperial Federation, it is strange that we should have overlooked one of the measures likely to be more popular than any other, and certain to produce splendid results, whether in regard to itself alone or in reference to its general *effects* in binding the Empire together, *viz.*, **a Scheme for recording the Literature of the British Empire on one uniform system.**

The reasons for such a measure are so obvious that it would seem scarcely necessary to enumerate them.

(i.) We have all a common interest in the Literature of every part of the Empire, and therefore common wants.

(ii.) At present these wants remain to be supplied—that is to say, we cannot inform ourselves satisfactorily concerning the Literature of any of our Colonies.

In the majority of Colonies, there are no systems for the record of Literature, and where systems exist, they either vary in plan or are inadequate.

(iii.) The longer the lack of system continues, the greater the confusion and loss.

On the other hand, to turn from the dark side of the picture, the prospect might easily be made brighter, for it is equally certain that, with a very little adjustment, a common system could be introduced throughout the whole Empire.

That such a measure would greatly help to promote the prosperity of the Colonies by attracting greater attention to them, and by facilitating the spread of information concerning their existence.

That the Colonial Governments would, if approached in the right manner, offer every reasonable co-operation.

This being so, what must be the plan of operations, if practical steps were entertained?

The answer is simple :

We have to deal with the Literature of the past, the present, and the future ; *i.e.*, to take measures for the recovery of buried Literature.

- (1) Issued in each Colony.
- (2) Relating to each Colony.

This Literature consists of

- (i.) Official Documents.
- (ii.) General Literature.

It is necessary, therefore, for each Colony to recover both works and titles of what already exists, and to take steps for the registration of all new Literature issued during the course of each year.

In reference to the first object, it is gratifying to be able to point to the labours of many private individuals or Librarians, who have, with great labour, and often at considerable private loss, done good work in helping to record the Lost Literature of the respective Colonies in which they were interested. But these efforts need to be supplemented, and *continued*, and encouraged by each of the several Governments. And such work should emanate from, and centre round, the Chief Library in each Colony.

The first thing to be done is to institute an inquiry into :

(1) **The Copyright Law of each Colony** as it makes provision for the Registration of Literature.

This would result in the passing of Amendment Acts which would assimilate all Colonial Laws on this point, the theory of which I have discussed in another part of this work. And if, as in the case of the Cape Colony,<sup>1</sup> and following the example of the Governments of India and Canada, such Laws were amended so as to include the Library of the British Museum in their provisions, such a measure would greatly increase the facilities in this country for acquainting ourselves with the history of our brothers abroad.

Having then passed Laws which would ensure the delivery *on the day of publication* of works intended for the Chief Library of each Colony, provision might be made for the compilation and printing of such Works of Reference, as I have instanced as necessary in other parts of this work, each different form of Catalogue being kept up to date by means of Guard Books.

---

<sup>1</sup> And several of the Crown Colonies.

But of all the Works of Reference required, I would lay great stress on the institution and maintenance of **Territorial Catalogues**, *i.e.*, Special Bibliographies containing entries of the titles of every work, indigenous and foreign, relating to each Colony. These could similarly be laid down in Guard Books, and new Accessions Catalogues printed at intervals. Thus only can each Colony lay the foundation of its own History, a history which is, in many cases, so rapidly disappearing.

### Survey of Colonial Records.

In connection with Colonial Official Literature, my remarks have naturally referred to *Printed* Official Records. But any measure which dealt with the question generally, would be incomplete if it did not take cognizance of the possible existence of masses of Official *Manuscript* Records in many of our Colonies. That this is actually the case, I have no grounds for stating, but the probability is great. And since such Records are liable to decay and destruction year by year, it might be worth considering whether the organisation of a simultaneous systematic survey of such Records would not be warranted from every point of view. The history of all Record-Surveys is that they have been undertaken *too late*.

An American writer (E. H. Walworth) in an article ("The Value of National Archives") has paid us a compliment in stating that, "Perhaps no nation has been more careful than England in the preservation of her Archives; and, perhaps, no nation has been more careless in this direction than the United States." And, in regard to the Archives of the United Kingdom she is right. But it is an open question whether the same may be said of us in regard to our Colonial Empire.

Thus, if we peruse the "Report of a Committee appointed to inquire and report what classes of Records of the several Courts of Justice in this Island [of Ceylon] may be destroyed as useless" (*Colombo*, 1894, fol.) we find that in a great number of instances the hand of man is not required, since the destruction has been in progress for years:

- "Obliterated by the damp of the verandah."
- "Falling to pieces, and in various stages of decay—require to be bound."
- "A large number of the oldest cases are moth-eaten."
- "Falling to pieces and eaten by White Ants."
- "Some slightly damaged by Rats."



“Readable, but tattered and falling to pieces,”  
are comments repeated on every page, and the number of “Cases”  
which are reported as “Missing” (often destroyed without authority)  
is extraordinary.

In the preface the Committee report :

“Nearly every Court had thousands of Records untouched for years, lying  
in confusion and slowly crumbling to pieces.”

“The work now completed in nearly all the Courts has not only saved large  
numbers of Records from imminent destruction, and rendered the  
existing Records *available for Reference*, but will facilitate the future  
selection of useless Records for destruction, and the preparation of  
Registers thereof.”

The above will show that between Printed Records, Manuscript  
Records, White Ants, Black Rats, Damp Verandahs, and the  
administration of Civil and Criminal Justice, there is a greater con-  
nection than might be supposed !

And the same tale may be told of **India**. In 1867 we find Sir  
William Hunter alluding to “The fragmentary papers which are  
all that official neglect and White Ants have left of the Rural  
Records of Bengal;” and the same authority wrote of them (in  
1867) : “These Records, which in a more direct manner than any  
other memorials of the Company’s rule, bear upon the condition of  
the people during the last century, are, or were, lately mouldering  
away in the Mofussil offices.”

The same writer, in reporting to Sir George Campbell, on the  
subject on Indian Famines, wrote (in 1867) :—

“I have alluded to it not to put forth any claims to have  
known more about the non-applicability of the Bengal relief  
measures to Orissa than other people—for, until far on in the  
famine, I certainly did not know more—but *in order to show  
what great benefits might have accrued from the publication of  
the Local Records*. The archives I had examined in Bengal  
served to indicate the measures which have kept down the  
calamity below the famine point; and I think it is hardly  
likely that, had the Archives of Orissa been also examined, it  
would have been possible not to see that the measures which  
were applicable in Bengal would prove inapplicable and terribly  
insufficient in Orissa.

“The Local Records, however, are incomplete without the  
light to be derived from those in the India Office<sup>1</sup> and in  
Calcutta. To obtain anything like the full value from any one

---

<sup>1</sup> *International Bibliography*.

of them, the whole three must be concentrated; and I shall be deeply grateful and far more than repaid for this hasty narrative, if you should be induced to recommend their publication. A plan exists by which this could be accomplished in a very short time, and at a trifling cost."

Since these words were written, however, a great change has taken place; and when we consider Sir William Hunter's work in India, and that of others associated with him, and peruse the Records so ably edited by Dr. G. W. Forrest, and remember the work of Sir Clements Markham, Mr. Frederick C. Danvers, and others at the India Office, we feel that the dark ages have passed away, so far as India is concerned.

It is pleasant also to recall the work of Mr. James Bonwick in **New South Wales**, and to know that the Government of that Colony has recognised the importance of printing the Records<sup>1</sup> of the Colony in full, so that writers of the history of New South Wales may be able to peruse the actual documents themselves.

In **Canada**, the good work of the Government "Archivist," Mr. Douglas Brymner, is well known; and more recently, Mr. Frank Cundall's energetic efforts, at the Institute of **Jamaica**, have attracted attention.

But to refer to a few prominent favourable instances is not dealing with the whole of the Empire. We require not to think, but to *know*, that the corresponding efforts are being made in every Colony, and directed in the right manner, and placed in competent hands, restrained from any injudicious and wholesale destruction of Records. Should this be difficult of accomplishment?

---

<sup>1</sup> "Historical Records of New South Wales" (*Government Printer, Sydney*, 1892-93, &c., 8°). "History of New South Wales, from the Records . . . By G. B. Barton" (*Government Printer, Sydney*, 1889, &c., 8°).

## APPENDIX I.

*Prefatory Note.*—The following memorandum was found too late for me to incorporate it with the preceding paper, but as it alludes to points of importance, I have decided to print it as an Appendix.—F. C.

### A Survey of the Official Literature of the Colonial Empire.

NOTE.—In 1858, the *Calcutta Review* drew attention to this subject in a forcible article:—

“Each succeeding year will behold England brought into more rapid, more frequent, and more intimate connection with her outlying dependencies; if these are to become more valuable, if they are to be her best customers and her best purveyors, they must become better known; and this they may readily become through the instrumentality of their Official ‘Blue Books.’”—(*Calcutta Review*, 1858).

The fact which stares us in the face, as regards the Official Literature of our Colonial Empire, is that the greater part of it is at present inaccessible for reference. Few there are who know what Colonial Official Literature there is existing, and when they know of its existence, it is still practically inaccessible. And this, in spite of the fact that Official Literature plays such an important part in the life of our Colonies, and that the same social questions are being approached, investigated, and settled (or not settled), for good or for evil, day after day.

The natural question, then, which occurs is: If this be so, what is the remedy? and, happily, the remedy is not a very difficult one to find. The remedy lies in paying attention to the following matters (in regard, especially, to a system of Inter-Colonial Bibliography):—

- (1) The Grouping of Reports in Series.
- (2) The binding of Reports in corresponding Subject Volumes.
- (3) The adoption of similar titles for Reports identical in Nature.
- (4) An investigation of methods of Statistics, with a view to assimilating systems.
- (5) The issue of separate Departmental Catalogues where necessary.

(6) The issue of Annual Preliminary Registers of Documents in the strict order in which they are issued by their several Departments.

(7) The issue of Annual Catalogues of Documents arranged according to their *subjects* rather than strictly under their Departments (which frequently do not correspond to the subject).

#### **Assimilation of Series.**

(1) In the "Brief Comparative View of the Systems of Publication, connected with the issue of Official Documents of the British Colonial Empire" (*vide* Appendix II.), I have shown, at length, the divergencies in the present systems of Publication, on the part of the Australian Colonies, Canada, and the Cape; and have shown how, with a slight adjustment, the prevailing systems might be assimilated to one another, so as not only to increase their practical value for the individual Colony concerned, but also to render a comparative study of Reports dealing with the same subjects throughout the whole Empire a possibility.

#### **Assimilation of Volumes.**

(2) Such a Grouping of Reports in Natural Subject Series would naturally be followed by their issue in corresponding volumes, which is very necessary; for the present system of crowding Official Documents of each session into a few very thick, large, and heavy volumes is most detrimental to any study of the same.

#### **Assimilation of Titles.**

(3) It must naturally strike a very careful observer that it is a pity that the Titles of Documents, identically the same, in each of the larger Colonies, should differ as much as they do, and that the *strictly* Parliamentary Papers should not be more clearly separated from the "Papers presented to Parliament."

#### **Comparative Statistics.**

(4) Are the systems of Statistical Registers as uniform as they might be, for purposes of Comparative Statistics? (This is put rather as a question than as an assertion.)

**Departmental Catalogues and National Registers.**

(5—6) The first foundation of all reference to Official Literature is the compilation of complete *Departmental Catalogues* of Publications issued during the course of each new year, some of which Catalogues should be issued separately (according to the size and importance of the Department), and all of which should be issued as one complete Register of the Official Documents of the year, arranged under the several Departments.

(7) This Departmental Register forms the basis of an Annual<sup>1</sup> Subject-Catalogue of Documents, which it is then (and only then) possible to compile on a system which admits of each Report, or group of Reports, being catalogued under the Subject (or Department, when the Department tallies with the subject) under which it will naturally be looked for.

**APPENDIX II.****Brief Comparative Review of the Systems of Publication affecting the Issue of Official Documents of the British Colonial Empire.**

In regard to official documents, the most vital points connected with the Publication stage are:—

(i.) The proper distribution and arrangement of connected Papers in Parts or Volumes prior to the supply of Titles.

(ii.) The proper distribution and arrangement of connected Parts or Volumes in Series, prior to the final Binding of large sets of Public Documents year by year; and each of these processes must be carried out with special reference to facilitating the subsequent cataloguing and reference.

It will readily be understood that the Public Documents issued by the larger Governments will (for sake of argument) number each year some 1000 and more individual papers (each complete in itself), which could, therefore, be bound up in strictly chronological order, 1—1000.

But, obviously, these relate to clearly defined subjects of administration, and, therefore, it is advantageous to group them

---

<sup>1</sup> According to circumstances, the word "Annual" changes to "Monthly" and "Weekly."

together in some order by which you can find the connected Documents you may require, if possible *in one volume* or, at least, *in one section of that volume*, with proper Explanatory Titles, Tables of Contents, Indexes, &c.

But, as in the Classification of the Titles of Books, so in the grouping of Official Documents, it will be found that you can group connected Reports in a variety of manners, according to the particular systems of administration,<sup>1</sup> the main point to bear in mind being this, that you can group Official Documents in groups graduated from

- (a) The unit ;
  - (b) The more specific (smallest) group ;
  - (c) The small group
- up to
- (d) The larger or largest group.

#### Victorian Documents. (Arranged as Units).

To take an illustration : the Victorian Sessional Papers are bound up in order of the *Unit* (or nearly so—chronologically ?) —the most unsatisfactory arrangement which can exist.

#### South Australian Documents.

Similarly, the South Australian Documents are bound according to the unit.

#### Tasmania.

The same system of the unit prevails in Tasmania.

#### Cape of Good Hope.

Somewhat the same system of the unit prevails at the Cape.

It may easily be realised how hard it is to find individual reports, and how *impossible* to find connected reports under such circumstances where a report of a single page may be buried between two reports of hundreds of pages, the pagination of each report ceasing with itself.

Even when (which is not necessarily always the case), volumes are paginated by hand, this does not cancel the ill effects of connected parts being scattered in all directions.

---

<sup>1</sup> Which may often be, in fact, only temporary arrangements, or the results of accidents, such as the issue of Agricultural Reports by the U. S. Patent Office in the past, or the placing of the Literary Archives and Copyright Publications and Patents under the Department of Agriculture in Canada.

When once, however, the Colonial Governments concerned realise how comparatively useless such volumes are for purposes of reference, it is certain that the order would be issued to-morrow in favour of arrangement by *Group-Series*.

It is with greater satisfaction that we turn to the Colonies of Queensland, New South Wales, Canada, and New Zealand, to find that the two former adopt a *Small-Group* Subject arrangement, while the two latter have adopted what is more truly a Large-Group-Subject arrangement.

#### Queensland.

Thus we find that for the year quoted, the Queensland Documents are arranged in thirty-two Subject-Groups.

#### New South Wales.

The New South Wales Documents, Sess. 1892-93, are arranged in eight volumes of twenty-seven Subject-Groups.

#### Canada.

The Canadian Documents *are* arranged in **Subject-Volumes**, the set for 1894 being bound up in some twelve to seventeen Subject-Volumes.

#### New Zealand.

The New Zealand Documents, 1887, are arranged in some nine Subject-Groups.

Regarding, then, the subject from one imperial point of view, such divergencies are greatly to be deplored, especially as the briefest examination of the Documents alluded to would show that the points of resemblance are so many, and the points of difference so much a matter of detail, that with a very little adjustment, it would be possible for each Colony of the Empire so to arrange its Public Documents that we might have one grand series, based on one practical and simple system, throughout the Empire, such as would facilitate Comparative Legislation, Comparative Agriculture, Comparative Education, Comparative Irrigation, Comparative Sanitation, Comparative Statistics, Comparative EVERYTHING to the common benefit of ALL, and to the injury of none.

It would be a very simple matter for the larger Colonies to

issue their present unwieldy annual series of tomes in handier volumes, such as are issued by the British Government. It would be very easy for them to agree on a common system, so that the agriculturalists could easily obtain year by year ALL the Agricultural Reports of every other Colony bound in separate volumes; and likewise the Lawyers, and those interested in Education, Statistics, &c., &c., be able to obtain just the volumes which interested them, whether at the Public Libraries, or in private, without having to purchase or consult heavy tomes containing thousands of Documents of no interest to them.

That they would obtain *all* the reports bound in their single volumes could not always be the case, in instances where one report might have a common interest to two or more subject-groups, but they could generally get all they wanted thus intact, and would at least be able to purchase any odd documents wanted to supplement the regular volumes. (*Vide* Table on p. 135.)

#### **Uniformity in the Sectional arrangement of certain Documents.**

It is not however in the general grouping alone that uniformity is desirable, but, where possible, also in the interior sectional details—especially in the case of Reports which are purely Statistical.

Two instances will serve to illustrate the unnecessary divergencies which exist, *viz.*, a reprint of the two Tables of Contents of the Year-Books of Victoria and Canada for the year 1894.

Of course, a certain margin of divergence should be allowed. But there is no reason why, in the rough outline, there should not be a far greater uniformity of arrangement in the Official Documents of the British Empire, and ultimately of the whole civilised world.

The following is the "Table of Contents" of the "Statistical Year Book of Canada" for 1894 (with pagination here omitted):—

Map.  
Introduction.  
Statistical Summary.

#### THE RECORD.

Chapter	I.—History and Principal Events.
„	II.—Constitution and Government.

\* \* \* \* \*



Chapter	III.—Physical Features.
"	IV.—Land and Land Regulations.
"	V.—Forest Wealth.
"	VI.—Results of a Census.
"	VII.—Railways (general).
"	VIII.—United States of America.
"	IX.—Events of the Year.
	&c., &c., &c.
	THE ABSTRACT.
"	X.—Agriculture.
"	XI.—Fisheries.
"	XII.—Minerals.
"	XIII.—Trade and Commerce.
"	XIV.—Currency, Banks and Savings Banks.
"	XV.—Railways and Canals.
"	XVI.—Mercantile Marine.
"	XVII.—Post Office and Telegraphs.
"	XVIII.—Finance.
"	XIX.—Insurance.
	Fire.
	Life.
"	XX.—Militia and Defence.
"	XXI.—Social and other Statistics.
	&c., &c., &c.

#### Appendix.

List of Senators, Members of House of Commons, and of the several Provincial Legislatures.

#### Index.

The following is the Table of Contents of the "Victorian Year Book" for the year 1894 :—

	PAGE.
Statistical Summary of Victoria.	
Summary of Agricultural Statistics.	
" Australasian "	
Errata .. .. .	vii.
Statistics, Part I.—Constitution and Government .. .. .	1
" " II.—Population .. .. .	28
" " III.—Finance .. .. .	85
" " IV.—Vital Statistics .. .. .	254
" " V.—Interchange .. .. .	409
" " VI.—Accumulation .. .. .	578
" " VII.—Production .. .. .	653
" " VIII.—Defences .. .. .	801
" " IX.—Law, Crime, &c. .. .. .	811
" " X.—Social Condition .. .. .	872
Revenue and Expenditure of Victoria, 1892-3 to 1894-5 (Appendix A.)	iii.
Australasian Statistics, 1893 (Appendix B.) .. .. .	xii.
Tariffs of Australasian Colonies (Appendix C.) .. .. .	xxxiv.
Trade Index.—Numbers of Exports (Appendix D.) .. .. .	xliv.
Index .. .. .	xlix.
Map of Victoria.	

**Very Rough Draft as a basis for discussion.**

	CANADA.	CAPE COLONY.	N.S. WALES.	NEW ZEALAND.	QUEENSLAND,†	TASMANIA.	VICTORIA.
Agriculture and Crown Lands ..							
Archives .. .. .							
Civil Service .. .. .							
Education and Fine Arts .. ..							
Emigration and Immigration ..							
Finance .. .. .							
*Irrigation .. .. .							
Prisons and Police .. .. .							
Law and Legislation .. .. .							
Marine .. .. .							
Military and Naval .. .. .							
Medical and Sanitary.. .. .							
Mines .. .. .							
Native Affairs .. .. .							
Post and Telegraph .. .. .							
Public Works .. .. .							
Railways .. .. .							
*Statistics (Miscellaneous) .. ..							
Trade and Commerce .. .. .							

*\* Intended to be issued separate.*

† SOUTH AUSTRALIA.

### APPENDIX III.

#### Official Documents.

Table illustrating the Natural Laws of International Bibliography in the Division of Official Literature.

The following Table,\* compiled from "The Statesman's Year-Book" for 1881, shows how easily the different Governments could combine upon one common system in regard to the issue and cataloguing of their Official Documents. With a few omissions of Ministerial Offices of a *general* character, the Table shows how exactly the natural divisions of Administration in each country correspond with one another. Why, then, should not the Official Document be generally grouped and bound and treated in corresponding series? Even this would be something.

(\* *Vide* next page.)

---

Table.

AUSTRIA.	BELGIUM.	DENMARK.	FRANCE.	GERMANY.	ITALY.	NETHERLANDS.	RUSSIA.	CANADA.	U.S.A.
Agriculture..	—	* .. .. .	Commerce and Agriculture.	Agriculture, Domains, & Forests	Commerce and Agriculture.	* .. .. .	Imperial Domains	Agriculture ..	* .. .. .
Commerce ..	—	* .. .. .	Commerce and Agriculture.	Commerce and Industry.	Commerce and Agriculture.	* .. .. .	* .. .. .	Customs ..	* .. .. .
Finance ..	Finance ..	Finance ..	Finance ..	Finance ..	Finance ..	Finance ..	Finance ..	Inland Revenue.	Treasury.
* .. .. .	Foreign Affairs ..	Foreign Affairs ..	Foreign Affairs ..	* .. .. .	Foreign Affairs ..	Foreign Affairs ..	Foreign Affairs ..	—	Secretary of State & Foreign Affairs.
Interior..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior ..	Interior.
* .. .. .	Justice ..	Justice ..	Justice ..	Justice ..	Justice ..	Justice ..	Justice ..	Justice ..	Attorney-General.
* .. .. .	* .. .. .	Marine ..	Marine ..	* .. .. .	Marine ..	Marine..	Navy ..	Marine and Fisheries.	Navy.
Public Education, Justice, & Ecclesiastical Affairs.	Public Instruction.	Public Education and Ecclesiastical Affairs.	Public Instruction and Fine Arts.	Public Instruction and Ecclesiastical Affairs.	Public Instruction.	* .. .. .	Public Instruction.	* .. .. .	* .. .. .
* .. .. .	Public Works ..	* .. .. .	Posts and Telegraphs, Public Works.	Public Works ..	Public Works ..	Public Works and Commerce.	Public Works and Railways.	Postmaster-General, Public Works, Railways and Canals.	Postmaster-General.
National Defence	War ..	War ..	War ..	War ..	War ..	War ..	War ..	Militia and Defence.	War.
		&c., &c.		&c., &c.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.	&c., &c.

\* Asterisks denote that the Office is combined with some other Office.



CHAPTER VIII.

**A National System of Bibliography.**

---

"There comes a time in the history of the world when the machinery of National Life gets played out, when it must be remodelled."—*Sir George Grey.*



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

The need for system.

The conditions of success.

- (1) Completeness.
- 2) Certainty.
- (3) Convenience.

Serial Connection.

The Natural Divisions of Literature, originate in connection with

- (I.) Source of Publication.
- (II.) Form of Publication.

Five "Sources of Publication."

<i>Official Literature.</i>	Published Works.	Works Privately Printed.
(A) State Governments .. ..	"	"
(B) Minor Forms of Government ..	"	"
<i>General Literature.</i>		
(C) Publishers .. .. .	"	"
(D) Learned Societies and Institutions	"	"
(E) Private Individuals .. ..	"	"

Difference of *Form* in Publication renders it impossible to treat Official Literature and General Literature alike, thus creating two *Divisions* in Literature.

Difference of *Form* in Publication (Separate Works v. Collected Works) gives rise to other *Sub-Divisions*.

Sub-Divisions enumerated :—

Need for registering, cataloguing, and indexing Literature according to its Natural Sub-Divisions, as well as Divisions.  
 Ordinary kinds of Works of Reference required.  
 Their probable history.  
 Selected Literature.  
 Time.

Other factors in a National System of Bibliography :—

National Libraries.  
 Other Libraries.  
 Learned Societies.  
 Bibliographical Societies.  
 Publishers and Booksellers.  
 Imperial System for the British Empire.  
 An International System.  
 Official Literature.  
 Government Aid.  
 Suggested Lines of Study.  
 The Dewey System.





## CHAPTER VIII.

**A National System of Bibliography.**

"A National System of Bibliography."

"A National System of Bibliography?"

"Yes—a National System of Bibliography."

Thus waged the conversation between two men, of whom it was easy to see that one was an "enthusiast," and the other "wasn't." And it is not difficult to see that this chapter takes the part of the former. And is this strange and unreasonable? Surely, the contrary. Rather is it strange and unreasonable to think that there will be anyone found to have doubted the necessity for some fundamental system for dealing with the record of a nation's literature each successive year. No one disputes the need for well-ordered "system" in other departments of life. Why should the principle be scoffed at in connection with a nation's literature?

But what shall that system be? Ah! here we close with the adversary. Now begins the real fight—the settlement of *details*. And yet the matter is not so vague of solution as might appear.

What are the conditions of success? They are these:

(1) *That, given the issue of a certain number of works in a certain area during a certain period, there shall be a complete Record of them for the use of the reading public.*

(2) *That such record be issued in a convenient form at convenient intervals of time.*

(3) *That all measures adopted be based upon the principle of certainty—*

*Certainty as to area of territory.*

„ „ *date of issue of a work.*

„ „ *serial connection.*

„ „ *fulness and accuracy of title.*

„ „ *the subject related.*

„ „ *completeness in the record of all works issued.*

And of the above essentials, the first and foremost is that of **serial connection**, viz., the natural divisions and sub-divisions of literature to which a work belongs.

But why is it necessary to register literature according to alleged natural divisions ?

For the same reason that you separate men from animals, and men from men—viz., that certain kindred distinctions exist which it is not only convenient but necessary to observe in life.

In the world of books, these distinctions are necessary :

- (1) *In order to discover, eliminate and arrange hidden factors.*
- (2) *In order to be able to deal with those factors when found.*

### **Two Factors Creating Natural Divisions.**

What, then, are the natural divisions of literature, and how can we be sure that we have determined them rightly? For answer: The natural divisions of literature correspond with:—

1. The different sources of publications. (Source-Divs.)
2. The difference of form in the publication issued. (Form-Divs.)

We may be sure that Source of Issue must be a determining factor, inasmuch as we cannot check a stream, nor be sure of securing the whole volume of its waters, unless we have traced all the possible sources and can be sure of knowing all the channels.

### **Five Source-Divisions of Literature.**

Now we know that in any civilised country, all works issue from the following sources:—

- (A) The State Governments (as the largest publishers).
- (B) Minor forms of Government (Provincial or Municipal).
- (C) Professional Publishers.
- (D) Learned Societies and Institutions.
- (E) Private Individuals.

In order, then, to comply with these conditions and in order to obtain *complete* lists of literature of any given period of time (which is the great aim of Bibliography), we must obviously obtain Periodical Registers of the literature issuing from all these five main sources.

But we find that, with the exception of source C (Professional Publishers), each other literature-source divides, according to circumstances, into two streams:—

- (i.) Works which are issued privately, and are not sold to the public.
- (ii.) Works which are published at a price.

Sometimes these streams of *privately* issued books run parallel to one another, but more often converge and unite, or else trickle away and are lost.

But the chief point to bear in mind is that the *water* is the same, the only difference being that the one class of stream runs on a high level, while the other more generally runs in deeper and more hidden channels.

So long, therefore, as we obtain the whole volume of water by re-diverting wayward streams back to the main channel, we are satisfied.

### Two Form-Divisions of Literature.

But, apart from source of issue, there is a second determining factor which we have alluded to—that of Form of Publication, with which we quit our fluvial comparisons. Now what leads us to suppose that this is a scientific factor in determining the Natural Divisions of Literature? The answer is simple. If all literature has to be catalogued—a fact which is not disputed—and it be proved that it is only possible to catalogue half the mass of books by the application of a method differing radically from the method applicable to the other half, we may rest assured that we are again face to face with two *Natural* Divisions.

This is the case in reference to (i.) **General Literature** and (ii.) **Official Literature**, *i.e.*, that Literature which is issued by Supreme or Federal forms of Government and Minor Official Bodies.

In the case of General Literature, the large majority of works have Authors' names attached, or at least some designation which is analogous to authorship.

In the case of Official Literature the still larger majority of works have no Authors' names attached, and if they have, such names are worse than useless, as they are mere official figure-heads, whose seeming importance awe and entrap unwary Librarians.

Added to this fact, Official Literature exists always in large series, which while intelligible and easily dealt with, when kept together as harmonious wholes, are quite unintelligible and hopeless to deal with if broken up and dispersed in Authors' Catalogues.

For these reasons, as Librarians know to their cost, it is impossible to catalogue General Literature and Official Literature

except as two Great Classes, distinct and separate from one another.<sup>1</sup>

But **Form of Publication** is not responsible only for the creation of the two great **Divisions** of Official Literature, and non-Official (or General) Literature; it also gives rise to the existence of Natural **Sub-Divisions** under each of the two large Divisions, in the following manner.

### Form Sub-Divisions.

Theoretically all literature exists as *Separate Works*. As such, it is comparatively easy to deal with.

But directly the element of the 'Collection' (Collected Literature) appears, all simplicity vanishes.

For various reasons the practice has developed—to an enormous extent—of *Collecting* a number of *Separate Works*, and issuing them to the world under a Collective title, or not even with that convenience. The obvious result is that they are buried from sight and memory, and if we wish to maintain a Record of Literature and compile our Authors' Catalogues, Title-Catalogues, Subject-Catalogues and Indexes, we must take special preventative measures to deal with the evil. That is to say, we must pursue the works in their hiding-places (like the Indian Census Officer who had to pursue a native into the centre of a muddy pond in order to take his statistics!) and we must register their existence in their concealment.

Obviously, then, we ask ourselves: In what manner is Literature thus collected? The answer is perfectly clear. Literature, in the form (bibliographically) of *Separate* works is collected in—

#### General Literature.

1. **Works of Reference** (such as the *Encyclopædia Britannica*).
2. **Ordinary "Collected Works"** (Essays, Works of Special Authors, or on Special Subjects, etc.)
3. **Publications of Learned Societies.**
4. **Magazines and Reviews.**

#### Official Literature.

1. **Works of Reference.**
2. **Ordinary "Collected Works."**
3. **Publications of State Institutions.**
4. **Magazines and Reviews.**

<sup>1</sup> Certain Official Documents (in cases where Authorship has a real value, and in cases where Documents are of a scientific, literary, art or popular interest) may be entered in *duplicate* in Authors' Catalogues of General Literature; and *all* Official Documents may be scattered under their respective *Subject* in a Subject-Catalogue of Universal Literature, but in this latter case this again is duplicate entry, and could not possibly supersede the necessity for separate 'finding' Catalogues of Official Documents.

And having discovered exactly what these sub-divisions are, and agreed that the groups referred to so naturally constitute groups each with their marked characteristics, it is then patent that if we wish to preserve a *complete* record of literature, we must, pursuing the same course as before (when we agreed to register works according to their sources, Divisions A—E), register and catalogue these concealed works according to the natural Sub-divisions in which they exist.

This then is the plain common-sense and business-like theory of the Preliminary Registration of National Literature.<sup>1</sup>

We register Literature according to its Source-Divisions in order that we may afterwards be able to register and catalogue it according to its Form-Divisions.

But so far, we have only regarded the necessity for registering the individual titles of separate works, and of concealed Literature, without direct reference to the fact that there are other needs to supply,

#### **The Ordinary Kinds of Works of Reference.**

*i.e.*, that each work

*is by an Author.*

*has a Title.*

*relates to a Subject or Group of Subjects.*

And that in order to render the mazes of Literature fully accessible, there is need, according to circumstances, of—

**Author Catalogues.<sup>2</sup>**

**Title Catalogues.**

**Subject Catalogues.**

**Indexes of Matters.**

This, then, necessitates that we should take steps to catalogue the same Titles (Catalogues), or refer to them (Indexes), in the several different manners suggested, even if we do not pursue the matter still further by the compilation of elaborations of the same idea.

<sup>1</sup> It is not popularly known that the Government of India has, since the year 1867, printed Quarterly Registers of General Literature issued in India; and, more recently, Registers of Official Documents.

Similarly, certain of our Colonial Governments have printed Quarterly Registers of Literature (General Literature only as a rule).

While all these Registers are capable of great improvement, in reference to their schedule arrangement and treatment of detail, they, nevertheless, are very creditable as a whole, and at least illustrate what *might* be done better, and *everywhere*, if the matter were looked to. (See Sec. II., No. 11).

<sup>2</sup> See pages 174 and 175, of Chapter IX.

Now let it be clearly understood : the *Register* is the *List of Full Title-Entries* accompanied by the entry of such descriptive details of a work which are required by cataloguers, before they can catalogue a work properly. It is the complete collection of separate Title-Entries on which we are afterwards going to work.

But we find that, with a little due adjustment of details, we can print part of the Register in the form of other of the works of Reference noted as necessary for our aid. Thus, we can at once print it in the form of an *Authors' Catalogue* ; and since a printed Register of works as received chronologically at a State Library is not necessary for purposes of research, we effect an economy by so doing, maintaining a Chronological List only in Manuscript Receipt-Books.

And we find further that, with a proper adjustment of details, we can compile all the several works of Reference simultaneously by using duplicate copies of the entries from the Register—all on one examination of the Book. This then we proceed to do.

The nature of the works of Reference alluded to, and the reasons of their existence, we discuss under the chapter on "Works of Reference : their kinds and uses," and we will not therefore repeat the description here.

It is important, however, to note that if it is necessary to register Literature according to its Natural Divisions and Sub-divisions, and if it be necessary that we should compile the five works of References specified, there are only two courses :—

(1) To issue a *separate set* of the five kinds of Works of Reference for each Sub-division.

(2) To issue one general set of the kinds of Works of Reference, in which the separate Titles of all works (both those separate and those which have been *un-*"collected") shall be incorporated in the five Works of Reference, irrespective of the sub-divisions to which they belong.

This is, however, a very intricate question, greatly dependent on circumstances (finance, proportion, &c.).

So far as I can judge, I think at present—

That (i.) the whole contents of National Collected Literature should not be merged in a National Catalogue of Works issued separately.

That (ii.) there should be separate Annual sets of Works of Reference for the entries of titles contained in—

(2) Encyclopædias, &c.

(3) Ordinary "Collected" Works.

That (iii.) there should be separate Annual sets of Works of Reference for the works of Learned Societies.

That (iv.) there should be separate Annual sets of Works of Reference for independent Magazines and Reviews.

That (v.) a selection of the above may be incorporated (with due explanations) in the National Catalogue of separately issued works.

That (vi.) the five kinds of Works of Reference may be compiled in reference to any particular Group of Subjects, without respect of works being issued *separately* or *collectedly*.

### Records of Selected Literature.

Hitherto I have referred to the subject of the *complete* Record of Literature. It is necessary to state that there is equal necessity for *Selected* Records of Literature, and that this process of selection may be, and should be, exercised in regard to all the divisions and sub-divisions, and kinds of works enumerated.

There are, of course, many instances to illustrate the recognition of the place which catalogues of *selected* Literature play in the economy of a National System of Bibliography.

Mr. Swan Sonnenschein's "Best Books" is a Catalogue of Selected Literature arranged in *large groups*.

Mr. Arthur Henry Acland's "A Guide to the Choice of Books" is another instance, arranged in *smaller groups*, and on a more popular system.

Mr. G. K. Fortescue's "Subject Index" is an instance of a Catalogue of Selected Literature arranged mainly according to the *specific* subject. Of the same nature is "A Guide Book to Books," edited by E. B. Sargant and B. Whishaw in 1891.

Poole's "Index to Periodicals," the "Co-operative Index," and the *Review of Reviews*' "Index to the Periodicals," while covering very wide ground, are necessarily indexes to a *selected* number of periodicals. And as I write I have received intimation of a new private effort projected, in the shape of an "Index of English Periodical Literature," dealing with a much smaller selection of well-known periodicals.

And other lists of selected publications are to be found in such works as *General and Special Encyclopædias*, *Scientific Monographs*, the *Statesman's Year-Book*, the *Annual Register*, and in magazines and reviews.

But in regard to these efforts, there are two important points to notice—



(1) With one exception, such published aids all refer to *Universal* Literature, and do not and cannot, therefore, represent *National* Literature to the extent required. This being the case, it is not out of place to ask, in special reference to foreign literature, *How are these lists compiled?* The answer should be, "They are based on the selected lists of the literature of every other country."

But, no! with stray exceptions, there are no such lists in existence. Wherefore the position is this, that each compiler of a Catalogue of Selected Universal Literature, on any large scale, has individually (or through his agents) to attack the literature of the world anew. Now I admit, that with the aid of Specialists and Booksellers, any conscientious editor of such works will do valuable work; but, in proportion to the size of his work, so will his powers and those of his staff find greater difficulty in accomplishing their duties satisfactorily. And this must be so in the case of scattered bands of men trying to attempt the record of *universal* bibliography before proper national systems are in existence. No body of persons is really able to gauge the literature of the Countries of the world, except the individual representatives of those countries.

(2) The second point to notice is that, with rare and minor (?) exceptions, such Catalogues of Selected Literature are *intermittent*. They do not appear regularly, and they do not cover the ground systematically (because where systems exist they are wanting in detail).

And this is a serious defect, and nowhere more so than in regard to the purchases of modern works in the numerous Free Libraries of civilised countries. Many such libraries do not all make large purchases during the year, for want of funds. But nevertheless a certain percentage of Modern Literature must always be purchased. And thus, each Librarian in every library has in like manner, in spite of his many other labours, to attack afresh the Literature of his own country, and, to a certain extent, that of other countries as well, in order to know what purchases to make.

The above then points to two conclusions: We require, for *National* purposes as well as *International* purposes, a Regular Periodical Series of Systematic Catalogues of Selected Literature.

We require one such Series compiled upon a broad basis.

From this it would be possible to compile other Special Catalogues, such as the List of Works (other than fiction) sug-

gested for purchase in public free libraries. I made this latter suggestion in 1894, at the Library Association meeting at the Mansion House, and I still feel that it should be carried out.

The question, of course, arises: "Who is to prepare such Lists?" and no doubt there are difficulties—difficulties as to impartiality rather than competency. Nevertheless, the need is absolute, and the work should be done.

Before we quit this part of our subject, there is also the element of

### Time

to consider. If all this Record of Literature be necessary, how often should the Reference Works be issued? for it is evident that with a proper system, Works of Reference should be issued at regular intervals, and that times will arrive when such supplements should be incorporated together.


For answer: It is a question greatly dependent on circumstances, *i.e.*, on the number and nature of works comprised, and and on the financial possibilities.

One thing is certain, however, that in regard to Modern Literature, the great necessity is: (i.) to record first the Literature of each present year by the month or quarter, according to circumstances; (ii.) to record the Literature of the Century, 1801-1900 (1901, etc.).

Having thus considered the existence of the Natural Divisions and Sub-divisions of Literature, and the necessity for recording Literature in accordance with those divisions and sub-divisions, it is superfluous to remark that the student in search of literature should bear them in mind, for, in spite of the fact that no system prevails in any country which is wholly perfect (and in most countries very much the reverse), yet mankind has even unconsciously followed these divisions to a great extent, and compiled works of Reference accordingly. In this country, as in many, we are indebted to the aid of publishers and private individuals in the task of building up a System; and, imperfect as such a policy is and must ever be in its results, it has proved of very considerable value in the past, and will always have a certain value in the future.

### Parts of the Machine.

So far, endeavour has been made to show the necessity for registering Literature according to its Natural Divisions, and



to show what those divisions are and why they exist. Slight reference has also been made to the kinds of Works of Reference required, and to the factors of *Selected Literature* and *Time*. But there are other very special factors which remain to be considered or noticed, *viz.* :—

- (1) The National Libraries.
- (2) The interest of the Free Public Libraries in a National System of Bibliography.
- (3) The functions of Learned Societies.
- (4) The institution and duties of Bibliographical Societies.
- (5) Publishers and Booksellers.
- (6) The effect of Copyright Laws.
- (7) The establishment of an Imperial System of Bibliography for the British Empire.
- (8) The establishment of an International Bibliographical System.
- (9) Reform in reference to the Bibliography of Official Literature.
- (10) Government Aid.
- (11) Suggested Lines of Study for Students of Modern Bibliography.

### National Libraries.

Where circumstances permit, the National Libraries should be the centres of National systems of Bibliography.

If all books are delivered at the National Libraries on the day of issue, a satisfactory system of Bibliography is then possible. Without this, it is, in the majority of countries impossible.

This is evident for the following reasons :—

You cannot register the Literature of a country completely, unless you can gain regular and speedy access to *all* the Literature issued during the course of each year. Unless you have the books you cannot register their Titles. Now, in no country, are there any libraries or bureaux which receive anything like a complete collection<sup>1</sup> of the National Literature except the National Libraries.

Therefore in no country can the Registration be carried out except at the National Libraries. It is said, however, that in

---

<sup>1</sup> *Copyright Publications: Privately Printed Publications.*

Germany the Publishers have a system so perfect that they are able, and do publish, absolute Records of *Published Literature*.

If this be so, it only increases the admiration felt for the business-like, serious manner in which Germans address themselves to all work. Nevertheless the presumption is absolute that, if it be so, such a case can only be a most rare one. All nations are not equally businesslike; and even if they were, would it pay publishers, as a body, to advertise the existence of every pamphlet work they issue? Personally I think it would. But I believe they think otherwise. And they ought to be the best judges of their own business. But supposing that they assume to publish a record of every single work, what guarantee have we that they do so? And if we find it to the contrary, what redress have we? We cannot complain, since they are not part of the regular State-Machine.

Moreover, publishers naturally print their catalogues to suit their own particular objects, and while these are in some instances, of exceptional value, their value is more supplementary than all-sufficing.

In spite of the fact that Mr. R. R. Bowker, the Editor of "The American Catalogue...1884—1890," considers "The system of which 'The Publisher's Weekly' record is the beginning and the American Catalogue the crown" to be "now the most complete presented by any nation," he complains, in the preface, of the great trouble he had experienced in obtaining from the American publishers "*the information necessary to make the work approximately complete.*" And, subsequently, in alluding to the new American Copyright Law, he builds his hopes on the National Library as the one real basis for National Bibliography, in the words: "It is, therefore, to be presumed that all books of any importance published in America will be recorded in the Library of Congress, and *thus an official basis will be possible for American Bibliography.*"

Everything, therefore, points to the advantage, where possible, of registering the National Literature on one system at the National Libraries, as the one and only foundation of National and International Bibliography.

This implies the need for separating the modern accessions from those of the past. The "Bibliothèque Nationale" issues a "Bulletin Mensuel des Récentes Publications Françaises," as an Authors' Catalogue, with Special Geographical Supplement ("Livres Anciens" Supplements).

Such a Bulletin might be issued in the form of a Subject-Catalogue also.

I have elsewhere endeavoured to show that the same reasons apply to Privately Printed Literature, and that it is to the interests of the Scientific Societies, who are the largest contributors of Privately Printed Literature to help Government first, in order that Government may be in a position to help them afterwards.

If the Learned Societies when required, provide Government with absolutely complete Lists of their Publications, Government could issue such lists in one great series, on one uniform scale, which would exist for all time as the common property of all, forming the material which the Learned Societies could afterwards cut up and arrange, and elaborate at will, according to their particular requirements.

In the case of **Official Documents** (whether copyright or not), it is manifest that where Government is its own publisher, it is even more incumbent upon it to register such Literature.

### **Other Libraries.**

The connection between the Free Public Libraries of a country and a National System of Bibliography, is the same connection which exists between all Libraries and the subject under discussion—a connection depending on :—

(1) The nature of the Collections of Literature possessed by a Library, in regard to the manner in which such collections are catalogued and indexed.

(2) The benefits which such a Library may or may not participate in from a National System of Bibliography.

In short: the benefits which the State derives from the Libraries (if catalogued), and the possible benefits which the Libraries may derive from the State.

In regard to the present subject, the benefits which the State derives from Libraries is confined chiefly to those Libraries which are enriched by special collections of Literature, when the existence of such Literature is properly recorded. And all the more so, in the absence of a systematic record of Literature in the past. That is to say, in the absence of complete Registers of Literature, and a complete supply of Special Bibliographies, we as every other country, are often greatly dependent for works of Reference on such Catalogues. To a student in search of

Literature on a particular subject, it is important to bear this in mind.

The subject of *Philology* affords apt illustrations. Thus, for our Special Bibliographies on the subject of South African and Australasian Philology, we have been long dependent on the catalogue of Sir George Grey's Library, published in 1858.

Similarly, in reference to Philology as a whole, it is claimed with reason that Mr. Victor Collins' catalogue (1894, 8vo) of the magnificent Library of the late Prince Louis-Lucien Bonaparte is so far the finest Bibliography on the subject.

In regard to our Colonial Literature (taken as a *whole*), we were, till lately, dependent on Mr. Petherick's "Catalogue of the York Gate Library," and on the 1886 Catalogue of the Royal Colonial Institute, more recently aided by the addition of the Catalogue of the Sydney Library, and still more recently by Mr. Boosé's new Catalogue of the Royal Colonial Institute.

Similarly, a number of students of Political Science would be greatly dependent on the Gladstone Library of the National Liberal Club, on the Musée Social in Paris, and on the future "Library of Political Science" in London.

Now, while we are specially indebted and grateful to such private collectors, who have devoted so much of their energies and fortunes to making Special Collections, and to catalogues of the same, it is humiliating to think that we should be thus so dependent on the accidental uprising of a book-collector, especially as such works all overlap one another, and are necessarily incomplete. Special Libraries should be based on the contents of Special Bibliographies; not Special Bibliographies based upon Special Libraries.

It is therefore greatly to be hoped that, in regard to the *future*, the civilised countries will agree to record their Literature in such a way that we shall be in possession of Complete Records, with *no* gaps and *no* imperfections, arranged on one system.

Nevertheless, though such a reform is to be urged, yet we are not (nor, as regards the past, ever can be) yet out of the wood. No system in the future can, for years to come—if ever—atone for the dispersal of literature in the past.

It is therefore absolutely necessary that each country should issue a proper Bibliographical guide to the more Special Collections to be found in the several Libraries throughout each country, such as the French *Government*, with admirable thoughtfulness,

has published for some years under the title of "Annuaire des Bibliothèques et des Archives," and what the "Jahrbuch der Musikbibliothek Peters" for 1894 does for Public and Private Libraries in Europe in presenting a clue to their more special contents.

As to the second part of our subject, the benefits which libraries may derive from a central system of National Bibliography, I cannot do better than repeat the remarks of my paper on "Periodical Literature," re-stating the five propositions there put forward.

### The Interests of the Librarian.

"What, then, are the special interests of the Librarian in Periodical Literature?" It is important to ask this question, because there must be very many whose Libraries necessarily contain only a limited number of Periodicals, and who, not being called upon to catalogue the contents of the same, at least not on any large scale, might ask: "What has all this to do with me?" In response to which—always supposing that the Class of Readers is such as will appreciate the efforts made on its behalf—I will for a moment place myself in the position of a "Reader," and I will suppose myself a member of the "Local Press," about to write an article which may meet the eyes of thousands, and which is therefore a matter of considerable importance.

I arrive at a Public Library: I wish at a moment's notice to peruse every work which some eminent man has contributed to the Periodicals of this country, and, in addition, wish to see all the reviews on his books, and every notice of his life. It is of the highest importance that I obtain this information at once. In order to do this, I ask for the Authors' Catalogues to the Periodical Literature of the last fifty years.

Again, I wish to find a list of the *Titles* of many of the articles which have appeared during the year. Or I may wish to obtain a complete Catalogue of all the Articles on a particular *Subject-Group*—large or small. Or, again, I may wish for a Work of Reference as a clue to the whole of the Periodical Literature issued during the year, or perhaps simply a clue to the particular Literature which happens to exist in the nearest Public Library. And I think it will be conceded that these wishes are not unreasonable. But can they be satisfied?

I will then submit the following propositions, with your permission (substituting the word "you" for "Librarians" for sake of brevity).

**Firstly.**—If you possess no *complete* Catalogue of the contents of Periodical Literature, how are you to obtain a real knowledge of the current Literature of the day?

**Secondly.**—If you do not *yourselves* catalogue the Articles appearing in Periodical Literature, you need someone to catalogue them on your behalf.

**Thirdly.**—If you *do* catalogue such Articles, you are all doing the same work over and over again.

**Fourthly.**—If you *already possess* the Periodicals in your Libraries, it is important that the contents should be made accessible in every reasonable manner.

**Fifthly.**—If you have *not* the Periodicals in your Libraries where men may at least search for themselves, it is of still greater importance that they should be informed of the existence of literature *somewhere*, even if *elsewhere*, so that they may be able to pursue or purchase it.

And I have shown that the same principle applies in other ways, viz., that there should be

(1) Monthly complete catalogues of, and indexes to National Literature,

(2) Monthly selected catalogues of National Literature,

(3) Monthly selected catalogues of Foreign Literature, issued from a central bureau, which all libraries could obtain.

Such catalogues would be trebly useful:

(1) They would prove invaluable as works of Reference for Readers throughout the country.

(2) They would serve as guides to librarians as to what books to purchase.

(3) They would supply slips ready for incorporation in the different kinds of catalogues used in any library.

### The Learned Societies.

As the contributors and publishers of a great mass of valuable literature, and *that* the most difficult to deal with, year by year, the learned societies and institutions constitute a most important factor in the working of a national system of bibliography. Except the State do its work, it can greatly impede the work of the scientific world; and *vice versa* unless the Scientific



Societies—as a body—co-operate with the State, they can in turn impede the work of the State. It is, therefore, of the utmost importance that there should be a clear understanding as to the relative position of one and the other.

I have, however, discussed the subject at some length in Chapter IV., and in the paper which I read before the International Geographical Society in 1895, and it will therefore be unnecessary for me to repeat that information here.

### **Bibliographical Societies.**

Among the factors important in a National System, special mention must be made of Bibliographical Societies. The subject has, however, been fully discussed elsewhere, *i.e.*, Sect. IV., No. 2. It is sufficient to state here that no real progress can be made in the Science of Bibliography, unless in each country there is

**A Society for Ancient Bibliography,**

**A Society for Modern Bibliography,**

and, correspondingly,

**An International Society for Ancient Bibliography,**

**An International Society for Modern Bibliography.**

Nor can progress be made unless both Nationally and Internationally provision be made for the publishing of

(1) **News-Magazines,**

(2) **Article-Magazines,**

as means of communication in which current information and bibliographical studies can be printed.

### **Publishers and Booksellers.**

As is shown elsewhere, Publishers play a most important part in systems of Bibliography, on account of the great powers invested in them to influence or determine the *form* in which works are arranged prior to publication, and the similar power they wield over the Title and Title-page.

The fact also of their being every year the permanent sources of additional collections of works (frequently on special subjects), invests their several Catalogues with a value (varying according to circumstances), as Works of Reference.

And while their Catalogues will naturally be compiled primarily for their own special purposes, according as they are

carried out, so are they of great or lesser value in a system of Bibliography.

As Publishers play their part, so do Booksellers have their functions to perform in Systems of Bibliography.

While they possess no power over the issue of Books, they, in their capacity of Collectors of Books, contribute valuable *Reference Works* concerning the books which pass through their hands. If National Systems of Bibliography had existed and worked better for longer in the past, we should not be so dependent on them. But as it is, not only are they responsible for the issue of many Catalogues, valuable as being Lists of Special Collections of Literature, but such Catalogues frequently abound in interesting and valuable notes, which from the more informal nature of most of such works, can often be much longer and more entertaining than is possible in the Official Catalogues of large Libraries.

On the other hand, it is well to remember, that from a strict bibliographical point of view, their value varies with the accuracy or inaccuracy of the titles, and the completeness or incompleteness of the descriptive details.

### **The influence of the Copyright Laws.**

Among the numerous factors which contribute to a successful system of Bibliography in a State, none are of greater importance than the Law of Copyright,

(1) In regard to the nature of the Publications included under the Law.

(2) In regard to the date of delivery of works after publication.

(1) In reference to the Classes of Works subjected to the provisions of the Copyright Law, it is sufficient to state that there are many instances in the Laws of our smaller Colonies, by which **Newspapers** are exempt from Registration. This is bad. Newspapers should be included.

In other instances, a careful examination of such laws, and a knowledge of local details would probably reveal that there is a considerable amount of Literature which comes generally under the name of "**Annual Reports**," which is exempted from Registration, in spite of the fact that this particular kind of Literature probably illustrates the social and religious progress (or the want of it) in a Colony more than most forms of Literature do.

In some of the Colonies, **General Literature** alone is registered :

in others, a sprinkling of **Official Literature** is admitted. In the case of the Madras Presidency, certain Official Documents (not many) are included in the Quarterly Lists of *General Literature*, as well as in the Official Documents Lists.

All this cuts at the root of *certainty*—that great factor in Bibliography—and is, therefore, to be deplored.

(2) But a yet more important factor is that which refers to the legal period within which a work may be deposited.

As shown in my paper, "The Battle of Bibliography" (Sect. II., No. 2, the Law of America now determines that: "No person shall be entitled to a Copyright unless he shall, . . . *not later than the day of the publication thereof* . . . deliver . . . copies of such Copyright Book, &c."

In this country the law allows a wide margin of time.

The result is that whereas in America they have the possibility of initiating a perfect system of periodical Subject-Catalogues *up to date*, we cannot do so, until the law is altered. This would be no hardship to the publishers, as the issue of Periodical Subject-Catalogues suggested, would serve to advertise the publications considerably.

The above is sufficient to show that Lawyers and Librarians and Publishers should come to a better understanding on the subject.

### **One System of Bibliography for the whole of the British Empire. One System for the World.**

Thus far, the principle of a National System in Bibliography have been enunciated in the abstract.

The purposes of this work are, however, to apply them more closely, viz., that they should lead to the establishment of *one* system for the whole of the British Empire, and, subsequently, to help to facilitate the *Record of* and *Reference to Literature* between all countries.

Except a National System be so constructed as to admit of *international* interpretation, it fails in one of its more important objects.

In other Departments of life, the Nations are seeking to draw nearer to one another, and to assimilate their methods of scientific work. Surely, if such co-operation were ever needed, it is in the Department of Literary Research. Whatever may be the exigencies of Military Politics, it is time that, in *Literary Com-*

munication, all Nations should adopt the same guage. And in view of the present efforts in the Scientific World to find a common basis of operations, and the foundation of the Institut International de Bibliographie at Brussels, there is hope for the future.

I will now only add that the subject of a System of Bibliography for the British Empire is elsewhere discussed; in chapter VII., and in a paper written in the form of a dialogue, *i.e.*, in Sect. III., No. 1; and that the subject of International Bibliography is likewise treated at greater length in chapter IX.

#### **Reform in reference to the Bibliography of Official Literature.**

Although the division of Official Literature is tabulated similarly to that of General Literature, in regard to the existence of *Collected Literature*, it requires, as has already been pointed out, very different treatment in matters of cataloguing. And while Official Literature is capable of the most perfect treatment if the necessary precautions are observed from the very beginning, this class of Literature is notorious in most countries for the manner in which it has defied the Librarian and the student alike. The technical reasons will be subsequently explained, but the radical cause of the general failure to deal with this class of Literature, is that the matter has seldom been taken seriously.

In most countries, the Government Printing Offices have issued the Public Documents in ignorance of the wants of Librarians and students, and oblivious of the fact that there should be close communication and a complete understanding between the two on a subject in which, if the Printing Office erred once, the Library suffered for ever.

In fact, the "Government Printer" should be, if anything, more of a Librarian. This fact has at last been recognised in America, where the office of the "Superintendent of Public Documents" is now treating the matter seriously, and taking measures to publish and subsequently catalogue the Public Documents in a scientific manner, with a view to putting an end to the chaos of the past.

This is what is required so sorely in our Colonies—that the duty of the Government Printing Offices shall henceforth be

interpreted in a more serious matter, viz., that the duties of Government Printer are not completed until he has added to them the functions of Government Publisher and Government Librarian, responsible for the proper issue and cataloguing of Official Documents.

### **Government Aid.**

If there is danger of the principle of "Government Aid" being excessive in the future, there have never been wanting persons to strangle it in the past. Witness the past national stupidities of the world in matters of Agriculture, Forestry, and Education, entailing grievous loss to each State as the result of national ignorance, greatly due to that school of thought which knew not how to discriminate between movements requiring stimulus, and those which could and would progress of themselves.

Few States can be said to have wasted much money in aiding Bibliography, while all States have lost incalculably for the want of a little timely judicious expenditure. It is therefore worth while considering whether Governments have no duties to perform in this direction.

This is all the more urgent if we consider alone the important part that Libraries play in the Education of a country, and the fact, that in future years the influence of the Librarian, for good or ill, will be on a level with that of the Schoolmaster and the Clergyman.

One of the chief purposes of this work is to show how Governments may aid the cause of Literature and Research by assuming their proper responsibilities in the matter.

But there are other needs :

- (1) A system of Education for Librarians.
- (2) The General Encouragement of Bibliographical work.

As to the Education question, it is difficult to discuss, because circumstances vary so in different countries (perhaps, if we knew it, some Foreign Governments do much in both respects).

In reference to America, Mr. Dewey's name is known far and wide for his excellent School of Librarians, and though in this country the conditions differ, we may all learn much from the Americans.

There are two points to be borne in mind :

- (1) The special training of Specialists in National Libraries.
- (2) The training of Librarians for the Free Public Libraries generally.

In regard to the Free Public Libraries, the Library Association has made a special attempt to help the body of Junior Librarians in their efforts to train themselves, and their own efforts in the past year have been highly creditable. But, in spite of this, the inducements to men and women to enter the Library profession are very small, and Librarianship and Bibliography suffer in consequence—and this in spite of masses of work waiting to be undertaken.

A machine is of little use if you have no one to work it. And the more intricate the machine, the greater the need for skilled labour.

It is worth considering whether Governments would not be justified in making grants from the Imperial Treasury towards certain of the Free Public Libraries, in aid of Bibliographical research of a practical nature.

We read in a report of the Department of Agriculture, that in 1892-93, the Government "Grants for Agricultural Education," distributed to 34 colleges, schools, institutions, or societies, in Great Britain amounted to £7,425.

We read further that "Experimental work in its double form *Demonstration* and *Research* has again been encouraged by grants distributed by the Board."

May not Bibliography, the Treasurer of the *Paper-Money* of all the Sciences, claim that some of it may be realised in gold for the very sake of those Sciences? *i.e.*, that grants may be made in aid of Bibliography as well as in aid of other branches of Science and Education?

There is a special reason for Government aiding the work of the local Libraries (so long as they perform their work), in consequence of the Government restriction which renders it impossible for them to raise the rate in order to obtain the funds necessary for the full performance of their duties.

Similarly, in regard to National Libraries, it is a question requiring serious discussion, whether the systematic investigation of the Science of Bibliography (with a view to developing the required record of Literature on proper lines) should not be made a recognised part and more special feature of the work of National Libraries.

With these suggestions, it will be well next to consider the lines of study to be recommended to would-be students of Modern Bibliography.

### Lines of Study.

I have discussed the part that Government plays in aiding the cause of Bibliography. I have stated that it may do much to encourage students to enter the Library Profession, and to remain there. But the student must do his share ; and with the object of helping young librarians who may wish to study the theory of Modern Bibliography, I give the following hurried notes :—

Let him remember, first, that every book and every catalogue illustrates a principle—and often *many* principles of Bibliography. But he must first master the outlines of the principles which they illustrate, and must have clearly in mind the natural divisions and sub-divisions of literature, so that he may be able to pigeon-hole his notes and observations day by day.

He must never be content to know that there is a difficulty without searching for the cause of it and the remedy. He must never rest satisfied with the knowledge that librarians are generally agreed that one policy is better than another ; he must know *why* they are agreed.

In his handling of books and works of reference, he must ever be asking himself silent questions—*What purpose does it claim to fulfil ? How does it accomplish that purpose ? How is it arranged ? How might it be improved ? What is its place among other works ?*

It is this handling of the actual works themselves, this asking of questions, this storing of mental and written notes, this habit of comparing, generalising, specialising, and above all, this refusal to accept traditions without first sifting, sounding, and understanding their meaning—this perpetual aiming at an ideal which is the method of training best calculated to help librarians.

In regard to actual fields of work, there must one day be a certain number of openings to those who will take the trouble to study the principles of cataloguing Official Literature, and there is a vast field of usefulness for those who will study the correlations and ramifications of the various branches of learning, and the principles of classification.

But of all these subjects, none will be of greater interest (in spite of its difficulties) than that of classification.

### The Dewey System.

Any work professing to deal with the subject of National Bibliography would be very deficient unless it contained a very special reference to what is known as the Dewey System of Classification, or to be accurate, the "Decimal Classification and Relative Index." Nevertheless, it is with great hesitation that I approach the subject. Mr. Dewey left such very favourable impressions behind him on the occasion of his last visit to this country, and his career in America has inspired such admiration in England, that one would wish to refer to his scheme of cataloguing, with the full knowledge that one was doing it justice.

Unfortunately, however, the Dewey System is as yet little or imperfectly understood by the majority of librarians in this country. It is a subject which has never been forced upon my own attention (in consequence of the inapplicability of the system to an old library of such vast size as the British Museum), and I have never been able to devote the time necessary to obtain a real grasp of the theory and practice of the system—a system which is extremely hard to follow in its minute details without actual experience.

In consequence of the work of the "Institut International de Bibliographie"—apart from any other reason, it is important that we should break silence on a matter yet so little discussed on this side of the water. But I will only hazard the following remarks on the distinct understanding that they are but observations tending to suggest inquiry and elicit answers on behalf of the Dewey System rather than against it.

In discussing any theory which we do not easily understand, we must first be careful not to assume that a System claims to do more than it does claim, and then attack it on those grounds. With this caution, I think I cannot do better than first point out what the Dewey System claims to fulfil; secondly, what it does not claim to fulfil.

Apart from important advantages regarding the interior economy of a library, the Dewey System claims to be a *permanent* system, which, if due care be exercised, can be carried on, generation after generation, without risk of one librarian upsetting or undoing the work of another.



It is claimed on its behalf that the decimal form of the system combines the greatest perspicuity with the easiest mode of expansion—which seems undoubtedly the case. (To a lazy disposition, it may seem easier to remember the classes by letters of the alphabet rather than by numerals, but this is at the cost of perspicuity.)

It is claimed that it enables a librarian to class a book first and find its minutest group afterwards with absolute certainty.

And how is this accomplished? The works are classed very carefully in numbered Classes, Divisions, Sections and Sub-sections, all arranged in parallel order, with appropriate *Catch-titles*. Then, in a moment of genius it flashed across Mr. Dewey that it would be possible, if the system were logically arranged throughout, to find any specific subject-group or unit by appending an *Index of Matters*. He would supply sign-posts all along the road. And the result seems fully to justify the contentions of the advocates of the system.

So good, thus far. We can (provided we are able to satisfy ourselves as to the exact nature of a work by rules specified below<sup>1</sup>) both class a book, and find its subject-group again with certainty.

But these are not all the wants of a student. In what relationship then does Mr. Dewey's Catalogue stand as regards other Works of Reference? In his own words: "**Any System of Catalogues may be used with this scheme.** But the two essentials of even the simplest system are the *Author* (or preferably

---

**<sup>1</sup> "To find out the subject of a book, consult:—**

(1) The title, since it is generally chosen to show what the book is about. But as many titles are misleading, never class from title alone, but always examine also

(2) Table of contents, which is the best guide to the true subjects. If there is no table of contents, read

(3) Headings of chapters, or marginal topics;

(4) Preface.—Unless already certain, glance through this to catch the author's point of view, and verify impressions gained from title and contents.

(5) Reference Books.—If preceding means fail, consult reliable bibliographies, classed and annotated catalogues, biographical dictionaries, histories of literature, cyclopædias, reviews, &c., for information about the character of the book.

(6) Subject-matter.—If the five shorter methods above fail, examine the subject-matter of the book itself, and, if still in doubt, to avoid mistakes, put aside on an "under consideration" shelf till you can examine more thoroughly, or consult

(7) Specialists.—Experts competent to define their true subject and relation, are usually glad to examine enough to class any new books in their department. Old ones they know where to put already."

Name) Catalogue, and the Shelf-List. The chief use of the system for Catalogues, is for the latter and for the Classed Catalogue on cards."

This then is clear from the author's words elsewhere that "a reader wishing a specific book should go, not to the shelves, but to the Author-and-Title Catalogue, where he can find its place quickest."

We have thus progressed to the point where a reader can find any group or sub-group of works which Mr. Dewey has provided.

"But," cries an objector, "this group does not contain all I want. It only treats the subject from this one aspect, whereas I require it treated from *every* aspect."

"I am studying the history of Religion, and wish to study its influence in connection with General Art, Architecture, Education, Liberty, Painting, and Symbolism."

"Oh, is that all?" replies Mr. Dewey. "Turn to my Relative Index!" and there the reader finds himself directed to other groups, where he will find these aspects of Religion treated of.

"But," says the reader, "what use are these entries to me, scattered about like this? I want them all in one group."

"Well," replies Mr. Dewey, "if it is not already done, you are quite at liberty to make your own Class Catalogue on the lines you indicate. One of the peculiar advantages of my system is that by means of the 'Relative Index' you are enabled to pick up the threads of a subject, and follow it through every other section."

We thus see that the direct value of Mr. Dewey's Classed Catalogue stops *somewhere*, but it enables you to go on, and possibly itself provides the extra Special Catalogues required.

There is, therefore, this advantage about a stereotyped system, that, even if the classification be imperfect, it enables you (provided it is consistently worked out), to place your finger with very great [*? absolute*] certainty on all the factors which are for the moment fulfilling their functions in other Classes and Divisions, etc.

This latter advantage, however, does not appear to be one which is essentially a part of the Dewey System, except where the supply of Supplementary Class-subject Catalogues has been neglected.

For if it be possible, by means of Mr. Dewey's Catalogue, to gather your various factors together, so is it possible for the staff

of a Central Bureau to enumerate, note them, assign them in multiplied duplicate, to their respective classes simultaneously—this being possible if Mr. Dewey's scheme had never existed.

It seems to me, therefore, that the real feature of Mr. Dewey's system lies in its being


1. A Universal Large-Group Subject Catalogue, the several parts of which can be easily traced.

2. That it has thus all the advantages and all the disadvantages of any Classed Catalogue, but that by means of the careful classification and the Relative Index, the chief disadvantages are very greatly lessened, through the possibility of tracing the scattered parts.

3. That its great advantage lies in the fact that where the past has not fulfilled its functions in the compilation of a complete series of Subject Catalogues from every aspect, and where necessities of economy prevent the ready compilation of such lists, that then Mr. Dewey steps in, and says, "It is not quite the same thing—but if you do not mind the trouble of searching from Index to Group and Group to Index, my system will enable you to gather the parts, in spite of the absence of a separate, *compact*, Small-Group Subject Catalogue on the subject.

Mr. Dewey does not pretend to say that his system of classification is absolutely perfect, a contention which no living man can ever put forth. But I imagine, he would say: "It is, on the whole, probably the best devised, is based upon years of practical experience, and has proved itself to be very good for all practical purposes. You can, of course, amend any classification in your several libraries as you please; but you will find that it will cost you more than you bargain for. I, myself, am always improving the Index, and keeping it up to date. You will not, therefore, do badly, if you continue to accept my scheme in its entirety!"

The one question which it occurs to me to ask is this: Apart from the necessary changes in Science—if Scientific Specialists are found years hence to have made very bad mistakes in the past in the classification which we have followed, are such mistakes to be perpetuated; or will they be altered under the Dewey System? And can they be altered without upsetting a large number of other sections? These are the thoughts of the moment, which I give for what they are worth. I will conclude with one remark. I understand that the advocates of the Dewey System at the "Institut Int. de



Bibliographie" make the reasonable request that the different Governments, even if they do not all pledge themselves to adopt the Decimal System should, at least, add the recognised Dewey Bookmark to each title, so that Bibliographers who use the Dewey System, can weave its international web of Literature throughout the world. This would, of course, necessitate the presence at each National Library of, at least, one official conversant with the principles of the Dewey System. But, this would be a matter rather of detail; and, therefore, it would seem that if such a request be made on behalf of a considerable number of Librarians and Bibliographers, it would only be reasonable to try and meet their wishes.

P.S.—There is one point which I am not quite clear about When the advocates of the Dewey System contrast the Dewey form of Catalogue with the "Dictionary" Catalogue (as partly a Specific Subject-Catalogue) do they imply that the Dictionary Catalogue is not required at all? Personally, it seems to me that unless they include, as part of the system in a large Library, a *Specific Subject-Catalogue, in which the titles are entered in full* under the specific subject, such an omission would be a mistake.

#### APPENDIX.

#### Some of the Advantages to be derived from a National System of Bibliography.

The Publication of the following Works of Reference :—

A Periodical (Large-Group) Subject			
Catalogue of Works on	...	...	Subject
Do.	Do.	...	Philosophy.
Do.	Do.	...	Religion.
Do.	Do.	...	Sociology.
Do.	Do.	...	Philology
Do.	Do.	...	Natural Science.
Do.	Do.	...	Useful Arts.
Do.	Do.	...	Fine Arts.
Do.	Do.	...	Literature.
Do.	Do.	...	History.
Do.	Do.	...	Geography.

And, according to the public demand, so would there be an issue of:—

A Periodical (Small-Group) Subject

Catalogue of Works on	...	...	Subject
Do.	Do.	...	Agriculture.
Do.	Do.	...	Archæology.
Do.	Do.	...	Architecture.
Do.	Do.	...	Astronomy.
Do.	Do.	...	Bibliography.
Do.	Do.	...	Biography.
Do.	Do.	...	Biology.
Do.	Do.	...	Botany.
Do.	Do.	...	Chemistry.
Do.	Do.	...	Education.
Do.	Do.	...	Engineering.
Do.	Do.	...	Fiction.
{ Do.	{ Do.	...	{ Geology.
{ Do.	{ Do.	...	{ Palæontology.
Do.	Do.	...	Law.
Do.	Do.	...	Mathematics.
Do.	Do.	...	Medicine.
Do.	Do.	...	Painting and Sculpture
Do.	Do.	...	Physics.
Do.	Do.	...	Poetry and the Drama
Do.	Do.	...	Trade.
Do.	Do.	...	Zoology.
<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	

## CHAPTER IX.

**The Theory of International Bibliography.**


---

Common needs, common methods.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

International Bibliography, as an idea, originates, at least, from 1850.  
 The *Athenæum* of 1850.  
 General Object of International Bibliography.  
 Each Country should record its own Literature.  
 Each Government should record its own Literature.  
 The Evil continues unabated.  
 The Remedy (Government Registration of Literature).  
 Table showing Natural Divisions and Sub-Divisions of Literature.  
 Table showing Lists of Works of Reference proper.  
 Territorial Catalogues.  
 Illustrations of International Literary Contributions.  
 Catalogues of Selected Literature.  
 Official Literature.  
 International Archives.  
 International Bibliographical Societies.  
 International Book-Exchange Agencies.  
 International Exchange of Official Documents.  
 Some advantages to be derived from a System of International Bibliography.  
 Conclusion.

---

**International Bibliography.**

A great deal has been written in recent years relative to the subject of International Copyright, but, in comparison, very little has been heard of International Bibliography, and yet it is no new subject. As long ago as the year 1850, the *Athenæum* showed

that it fully grasped, not only the value, but the feasibility—nay the fundamental principle of the subject (Co-operation of *Governments*), although it was naturally not in a position to discuss the details.

The following are the words alluded to, when in connection with Mr. Cooley's suggestions as to the possibilities of stereotyping titles, the *Athenæum* stated its opinion that "communication should be opened with the principal *Governments* of the world, and a proposal made to each of them to co-operate<sup>1</sup> with the British Nation in publishing a Universal Catalogue;—that each should undertake to have prepared, and within a specified time, on a common principle to be agreed on, a Catalogue of all the books ever printed, so far as known, by and in all the several nations and languages under their respective Governments. How we should then proceed, at least cost of time or money, to derive the full benefit from this co-operation, is a matter of detail with which we need not perplex the question. Perhaps the best plan would be, if means can be devised to avoid the fruitless re-duplication of Titles, that *each Government should print its own Catalogue*, and each exchange with the others, stereotyped titles."

The above words contain the whole germ of the subject. Nevertheless, in spite of the simple logic of the statement, we are yet, little nearer the goal, although the last two years have witnessed a movement in the right direction. The evils which existed in 1850 continue yet unabated, for, whereas the several nations freely exchanged their *Publications*, they neglect to exchange the *Titles* of their Publications in such a way that they are of any real use.

Instead of sending due notes of literary records by *Post*, a thousand emissaries have to take *steamer and train* to hunt them down in Libraries.

Instead of information being supplied in the right form, it is tendered in the wrong form.

Instead of supplying records of literature up to date, they are

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare lack of International Co-operation (in another sphere) as depicted in 1880 by Admiral Ryder, who, writing from Admiralty House, Portsmouth, to the Royal Geographical Society, asked:—(a) *When will the surveys of marine dangers be completed, on such a scale and with such accuracy that nothing will be left to be desired on the part of navigators?* (b) *By what law is the rate of progression of this world-wide survey proceeding now? The result of my inquiries is that although various countries exchange their surveys there is no concerted action between the Hydrographical Departments of the different countries interested in the matter, as to the prompt distribution of the work remaining to be done.*

often supplied, if at all, at an hour when they are already superseded by fresh records, and when their interest has already begun to wane.

An appalling amount of *Time* and *Money* is wasted in all countries in performing badly a hundred times over that which might have been done once well. And in the cases where duplicated work is of a high order, as in the case of the two recently issued Geographical Bibliographies in Germany and France, the cause for regret is even greater.<sup>1</sup>

But, let us learn our lesson; the project of the *Athenæum* hung fire and dropped, just for want of that very discussion of details which should fix the subject firmly in the public mind, and explain the difficulties, as well as show the advantages of the scheme. It is hard to move men's minds until they understand the "why and wherefore" of a subject. They are willing enough to engage on any reasonable enterprise if they only know clearly what it entails and how to set about it.

How, then, are we to commence?

The answer is simple:

The literature of the world consists of the literature of a given number of geographical and political tracts. For all practical purposes the greater number of these tracts are clearly and permanently defined.

It requires no argument to prove that the literature of each year consists of the putting together of the literature of all such tracts.

But there is one condition, that each country must record its own literature separately. Except in very rare cases, no one country can undertake to record the literature of another country, for it has neither opportunity, means, nor incentive to do so, and the *Athenæum* was never more right than when it said that "each Government should [compile and] print its own Catalogue[s]."

But now comes the difficulty. How is that record to be effected? And yet I trust that I have shown, in the previous chapter, that there is no real difficulty. The natural divisions and sub-divisions of literature are the same all the world over.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Bibliotheca Geographica*. . . Bearbeitet von Otto Baschin unter Mitwirkung von Dr. E. Wagner." Bd. I. . . 1891 u. 1892. Berlin, 1895. "Bibliographie de l'Année," 1894, pp. 294. (Published by the "Annales de Géographie," Paris, 1895, 8vo. The former contains some 14,000 entries, the latter 1,590 entries)



International Bibliography, therefore, is nearly an accomplished fact, if each nation will fulfil its responsibilities and co-operate by recording literature in accordance with those natural divisions and sub-divisions which have already been illustrated in the previous chapter.

This, however, is the least difficulty, for, in the abstract, most civilised nations do somehow or somewhere recognize their existence.

It is when we discuss the nature of Works of Reference that national differences will more naturally occur; and yet, on this head also, there are no real grounds for difference. Are not our wants the same all the world over? To-day we wish to be able to find a work under its *author's* name, to-morrow under its *title*; one moment we wish to find what works exist, or have recently appeared under a *large Subject-group*, such as *Natural Science*; another moment we are content to know what has appeared under a *smaller Subject-group*, such as *Zoology*; the next we only wish to read ornithological works written on the *Nightingale* (*Specific Subject*). In the above instances we have required Catalogues with *full* titles. But some of us wish for Catalogues with *Abbreviated* titles. What is easier than to strike out a few lines and words in the Full-Title Catalogues, and print abbreviated Catalogues also. Some of us also prefer *Abbreviated Specific-Subject Catalogues*, which have special advantages of their own; and thus we require "Indexes of Matters." Some of us require Catalogues of and Indexes to *Selected Literature*. Some wish for Catalogues of the literature *issued* in a certain country; others require similar works of all the literature *relating to* a particular country. And these are *natural needs* which are the same all over the world.

Why, then, shall we not agree together to supply them by means of one common system? Without more argument, therefore, on this head, I will refer the reader to the following table, showing the Natural Divisions and Sub-divisions of Literature, together with a list of those Works of Reference proper which are vital to all research, and on which all other forms of Works of Reference are based.

TABLE SHOWING NATURAL DIVISIONS AND SUB-DIVISIONS OF LITERATURE, AS DETERMINED BY *SOURCE* AND *FORM* OF PUBLICATION.

DIVISION I.	DIVISION II.
GENERAL LITERATURE.	OFFICIAL LITERATURE.
<i>Sub-Divisions.</i>	<i>Sub-Divisions.</i>
1. <b>Separate Works.</b>	1. <b>Separate Works.</b>
2. <b>Works of Reference.</b>	2. <b>Works of Reference.</b>
3. <b>Ordinary "Collected Works" (essays, etc.).</b>	3. <b>Ordinary "Collected Works."</b>
4. <b>Works of learned societies (chiefly "collected").</b>	4. <b>Works of State Institutions.</b>
5. <b>Magazines and Reviews.</b>	5. <b>Magazines and Reviews.</b>
<i>Collected Works.</i>	<i>Collected Works.</i>

TABLE SHOWING THE KINDS OF SCIENTIFIC WORKS OF REFERENCE REQUIRED.

In order to refer to the Title-Units contained in the above divisions and sub-divisions, the following primary Works of Reference are required. All other forms of Catalogues and Indexes are combinations of these.

DIVISION I.	DIVISION II.
GENERAL LITERATURE.	OFFICIAL LITERATURE.
1. <b>Authors' Catalogues.</b>	1. <b>Authors' Catalogues.</b>
2. <b>Title Catalogues.</b>	2. <b>Title Catalogues.</b>
3. <b>Large-Group Catalogues.</b>	3. <b>Large-Group Catalogues.</b>
4. <b>Small-Group Catalogues.</b>	4. <b>Small-Group Catalogues.</b>
5. <b>Specific Subject Catalogues</b>	5. <b>Specific Subject Catalogues</b>
6. <b>Subject Indexes (Indexes of Matters).</b>	6. <b>Subject Indexes (Indexes of Matters).</b>
<i>Subject Catalogues.</i>	<i>Subject Catalogues.</i>

The above Works of Reference refer to the Literature ISSUED IN a particular area.

There is, however, another form of Reference-Work which, while apparently a "Subject-Catalogue," is so in so special and unique a sense as to render it necessary to place it by itself, viz., that which contains recorded Literature RELATING TO a particular area.

## A TERRITORIAL CATALOGUE.

It is manifest that such a work may be subjected to *all* of the above six processes, but experience will show that this is not necessary.

**Table showing Series of Universal Large-Group Subject-Catalogues to be obtained by (i.) putting together the several Sections of each Country, or by (ii.) making a Selection from such Class-Catalogues.**

	AMERICA.	FRANCE.	GERMANY.	G.B. & I.
000 General Works ..	G.W.	G.W.	G.W.	G.W.
100 Philosophy .. ..	P.	P.	P.	P.
200 Religion .. ..	R.	R.	R.	R.
300 Sociology .. ..	S.	S.	S.	S.
400 Philology .. ..	P.	P.	P.	P.
500 Natural Science ..	N.S.	N.S.	N.S.	N.S.
600 Useful Arts .. ..	U.A.	U.A.	U.A.	U.A.
700 Fine Arts .. ..	F.A.	F.A.	F.A.	F.A.
800 Literature .. ..	L.	L.	L.	L.
900 History .. ..	H.	H.	H.	H.

For purposes of illustration, the Dewey classification has been used.

**Territorial Catalogues.**

But, so far (except in the Table), reference has only been made to Literature generally, as if it only related to abstract subjects and ideas. But there is another important element to consider, for Literature has also a peculiar geographical or territorial connection—that is to say, it relates mainly to *subjects*, in so far as *subjects* are themselves connected with particular areas of the globe. Thus, while at times students wish to study *subject* independently of territory, they at other times wish to study subject subordinate to a related Territory. From this aspect, therefore, Works of Reference fall into two classes:—

- (i.) Those in which Territory is subordinate to subject.
- (ii.) Those in which subject is subordinate to Territory.
  - (a) Particular areas.
  - (b) The whole world (in which cases i. and ii. meet).

Properly speaking, this analysis should appear only under the chapter, "Works of Reference"; but it is necessary to refer to it at length here, because disorder in Literature is more clearly illustrated from its Territorial aspect than it is from its subject aspect; and, with the endeavour of impressing the importance of International co-operation on my readers, I here take an instance of a Territorial Catalogue (not existing) in order to show how great is the loss resulting from want of an International system of Bibliographical Record.

I take the instance of India.<sup>1</sup> Now, if the reader wishes to study the history of Indian Archæology, or the Religions of India, or the Geology, Botany, or Zoology of India, and wishes to find Lists of all the works on any of these subjects, where will he search? Will he ask for Special Bibliographies relating to these subjects? No; his impulse would be to ask for the "Indian Catalogue," if such a thing existed—*i.e.*, a Territorial Subject-Catalogue, or Authors' Catalogue, with Subject-Index, in which he would be sure of finding an entry of every single work on these subjects.

And this is a natural impulse. It is much easier to find works relating to a country under that country, than to search for it in a Universal Subject-Bibliography; and what is important, the process of incorporating titles under countries is much easier than the reverse way of subordinating countries to subject. And, in any event, the International Subject-Catalogue is the putting together of the several National Subject-Catalogues, which is an additional reason for the natural law that the Territorial Catalogue is one which should always be permanently in preparation.

But how is this Territorial Catalogue to be compiled? Obviously, by a complete system of International Exchange. "*I will give you my entries relating to you; you will give me yours relating to me.*"

If we only reflect, it is evident that the Literature relating to the Life-History of India is not complete except by the collection and addition of separate titles of works which have appeared in the

---

<sup>1</sup> I may mention here, as a curious fact, that it is in a *German* bookseller's second-hand catalogue, "Bibliotheca Indica" (Joseph Baer & Co., Frankfurt), that I find the largest individual collection of Indian Official Documents that I have met with in any second-hand Bookseller's catalogue; and it was solely owing to an advertisement in an *American* journal that my attention was drawn to the work!

Works of Reference (Encyclopædias, &c.),  
 Collected Works,  
 Learned Society Publications,  
 Magazines and Reviews

of every civilised country in the world. What a view of International *Exchange of Titles* this opens up! And, remember, that this is no mere visionary ideal. The life-history of India is not complete without it. For, consider, there is not a civilised nation anywhere which has not carried away from India valuable collections — Zoological, Botanical, Geological, Mineralogical, Ornithological, Ethnological, collections of books and manuscripts of Fine Art Collections of every sort—to their public and private museums and libraries; thus removing many of the most valuable factors in the study of Indian History to distant climes, and writing about them a literature which appears everywhere but in *India*! Here is an upsetting of all law, logic, and order, such that you cannot study the history of any oriental country without taking a journey round the earth, and then you will be baffled!

All this then points a moral—a law—and one which we must enunciate before we can clearly counteract the ill results of any violation of it.

The history of a country must be studied mainly on the spot. If the materials for that history are dispersed, and cannot be recovered—at least the existence of all records, based upon the transported materials, may be, and should be, duly advertised in connection with the country to which they relate.

Bibliographically, as already noticed, this international record is represented by the following table:—

INTERNATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHICAL EXCHANGE.	
INDIA.	ANY OTHER COUNTRY.
1896. PERIODICAL REGISTERS.	1896. PERIODICAL REGISTERS.
1896. LIST OF WORKS RELATING TO OTHER COUNTRIES.	1896. LIST OF WORKS RELATING TO INDIA.

The following are a few instances, showing how Literature relating to India is dispersed elsewhere, and thus, under existing circumstances, very difficult to trace.<sup>1</sup>

The following are other instances showing the need for a proper system of **International Exchange of Titles**, in order to render possible the **Compilation of Territorial Catalogues**.

These are stray instances taken from rapid notes, but they are here specially entered in order to impress the subject clearly on the mind.

**America to Australasia.** *U. S. Dept. of Agriculture.*

Studies of Parasitic and Predaceous Insects in New Zealand, Australia, and adjacent Islands. Made by A. Koebele, of the U.S. Dept. of Agriculture, &c. (*Washington*, 1893, 8°).

**America to England.**

Radcliffe College Monographs, No. 6. A Classified List of Printed Original Materials for English Manorial and Agrarian History during the Middle Ages. By F. G. Davenport, under the direction of W. J. Ashley. (*Boston*, U.S.A., 1894, 8°).

**America to the Hawaiian Islands.**

Notes on a Third Collection of Birds made in Kanai, Hawaiian Islands, by Valdemar Knudsen. By L. Stejneger. (*Proc. U.S. Nat. Museum*, Vol. 12, 1889).

**America to Japan.**

"Japanese Wood-Cutting and Wood-Cut Printing . . . by T. Tokuno . . . Edited . . . by S. R. Koehler." (*U.S. Nat. Mus., Kep.*, '91-'92).

**Cape Colony to Greece.**

"Forensic Oratory at Athens." (*The Cape Law Journal*).

**Chili to Europe.**

Memoria presentada al Ministerio de Instruccion Publica sobre los Establecimientos de Proteccion a la infancia en Europa por el Dr. Maximo. Latorre, pp. 255. (*Santiago*, 1886, 12°).

**England to British Guiana.**

The Laws of British Guiana. A new and revised edition. 5 Vols. (*Oxford*, 1895).

**England to Germany.**

"Die Geschichte der Deutschen in England," by Dr. Schaible.  
"Die Geschichte der Deutschen Evangelischen Kirchen in England," by Dr. K. Schöll.

**England to Hungary.**

Report on Horse Breeding in Hungary, 1894, by Lieut.-Col. D. Dawson. Intell. Div., War Office, 1895. (1895 fol.).

---

<sup>1</sup> Omitted for want of time.

**England to Italy, *via* America.**

"Elizabethan Translations (160) from the Italian: the Titles of such works . . . collected . . . by M. A. Scott." (Baltimore, 1895. 8°).

**England to St. Lucia.**

Laws at present in force in the Island of St. Lucia. *Printed by W. Clowes and Sons.* (London. 1853. 8°).

**England to Western Australia.**

The Aborigines of Western Australia. By A. F. Calvert. (London, 1894. 12°).

**France to Ceylon.**

Mollusques recueillis à Ceylan, par M. E. Simon, et revision générale des espèces terrestres et fluviolacustres de cette Ile, par le Dr. F. Jousseaume, Ancien Président de la Société [Zoologique de France]. (*Memoires de la Société Zoologique de France*, for 94, To. 7.) 1894. 8°.

**France to Turkey.**

Documents sur l'Imprimerie à Constantinople au xviii<sup>e</sup> Siècle publiés, par H. Omont. (Paris, 1895. 8°).

Shall we find this registered under Turkey? *No*—and yet a Catalogue of works relating exclusively to Turkey is the most natural place in which to make first search for it.

**Germany to Abyssinia.**

In the "Abhandlungen der K. Akademie der Wissenschaften zur Berlin . . . 1893," we find (pp. 33-34) the following title: "Abyssinische Pflanzennamen. Eine alphabetische Aufzählung . . . Von Prof. Dr. G. Schweinfurth."

Now here is an interesting work; and the questions which naturally occur to us are:—

"Is there an Annual Catalogue of works issued in Abyssinia?"

"Is there an Annual Catalogue of *extra*-Abyssinia works relating to that country?"

"What means exist for the transference of this title to that Catalogue?"

**Germany to America and Asia.**

"Die Begräbnissarten der Amerikaner und Nordostasiaten. . . Von T. Prouss." (*Issued as a Dissertation at the Königsberg University*).

**German Contributions to English Literature.**

Höhere Bürgerschule zu Hamburg. Ostern, 1889-Ostern, 1890.

1. A Few Steps to a complete Dictionary of English Dialects. By J. H. Blascke. pp. viii. 43. (Hamburg, 1890).

**Germany to England.**

William Pitt (Chatham) und Graf Butte. Ein Beitrag zur inneren Geschichte Englands unter Georg. III. Von A. von Ruville. pp. 119. (Berlin, 1895. 8°).

**Germany and France to America.**

The Annual Report of the American Historical Association for the Year 1893, contains an Article xxviii., what is doubtless a work of value—Contributions toward a Bibliography of American History, 1888—1892, adapted from Reports to the Jahresbericht der Geschichts-Wissenschaft, of Berlin.<sup>1</sup> By J. M. Vincent, Ph.D., of John Hopkins University (pp., 501-572.)

Now here is an interesting example of the perversity of human nature (in this particular instance, ultimately atoned for.) Why was it that America only obtained this Bibliography third-hand, it having been primarily compiled for the benefit of France and Germany?

In the natural course of events, the actual methods should have been reversed. The Bibliography should have been first compiled for America, and *in* America, and *then* France and Germany might have borrowed the whole, or selections from it.

**Persia to Ireland, *via* India.**

The Irish Story of Cucullin and Conloch; and the Persian Story of Rustam and Sohrâb. By Jivanji Jamshedji Modi, Esq., B.A. [Comparing an episode in a Persian Epic with that in an Irish Epic.] *Journ. By. Br. Roy. Asiatic Soc.*, 1894.

**Queensland to Victoria.**

Annual Report on British New Guinea. (Queensl. Sess. Paper).

**Russia to Siberia.**

"Faune Ornithologique de la Sibérie Orientale." (*Issued as part of the Mémoires de l'Académie Impériale des Sciences de St. Petersbourg, vii. Serie.*)

**Spain to America.**

Bibliografía Espanola de Lenguas Indigenas de America, por el Conde de la Vinaza. (*Madrid*, 1892).

**Sweden to the New Hebrides.**

On a Collection of Birds from Tongoa, New Hebrides. By R. Collett. (*Christiania Videnskabs—Selskabs Forhandling*, 1892. No. 18. *Christiania*, 1892, 8°).

It is stated that several Lists of Birds have been published in the course of the years on the same subject by different observers.

**Victoria to New Guinea.**

Annual Report on British New Guinea. (Vict. Sess. Paper).

**Catalogues of Selected Literature.**

From the enormous extent of the annual accessions to the Literature of the world, even one annual indiscriminate incorporation

---

<sup>1</sup> And to the "Revue Historique" (Paris).



of the whole would be a very large undertaking; while the incorporation of the Literature of any number of years would be a gigantic work.

International Bibliography will, therefore, busy itself more with complete Catalogues on Special Subject-Groups, and with the compilation of Territorial Catalogues, *based upon Complete National Catalogues*. But Universal General Literature should be represented every year by one Universal Catalogue of *Selected Literature*, based upon Selected Catalogues to be issued by every Government.

Instances of Catalogues of Selected Universal Literature do exist, and are appreciated. But there is need also for the undertaking of the compilation of Selected Literature Catalogues by Governments on *one* system more complete.

#### Official Literature.

The foregoing remarks have been made chiefly in reference to General Literature.

It is only necessary to say that the difficulties which affect the record of General Literature scarcely affect Official Literature in any appreciable degree. The difficulties experienced with official documents are peculiar to themselves, and more entirely of man's own wilful or careless creation than from any other cause. For this reason they have been treated of in a separate chapter, and it requires but little thought to give an International application to that which has already been advanced.

#### International Archives.

In connection with the registration of Printed Literature, it is instructive to note how dependent one nation is for the record of its history on the unprinted Archives of other nations, and therefore how necessary it is that each nation should, following the example of our own Record Office, not only prepare Reference Lists to the Archives, but reprint the more important documents where possible and convenient. In our own Colonial Empire, the Archives of India and Canada have attracted the greatest attention, and New South Wales is now paying special attention to the subject. In America also, the subject of State Archives has received more attention in late years. But the special object of this paragraph is the International aspect—to show that State Archives are not only a *National* but also an *International* heritage, and one which each nation owes it to the other to make as accessible as possible to the historian.

The following extract from Ewald's "Our Public Records" (1873), p. 121, gives some idea of the riches of the Archives stored at the Record Office:—

#### Foreign Office.<sup>1</sup>

"These Documents consist of letters and papers relating to Algiers, Denmark, Flanders, France, Germany, German States, Genoa, Holland, Italian States, Malta, Hamburgh, Poland, Portugal, Prussia, Russia, Savoy, Sardinia, Scotland, Sicily and Naples, Tuscany, Spain, Sweden, Turkey, and Venice. The papers begin in 1509, and, in many instances, continue in an unbroken succession to 1810. Among the Foreign Office Documents is also the valuable collection of Treaty Papers."

#### Colonial Office.<sup>2</sup>

"The documents of the Colonial Office, as one may easily suppose, consist of Letters and Papers relating to our various Colonies. They run from Elizabeth to 1849."

The wealth of the Spanish Archives is referred to by Prescott, when, in his preface to his "Conquest of Peru," he says:—

"And when I sent to Spain to collect materials for an account of the conquest of Mexico, I included in my researches those relating to the conquest of Peru. The larger part of the documents, in both cases, was obtained from the same great repository—the Archives of the Royal Academy of History at Madrid; a body specially intrusted with the preservation of whatever may serve to illustrate the Spanish Colonial Annals."

"List of Titles of Documents relating to America contained in volumes i.—cx. of the Coleccion de Documentos Inéditos para la Historia Española. Compiled by G. P. Winship," &c., is the title of a small work issued at Cambridge, Mass., in November, 1894.

This is the results of a wearied and only partial search among the Archives of Spain.

The value of **English and Portuguese Records**, from an Indo-European point of view, was referred to in the *Times* of October 5, 1891:—

"From a telegram recently published in the *Times*, it appears that the Lisbon Press heartily welcomes the project of investigating the early records of Portuguese enterprise in India. With a new Indian treaty on the *tapis* between the British and Portuguese authorities, it is fortunate that our relations should, in this side-department of Eastern diplomacy, start free from

<sup>1</sup> Open to 1760.

<sup>2</sup> Open to 1760, except the North America Correspondence, which is only open to 1702.

the jealousies which embitter Anglo-Portuguese questions in Africa. The India Office has done a graceful act in recognising the value of the early Portuguese archives to European historical research. Its representative, Mr. Frederick Danvers, proceeds shortly on a mission to inquire into and classify the records of what is justly considered as the proudest period of Portuguese achievement beyond the seas. Mr. Danvers has already rendered important service by his labours among the seventeenth century documents in the India Office, and his present mission will, it is hoped, throw important light on Indo-European enterprise during the preceding two hundred years.

"The deputation of Mr. Danvers to Lisbon forms part of a well-considered scheme for rendering the records of Indo-European, and particularly of Anglo-Indian, history more available to the public. The geographical circumstance, that Indian writers and historical students are distributed over India as well as Europe, places them under peculiar difficulties. The original records in the India Office can never be practically accessible to English and native men of letters in India. No amount of calendaring or indexing will accomplish this, unless supplemented by a systematic series of selections of papers printed in extracts or in full, and illustrating the historical questions which arose in each period. But, meanwhile, it is right to acknowledge that the India office has awakened to its responsibilities, and, by a new and most welcome activity in cataloguing and binding up its earlier records, is performing the preliminary work without which any series of selections of papers must be imperfect.

"It is exactly sixty-one years ago since the authorities of the old India House gave orders to classify, bind, and catalogue the "Original Correspondence from India," with collateral documents originating at any place or settlement between India and Japan. Seventy-two volumes, containing about 8,500 important documents extending from 1603 to 1708, were thus preserved for the use of the historical student. Then followed a period of carelessness, and subsequently of destructiveness, culminating in the sale of cart-loads of the India House records as waste paper. The reaction against this illiberal apathy was gallantly led by Sir George Birdwood about thirteen years ago. His careful and scholarly report on the older documents in the India Office (1879) compelled attention to the priceless materials for the history of British enterprise beyond the seas which the Secretary of State holds in trust for the nation. Mr. Sainsbury, of the Public Record Office, also rendered important services,—&c."

And more recently, no sooner does a cloud rise in Venezuela, than the Archives and Collections in London, the Hague, Madrid, the Vatican, Washington, and Canada are all in request.

Motley, after exhaustive researches among the "Documents and Archives in Holland, Belgium, and Germany," wrote to Dr. Holmes in 1853: "Nobody can say that I have not worked hard like a brute beast." But, though Motley was content, this is just what should not be. Men don't plough with race-horses. The time of National Historians is too valuable for us to allow them to waste their health and intellect in searching for that which should be laid at their door. Of course, the *ultimate* researches which they have to make are heavy enough; it is all the more

necessary, therefore, that the coarse preliminary work should be spared them by proper systems of arrangement, and by printed selections of the Archives themselves.

### **International Bibliographical Societies.**

The Science of Bibliography is intricate enough in regard to one country alone; how much more so when many countries are in question. For this reason, in a Memorandum relative to . . . Bibliographical Societies (1894), I urged their establishment<sup>1</sup> in every country, in order to promote that scientific study of the subject which alone can dispel our differences, and lessen our difficulties.

Now that the "Institut International de Bibliographie" has been instituted at Brussels, my wish has been realised so far as regards the institution of a Society International. What I would like to see now is that the Institut International should form itself into definite sections corresponding to the Natural Division and Sub-Divisions of Literature, and thus encourage the formation of allied Sectional Societies throughout the world.

### **International Agencies for the Exchange and Transmission of Books.**

This subject, though not strictly a matter of Bibliography, has an important influence in helping to complete the collections of various Libraries, thus helping also to perfect their Catalogues. I have referred shortly to the matter in the Chapter on International Exchange.

### **International Exchange of Official Documents.**

This, again, while primarily a matter of Library Economy, has a most important connection with Bibliography, and is therefore specially noticed in a separate chapter.

### **Conclusion.**

In conclusion, a perusal of the foregoing remarks will show that International Bibliography has for its object the promotion

<sup>1</sup> (a) A Society for the establishment of Compulsory Book-Registration; (b) A Society for the investigation of Subject-Classification, and the work of compiling Periodical Special Bibliographies. (c) A Society to investigate the Bibliography of Periodical Literature. (d) An Index Society. (e) An International Bibliographical Society. (f) An Official State Papers Bibliographical Society. (g) A Local and Municipal Official Literature Society.

of rational uniformity in methods of recording National Literature, so that any individual nation may be able to obtain the whole or separate sectional parts of the Literary Records of any other State, based upon a common intelligible system; and that each State may be able, without difficulty, to obtain exact records of the Literature on any *subject* issued throughout the whole world, independently of geographical or political divisions.

And the only way to accomplish this is for each State to agree :

- (1) To Record its Literature *completely* year by year ;
- (2) To Record it according to its *Natural Divisions and Subdivisions* ;
- (3) To use the full Title of a work as the *unit and movable factor* on which all subsequent work depends.

#### **Some advantages to be derived from a system of International Bibliography.**

Some of the advantages to be derived from a system of International Bibliography will be seen by a glance at the APPENDIX to the chapter on *National Bibliography*, viz., the issue of **Periodical Subject-Catalogues**, such as are there enumerated, with the advantageous difference that, while in the one case the Catalogues relate to individual countries and are complete, in the present case the Catalogues would apply to the whole world, complete or selected as desired.

#### **Other Government Libraries.**

Sometimes the need of National Libraries of Official Documents has been disputed. It is said "What is the use of having Official Documents in a National Library when they already exist in the Libraries of the several Government Offices? To supply them to the National Libraries is to have a duplicate collection in the country, and this is unnecessary." Such is the argument repeated. It is, however, *not* a very strong argument. The Libraries of Government Offices are not "Public" Libraries—They have not accommodation for a number of students; they have neither the staff nor the time to attend to the public at large, and would be the first to resent an inroad on the part of the public. And, on the other hand, the public would not be able to ask for the documents they required, except as a favour. Moreover, Government offices have not unlimited space for the storing

of documents, and will, therefore, always be, in this respect, alone, very dependent on National Libraries for the preservation of much Official Literature.

Finally, one of the chief objects of a National Library is to be the *centre* of research, thus freeing the Government offices from the necessity of distributing their documents to an excessive number of small Libraries (where their presence might not be appreciated proportionate to their cost), and also freeing the several Government offices from the numerous general enquiries which would otherwise hamper their work. And, moreover, it is everything to have the Official Documents Library adjacent, or rather actually part of a National Library for all Literature.

#### **Distribution of Official Documents.**

The Distribution of Public Documents does not properly fall under the heading of Bibliography. Nevertheless, in dealing with the subject of Official Documents, it is worth while remarking that the Distribution among Free Public Libraries of Catalogues of Official Documents is not of much use, unless the documents, or at least a certain number of them are to be obtained at the Libraries. It is natural to exact that a Library shall be of a certain size and standing before it be specially favoured in the supply of Public Documents. But it is at all times worth considering whether Public Documents are not put out to better interest, exposed to light and use, in a Public Library, rather than buried in the darkness of Government vaults.

---

## CHAPTER X.

### The Functions of a National Bureau for the Record of National Literature.

It is strange that writers on the subject of Imperial Federation and Unity have so completely overlooked the influence of the *Record of Literature*, in its effect on what Prof. Seely has designated as "*incomparably the greatest question which we can discuss.*" But it is stranger that men should so long have overlooked the wider influence of the subject, inasmuch as it affects not only the unity of the British Empire, but the unity of the world.

In the last few years, however, there has been an awakening in the matter, of which the approaching International Conference, convened by the Royal Society, is a chief instance.

The question has, however, been approached of late almost exclusively from its *purely scientific* side; and it is, therefore, important that it should be regarded also in its general aspects.

In 1893, I alluded to the subject in a paper (*vide* Sect. II., No. 2), called the "Battle of Bibliography"; and Mr. Tedder, of the Athenæum Library, also read a paper, substantially expressing the same views on the same subject.

**The one simple object in view is to obtain a Complete Periodical Record, in a convenient form, of the Literature of a country, throughout the year.** This Record is to supply the foundation of all future Bibliographical work, and must, therefore, be carried out on the very strictest Bibliographical principles, in such a manner that the collection of **Title-units** remain for ever the common property of all students, to play with and arrange as they may wish.

If such a Record is to be absolutely complete, it can only be made from a personal examination of a complete collection of a Nation's Literature.

Complete Collections are found only at the National Libraries—certainly nowhere else—and, therefore, the Record of Literature—to be worthy of the epithet—must be carried out, where possible, in connection with the National Libraries, *i.e.*, in the National Libraries.

But there is one factor essential to success.

Apart from the question of Privately-Printed Literature :—

**Works to be copyrighted must be delivered at the National Libraries on the day of publication.**

Given this precautionary measure, and the task of recording the Literature of a Country is merely a matter of detail. The necessary factors are there safe, *viz.*, the Titles of the Works complete. Without these nothing can be done. All discussion relative to different forms of different Catalogues, which have taken place since time immemorial, are comparatively useless, unless you have complete Title-Lists of the works you propose to catalogue.

Assume then that this is the case—that you have a complete Collection of Works brought in immediately on issue, how are you to deal with them ?

This question has been answered in several parts of this work. They must be registered according to the Natural Divisions and Sub-Divisions of Literature, and afterwards incorporated together in Authors'-, Title-, and Subject-Catalogues and Indexes of Matters. But the one point which I wish to urge strongly is that each Book must pass through what may be called the

#### **Record Stage.**

That is, the entry for each Work of Reference shall be made on one and the same examination of the work. When once this is done, and properly carried out, *unnecessary Queries*—the curse of every library—will be a thing of the past, in regard to *Modern Literature*.

Such a Bureau sums up the work which is explained, in great detail, throughout these pages.

It would, in all probability, be arranged in sections *touching one another*, such as I enumerated in my Belfast paper, in 1894, *i.e.* :

- (a) Registration Branch.
- (b) Special Bibliographies Branch.
- (c) Periodical Literature Branch.
- (d) Indexing Branch.
- (e) International Bibliographical Branch.
- (f) State-Papers Branch.
- (g) Provincial and Municipal Official Literature Branch.

It will be unnecessary to refer to it further than to say that—*Authors, Publishers, and Booksellers* should welcome such a measure, because it would help to advertise the sale of their Books.



*Students* should welcome it, on account of the increased facilities for research which it will afford.

*Librarians* should welcome it, because it will relieve them of unnecessary expenditure of time in answering unanswerable Queries.

*Statesmen* should welcome it, because it will facilitate the investigation and the solution of the many social problems which affect the welfare of humanity.

As to the connection between such a Bureau and other Bureaus of like nature, which may or might exist on a modified scale, for *Selected Literature*, or in reference to *particular Classes of Literature*, it is only necessary to say that National Bureaus would form the natural foundation on which all other Bureaus would build their work.

#### APPENDIX.

### The Relationship of Works of Reference Explained and Illustrated.

In the Chapter on International Bibliography, I have endeavoured to exhibit the extent of the intermingling of literature. It is necessary to emphasize this fact as much as possible before the mind will fully grasp the need of a Central Bureau for the Record of National Literature—a National *Clearing House*, such as Mr. Henry Stevens had in mind in 1877.

The fact that the wonderful "Index-Catalogue" of the Library of the Surgeon-General's Office, U.S. Army, necessitated the discovery and cataloguing of 511,112 journal articles, should be some proof in the matter. How were those articles discovered? By doing, *years after*, what a Government Bureau should have done *year by year* before—and at the cost of their **going after the Books, instead of the Books coming to them.**

I will take a simple imaginary case of an extreme type. Suppose that six men write six works as follows:—

*C. Cole*—Missionary Work among the Greenlanders.

*S. Smith*—African Diamonds.

*J. Jones*—The Wild Camel in Spain.

*W. Walker*—Poetry in America.

*M. Miller*—Modern Architecture in India.

*R. Robinson*—Political Science in Australia.

I publish them in one volume, under the title of "Aspects of Life," or the "Journal of the Society for Promoting Wisdom," it is obvious that I have done my best to induce narrow-minded readers to enlarge their sympathies. I have also raised six difficulties for the many who are in search of one essay alone; and whenever I place my volume on the shelf, it must necessarily violate five canons of classification, unless I place it with Miscellaneous Books, when it deprives six classifications of their property! And unless each essay is published in one country alone, five other countries are defrauded. But this is immaterial, so long as we make full use of the Titles.

Now in order that these works may be fully accessible to the reading public, it will be necessary to deal with them in the following manner :—

- (a) To enter them in six Author Catalogues.
- (b) To distribute them in six **Large-Group Subject-Catalogues**.
- (c) To enter them in six **Small-Group Subject-Catalogues**.
- (d) To enter them in six **Specific Subject-Catalogues**.
- (e) To Index them in an **Index of Matters**.
- (f) To enter them in six **Territorial Catalogues, &c., &c., e.g. :**

AUTHOR C.	LARGE-GROUP SUBJECT-CATALOGUE.	SMALL-GROUP SUBJECT-CATALOGUE.	SPECIFIC SUBJECT-CATALOGUE.	INDEX OF MATTERS.
Cole.	Religion.	Religion.	Missions.	African Diamonds. America, Poetry in. Architecture. Art (Indian). Australia, Political Science in.
Smith.	Natural Science.	Mineralogy.	Diamonds.	Camels. Diamonds. Greenland, Missions in.
Jones.	Natural Science.	Zoology.	Camels.	Indian Architecture. Missions. Poetry.
Walker.	Literature.	Literature.	Poetry.	Spain, Camels in. Political Science.
Miller.	Arts.	Fine Arts.	Architecture.	
Robinson	Sociology.	Political Science.	Political Science.	

**Territorial Catalogues.***(International Exchange of Titles).*

AFRICA.	AMERICA.	AUSTRALIA.	INDIA.	GREENLAND.	SPAIN.
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.

The above work (as seen in the diagrams) looks over-elaborate and intricate, but it is in reality simple ; and with a good system could be performed with the greatest speed. And if men do not take these necessary measures, the only result is that, like the boy in the German fable, who would not stoop once to pick up the horse-shoe, they will have to stoop repeatedly all along the road of life.

---

## CHAPTER XI.

# On the Official Exchange and Transmission of Official Documents from one Government to another.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## International Exchange of Literature—a natural want :

- (a) General Literature (By Purchase).
- (b) Learned Societies' Literature (By Exchange, Donation, and Purchase).
- (c) Official Documents (By Exchange, Donation, and Purchase).
- (a) Settles itself.
- (b) Certain Exchange Bureaus exist.
- (c) Reform possible.
  - Cause and Remedy investigated.
  - Lack of Catalogues paralyses all Exchange.
  - Governments indifferent.
  - Real Difficulties : (i.) Disproportion in Market Value of Documents.
  - (ii.) Bulk of Documents.
  - (iii.) How to assess Values.

## National Exchanges.

## Departmental Exchanges.

Two Policies : (i.) To force Exchange of Documents (by withholding Documents).

(ii.) To facilitate Exchange, while *encouraging Purchase*.

On the Necessity for a freer Exchange of Catalogues and Indexes.

Points to remember *re* the Transmission of Public Documents.

---

Every country desires to obtain, or to be able to obtain, all or more generally a selection of the publications issued in any other country. This is a natural law which is bound to exist, and the question at once occurs, "How is this want supplied?" In the case of most countries, it is probably *not* supplied. Let us examine the reasons.

In reference to the question under discussion, the Literature of most countries consists of three main groups :—

(1) **General Literature** which is issued *for sale*, and which can be purchased through the booksellers.

(2) The Publications of the "Learned Bodies and Literary and Scientific Societies," which is more often "Privately Printed" and "*not for sale*."

(3) Official Documents, published as

(a) State-Papers; as

(b) Provincial or Municipal Official Documents;

which are in many countries partly *for sale*, partly *not for sale*; the United States being a country in which, until recently, nothing but a comparatively small portion of these works could be obtained by direct purchase.

It is clear that the works belonging to the first group can be easily obtained, except in Oriental countries, where unbusinesslike habits of Orientals have often frustrated the efforts of Librarians.

But not so with the second and third groups.

### The Learned Societies.

To take the case of the publications of the Learned Societies. While many are most generous in presenting copies of their journals, &c., broadcast where they will be appreciated, others are not in a financial position to do so, or issue publications of such great value as to wish to obtain such equivalent for them. Thus there is a natural tendency for them to wish to effect a direct exchange of their surplus stock with other similar kindred Societies. And it must frequently be the case that there are a large number of Societies in different countries who have surplus stock which they wish to get rid of, and a nearly equal number of Societies who would like to obtain such publications if they knew they were to be had.

But how are they to communicate with one another? and what is to be the means of transit for their mutual publications?

A first impulse is to think of the booksellers. But their very number is against them in the matter, for so many of them have their own particular speciality, which is unknown to the majority of ordinary mortals. Moreover, it is often a most thankless task for booksellers to undertake such agency, for they not unfrequently get more trouble than profit from it, especially as many Learned Societies are very unbusinesslike in the regular and accurate transmission of their publications. Naturally there is need for Literary Exchange Bureaus.

And indeed we find that there are several in existence—perhaps more than we imagine. Of these there can be no doubt that the

Smithsonian Institution (in its double capacity of Exchange Agency in regard both to Public Documents and Learned Societies, publications) is the greatest. (See Appendix.)

There is a "Bureau des Echanges Internationaux" in Paris, an "Ufficio degli Scambi Internazionali" in Rome; a "Foreign Literary Exchange of Norway" at the Royal University of Norway, in Christiania; a "Bureau de Dépôt, Distribution et Echanges Internationaux de Publications," for the Republic of Uruguay, at Montevideo.

The one important point for Bureaus and Librarians to remember, regarding the transmission of publications, is that "National Official Exchanges" should always be kept separate from "Departmental" Official Exchanges, and both kept separate from Exchanges of Publications not issued by Governments.

### Official Documents.

Similarly in the case of the Official Documents of the various Governments, it is natural to expect that in each country there shall be at least one Exchange Bureau, the chief of which shall be Agent-General for every other country.

And we find that in many countries repeated efforts have been made, since the year 1875, to establish such Bureaus which might be the medium of International Exchange of Official Documents—the United States Government and the Belgium Government being most instrumental in forwarding the idea. On the part of America the matter was promoted by and through the Smithsonian Institution; and we may feel a just pride in remembering that it was an Englishman, Mr. Smithson, whose sense of genius founded "An establishment for the increase and diffusion of knowledge among men" which has done so much to promote the broad-minded ambition of the founder.

But in spite of the many and repeated efforts alluded to, the success, certainly in regard to Official Documents, if not in the case of the learned Societies, has been of a most qualified description, owing to one simple want which few have yet been able to overcome—the want of complete Annual Lists or Catalogues of the Official Publications of each country.

Such a want is not very creditable to the Nations concerned, for it can scarcely be an exaggeration to say that no city firm would attempt to transact business with another house which declined to supply a proper list of its goods.

Until, therefore, this initial difficulty can be overcome, it is useless to talk of Exchanges of Official Publications, for the whole matter must be based upon these Lists.

It is true that, in the case of the United States Government, from the fact that so few of its Documents were procurable by purchase, it has been in a position to dictate its own terms to other nations, *i.e.*, to say: "There is a List of the Publications which we offer on certain terms;" and since it does this in a business-like manner, and its Documents are of great value, the Exchanges distributed by the United States are, in one sense, the most satisfactory that are distributed throughout the world.

But even this does not obviate the fact that the United States Government has never<sup>1</sup> yet issued a satisfactory Official List (complete) of its Official Publications, such that other Governments can ascertain what other publications *are actually issued*, in case they may wish to procure copies or more copies of the same.

So far as the writer is aware, the only country which issues Complete Annual Lists of its Public Documents in a form at all accessible, is our own country, and more recently India,<sup>2</sup> although it is doubtful to what extent those interested in Official Literature are aware of their existence.

Whether Exchanges of the Publications of the Learned Societies are affected more satisfactorily, the writer is not in a position to say, but evidently, in the case of the Learned Societies, it seems hardly likely that any system can be what it might be, in the absence of systematic periodical Catalogues of old and new stock available for purchase or exchange.

Without inquiring more closely, therefore, into actual details, it may safely be assumed that there is much room for improvement, especially in regard to official documents; and it may not be out of place, therefore, to allude briefly to the general principles which must influence any reform which may be possible in such matters.

### General Principles of Reform.

In regard to **Official Documents**, the general principles affecting Exchanges are by no means easy to agree upon.

That there is real difficulty (apart from frequent indifference) in finding a common basis of operation is proved by the fact—

<sup>1</sup> This is no longer the case; excellent Monthly Catalogues are now issued.

<sup>2</sup> And still more recently, the United States of America.

(1) That England and Germany "refused, from the first, to participate in either conferences or conventions relating to International Exchanges," although the British Government subsequently co-operated in the movement.

(2) That only eight Governments acceded to the first of the two conventions held to discuss the subject, Switzerland withdrawing from the second convention.

(3) That the United States refused to sign a "second special agreement" at the Brussels Conference in 1883, although agreeing to signing the same Document in 1886.

(4) That France withdrew from the Conference of 1886.

The first and chief difficulty probably arises from the wide **disproportion in the value of the Documents** of many of the countries concerned. Naturally the larger countries hesitate before lavishly dispensing large sets of their Documents year by year to small Governments who have little to give in return.

A **second** connected point of difference exists in the desire to insist upon a **complete exchange of ALL Official Documents** published in each year, between country and country, as increasing the expense for the outgiving Government and increasing the difficulties of storing the large accumulations which would be received in return, many of which would be comparatively useless to the recipient.

A **third** obstacle lies in the difficulty of **estimating the proportionate value of Documents** in cases where a fair exchange may be agreed upon.

These are difficulties which occur chiefly in matters of what is called **National Exchange**, *i.e.*, the exchanges which each Government sends for deposit in the *National Libraries* of other Governments. But other difficulties exist in connection with what are called "**Departmental Exchanges**," *i.e.*, the smaller exchanges frequently solicited between the individual Departments of different Governments. And obviously in the greater number of instances all such exchanges must be based somewhat upon the *fair exchange principle*, necessitating the classifying of countries into two Classes as regards "National Exchanges."

In regard to the matter generally, there are two courses to pursue. One is to assume that it is for the good of mankind that the larger countries should, even at a loss to some, force their wisdom on one another, and obtain like returns—in which case, as a large country, you would make it as difficult as possible



for other countries to obtain your Official Literature, in order to force them to exchange (which was probably the policy of the United States Government in the past).

The second course is to assume that if Foreign Countries are in the mind to profit by your Official Literature, they will endeavour to purchase it. While, therefore, you are perfectly prepared to accord reasonable Exchanges, where desired, you do your best to encourage Purchase by rendering it as easy as possible for other countries to ascertain the existence and prices of your publications. In short, the two courses are—

(1) **To try and force the System of Exchange.**

(2) **To facilitate reasonable Exchanges, while encouraging Purchase.**

The expediency of facilitating purchase is far greater than might be at first supposed, for there are many Departments which, rather than go through the vexatious delay of correspondence, and the uncertainty of obtaining certain *definite* publications regularly, *immediately they are published*, would prefer to purchase in order to "know where they are."

This only points all the more to the desirability and absolute necessity of each Government pricing its publications as customarily sold, and printing complete Periodical Catalogues of the same to be freely circulated among other countries.

But there are other than official reasons why the large majority of Public Official Documents in every country shall be priced for sale—for there is the **private citizen** to consider. If Governments only made it easier for him to obtain what he wants by (i.) a wider system of agency, (ii.) more advertising, (iii.) more rational separating of unconnected series into separate groups, with corresponding Subject-Catalogues, they would probably derive as much from private sale of Documents, as what they may expend on Exchanges with one another.

Of course, Exchanges are chiefly matters for the decision of State Treasuries and Printing Offices. A certain number of copies must be printed, and the last 100 copies printed are the cheapest. There are the chances to be weighed of stock accumulating; of possible ways of putting it out to the greatest advantage; and calculations as to whether works may be as valuable if permanently placed in the National Library of a Foreign country as they would be as temporary deposits in the Private Libraries of Members of Parliament, Congress, House of Assembly, or as gift books for cabmen at Electioneering times (as appeared in the United States!).

But the broad policy is probably the best—

- (1) To facilitate, but not to force, the Exchange on a large scale, of Official Documents, on equal terms, between countries of corresponding importance.
- (2) To permit Exchanges with minor Governments up to a certain value, somewhat proportionate to the value of their own Documents.
- (3) To encourage Purchase.

In so doing, it may be necessary to rearrange the Exchange from time to time, thus making it all the more necessary that there should be definite Bureaus charged with the immediate transactions in every country.

But above all, there must be clear understanding, in black and white, either permanent or periodical, as to what publications may be expected with certainty by *Exchange*, in order that each Government *may know exactly what to purchase*; otherwise, the change of officials, in Government Offices, will inevitably result in imperfect supplies, or the transmission of Duplicates, and in irregular delivery, all of which results will demoralise the working of the best library in the world.<sup>1</sup>

#### On the Necessity for a freer Exchange of Catalogues and Indexes.

No reference to the subject of International Exchanges would be complete if it omitted to mention the necessity for freer exchange of *Works of Reference*—the *Tools* of the Librarian, without which his work is brought to a standstill.

The futility of distributing large sets of Official Documents, and of withholding the **keys** to their contents, is scarcely a matter for demonstration, were it not a common custom among the nations, the evil being aggravated by the fact that it is often most difficult to discover the existence of such Works of Reference, and, therefore, hard to specify them.

It should be remembered that in regard to a large number of Works of Reference, at great central Libraries, Librarians always require *extra* copies; *e.g.*,

---

<sup>1</sup> It has not been considered necessary to refer here to the details of any possible exchanges between Government Departments and "State-supported Institutions" or "Libraries of historic interest."

## 200 ON THE OFFICIAL TRANSMISSION OF OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS.

- 1 Copy for the Permanent Use of the Official most immediately concerned.
- 2 Copies to cut up and lay down on Cards, if necessary, or for pasting in the titles as Accession slips in a Printed Guard Book Catalogue.
- 1 Copy for a General Reading Room.
- 1 Copy for the Reference Library of the General Staff.
- 1 Reserve Copy.
- 
- 6 Copies.
- 

The Works of Reference referred to in Official Literature are the following :—

- (1) Periodical *Departmental* Catalogues.
- (2) Periodical Registers of the *whole Series* of Documents issued by a Government for the year.
- (3) Indexes to individual Works or Series of Works.

It is evident that in the case of the *Government Gazettes* of a Government, the *Parliamentary Debates*, or any other Series which possess long Indexes to each volume, it is of absolute importance that such Indexes should be printed as **separate** parts, extra prints of which can then be supplied at will without breaking a book. Otherwise if a student be in ignorance of the year when certain facts occurred, or if he wish generally to peruse the Indexes to a Set of Sessional Papers, Gazettes, Debates, or other important Documents, he will have to send for 10—100 large volumes, most of which he will not actually require to peruse (except for the Indexes); whereas, if extra copies of the Indexes had been supplied for separate binding and use, he would probably be able to see *the whole Index* to a long Series, bound up in one single Reference Volume.

It is certain that Governments would readily co-operate in supplying such extra copies of the works referred to, if they realised how much Librarians would appreciate their efforts.

### **Points to remember in reference to the transmission of Official Documents.**

Hitherto, reference has only been made to the *general principles* of the Subject. It may be useful to refer to the details, the observance of which is so necessary for mutually facilitating the

work of National Libraries, in regard to the despatch and receipt of Official Documents. For unless the Details are carefully planned and attended to, the best of systems will fail, and thus Librarians will glance round their Libraries only to find their Series so incomplete as to be reduced in value (from a statistical point of view) 50 per cent., and as to render it practically impossible to bind them up into volumes, or to catalogue them properly.

These, then, are the points to remember.

### Numbered Catalogues.

It is not enough for a Government to print Periodical Catalogues of its Documents, and to circulate them ; *every item* in each Catalogue should be numbered, the numbers to commence afresh each year. This simple detail reduces what would otherwise be an enormous correspondence to almost *nil*.

### Numbered Works.

It follows that the works despatched should be numbered in pencil according to the Lists.

### Corresponding Agents.

It must be made perfectly clear who are the Corresponding Agents directly responsible for the proper working of an Exchange System. And in those cases where they may not have great powers or responsibilities conferred upon them (without reference to higher authorities), it is imperative that they have the power to correspond in all matters of detail direct with one another.

### Source of Despatch.

As the *corresponding* Agents must be known to one another, so also must it be absolutely clear *from what* office Exchanges are despatched, and *to whom* they should be acknowledged.

### One Channel of Transmission.

All Official Documents, coming from or going out of a country, whatever the special arrangements, should pass through one and the same agency of transmission. Thus alone is it possible to know what is transpiring, and to rectify mistakes.

### Intervals of Despatch.

Official Documents from each country across should be despatched and acknowledged at regular intervals. This saves

both postage, and reduces all other work in office, and tends to greater accuracy of supply. The writer's personal opinion is that (except where the interest of one country in another is great) monthly consignments are the best to agree upon.

### **Bound Volumes.**

It will be found to the mutual advantage of all nations if each country sends its Exchanges (as much as possible) in *bound* volumes, properly lettered. (They need not be bound elaborately).

### **APPENDIX.**

#### **A Bureau of Exchanges. (Smithsonian Institution).**

The Smithsonian system of international exchanges, begun in 1852, had for its object the free interchange of scientific material between scientific institutions and investigators in the United States and those in foreign lands. For this purpose it established correspondence with learned men all over the world, until there is no civilised country or people, however remote, upon the surface of the planet, so far as is known, where the Institution is not thus represented. The list of correspondents has lengthened until those external to the country alone number nearly 17,000, while the total number is about 24,000.

The operations of this Bureau have affected most beneficially the libraries of all learned institutions in America. In 1867 Congress assigned to the Institution the duty of exchanging fifty copies of all public documents for similar works published in foreign countries. Finally, in 1889, a definite treaty, made previously at Brussels, was formally proclaimed by the President of the United States, wherein the United States Government, with a number of others, undertook the continuation of the exchange service on a more extensive basis. Out of this has grown the Bureau of International Exchanges, for the maintenance of which Congress partially provides by annual appropriation. From 1852 to 1895 the Smithsonian exchange service handled 1,459,448 packages, and for three years past the weight of books passing through this office has been considerably over one hundred tons annually.

*The above is from "An Account of the Smithsonian Institution" (1895, 8°).*

## CHAPTER XII.

**A Matter of Expediency and Justice.**

There is one aspect of Bibliography which, while primarily a matter of administration, has an influence too important to be overlooked, on the success, or otherwise, of National Systems, viz., the Remuneration of Librarians by profession.

There is an idea very prevalent that a post in a library is either a *sinecure* or a post involving the possession and display of powers so ordinary as not to require any very special recognition. There are those who believe that the librarian has nothing to do but to read interesting books in a comfortable chair, and occasionally to "index" them in a desultory manner; that he is either a *dilettante* to be envied, or a machine to be despised.

So far does this prejudice extend, that the same critics will confuse in their minds, even though they may try to conceal it, the difference between the librarians who form the brain of a library, and that part of a staff which necessarily constitutes the more mechanical part of the machine; and where, in the smaller libraries, these two functions may often have to be united, they will conveniently estimate the worth of the individual from the mechanical aspect only, and omit to take the brain-value into consideration at all!

The result is a foregone conclusion: Bibliography and librarianship suffer, and the country at large shares in the loss.

But, it may be urged, "How does the country suffer? Is not the case exaggerated?"

For answer, I will quote a text. Writing home to Sir Frederick Currie, in the year 1858, Sir John Lawrence (as he was then), in allusion to the subject of his pay and pension, as Chief Commissioner of the Punjab, expresses himself in the following words:—

*"In my day I have had more work than pay. The legitimate expenses of my position are considerable. Moreover, a man who is working all day for the public cannot give much thought to his private interests."*

Without necessarily pressing the comparison too far, these words supply the key.

If a country wishes for a system of Bibliography worthy of the name, it must pay for it. You must buy *brain* as you buy everything else.

But some one will raise the dishonourable argument: "There are men starving in the market. If we can buy brain for nothing, *we are quite satisfied.*" Yes, *but the brain will not be satisfied*, and you cannot afford to neglect this item. Injustice brings its own reward in this as in other cases.

The brain must live, and if *you* do not pay it, someone else will. Thus, no sooner have you obtained its services, and it has, through trained experience, become more really valuable, than someone else bids for it, and you have lost it; and you have to begin all over again with rough, untrained material.

And suppose that, for some reason, you do *not* lose all the brains of a system, in many instances the affections of the heart, which so often control the brain, will, in course of time, be transferred elsewhere, and indifference or disaffection remains behind. It is not *your* fault if you have not trained a splendid race of hirelings, and reaped the consequences.

To apply the moral: Librarians are, as a class, wretchedly paid, and this in spite of the fact that they constitute the Intelligence Department of a country in matters of progress and civilisation. The result is seen in the present state of literary chaos! Catalogues which ought to have been compiled fifty years ago are as yet undreamt of. And their absence represents fifty years of perpetuated ignorance and wasted effort in regard to the particular spheres or claims of literature in question, with corresponding loss to the country. This could never have been if the value of the library profession had been duly recognised, and it had thus benefited more fully by the addition to its ranks of more brain-workers, whose time and thought could be wholly given up to the purely brain-work, instead of being wasted on purely mechanical effort.

Again, it is not yet recognised that the brain-workers, in a system of Bibliography, require a great number of tools, in the shape of works illustrating or containing Bibliographical principles or facts, which, to be of value, must be the private property of the individual—always ready to hand, which he marks and cuts about at will. Now, in large libraries, it is not always possible to purchase a number of separate Reference

**Li**braries for each individual, and all cannot use the same book  
**at** the same time, and thus the individual must purchase them for  
**him**self. He can, moreover, only pursue his studies, to any  
**deg**ree, at a considerable cost of typing and printing, experimental  
**or** otherwise. And all this costs money.


If, then, the adequate remuneration is not forthcoming, not  
**only** is a brain-worker hindered in his work, but, in order to live,  
**he** may actually be compelled to add to his income in every  
**leg**itimate way after his day's work is over.

And to try and interfere with this lawful right would be both  
**w**rong and impossible. But when once you make it to his advantage  
**to** spend his superfluous energy on the work of his own profession,  
**he** will do so. And this is all the more important in the Library  
**w**orld, because, as in no other profession perhaps, there are years  
**of** arrears waiting—crying to be done, and nobody to do them—  
**and**, in the absence of a larger body of independent Bibliographical  
**w**orkers, nobody *can* do them, except the members of trained  
**library** staffs.

In America, the general standard of librarianship is higher than  
**in** our country, for which there are many reasons.

Some might say that the higher trained class of work com-  
**p**elled higher salaries. But who shall say that the higher salaries  
**h**ave not attracted a larger number of high-class workers? With-  
**ou**t further comment, therefore, this is a subject which may well  
**c**ommend itself to the consideration of all who have the in-  
**ter**ests of Libraries, Bibliography, and the Library profession at  
**h**eat.

---







SECTION II.

---

**Monographs relating to General Bibliography.**

208

208

# **Bibliography Backwards :**

**A PAPER**

**Read before The Library Association,  
February, 1893.**

**BY**

**FRANK CAMPBELL.**

---

**"Did the reader ever happen to reflect on the great idea of  
Publication ?"—(*De Quincey*).**



## Bibliography Backwards.

### PREFATORY NOTE.

The following paper, originally intended (under title, "An Introduction to the Theory of Bibliography") for the Annual Meeting of the Library Association, held at Nottingham in 1892, was re-written in its present form, and read before a Monthly Meeting of the Association, on February 11th, 1893.

A summary of the latter part of the paper (Sect. II., No. 2) has already appeared in the pages of "The Library," and has been subsequently reprinted under the title of "The Battle of Bibliography."

This earlier part of the paper is here printed for the first time, with the omission of several pages of comparatively unimportant matter, and with a few explanatory additions.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Librarians' Difficulties.	Theory of Publication.
Their Causes.	Badly-framed Titles.
What is Bibliography?	Buried Bibliographies.
Ancient and Modern Bibliography	The Division of the Stream
compared.	of Literature.
Bibliography Defined.	The Remedies. [ <i>Printed as No. 2.</i> ]
Theory of Compilation and Pub-	Conclusion.
lication.	
Lost Records.	
The Value of the Section.	



## Bibliography Backwards.

### Librarians' Difficulties.

If anyone present were to undertake the cataloguing of any collection of State Papers, more especially those of twenty years ago, he would meet with difficulties of such a nature that he would very soon be brought to a complete standstill ; and before he would be able to make any progress, he would find it necessary to ask himself :—" Wherefore these difficulties ?"—" What is the reason ?" And furthermore, before he could solve those difficulties, he would have to answer his own question, and discover the *cause* of the evil before he could apply the remedy, or in any degree minimize the evil effects.

### The Causes of the Evil.

On applying himself to the solution of the problem, he would soon find that all his troubles arose from the following causes :—

1. From the manner in which the Reports were compiled.
2. From the manner in which they were published.
3. From the fact of no suitable Record being kept of them, when first issued to the public, before being dispersed abroad.

And if he afterwards applied himself to the search of knowledge in the domain of *General Literature*, he would find the same evils, and an extension of them. For owing to the extent and nature of General Literature, he would find himself far more dependent on systematic series of *Special Lists* of Books. But these, in turn, being dependent for their existence, on the presence of *General Lists*, and the latter being conspicuous by their absence, he would fail to find the former.

In addition to these difficulties, he would find his task greatly increased, owing to the greater diversity of systems of Publication throughout the field of General Literature.

If our friend were next to attempt any practical method of dealing with the evil, he would find no alternative but to com-



mence an investigation of the whole subject from the very beginning (*forwards* !) and, after repeated efforts to discern order in disorder, would throw up his hands in despair and frantically ask :—

#### WHAT IS BIBLIOGRAPHY ?

And this evening, I am here to ask the same question.

I understand that the President of the Bibliographical Society, in deference to expressed wishes, suggested a definition of the word, in his Inaugural Address delivered November, 1892. Not being present at the meeting, I do not know the terms of the Definition. In any case, however, I prefer rather to confine any remarks in this paper to facts which have come under my own personal experience, leaving it to others to modify them afterwards.

Now are we all agreed as to what we mean, when we use the term "Bibliography?" "I think *not*."

I believe it will be conceded that, although we all agree as to a general meaning of the word, we have on the one hand restricted its sense to *Generality*, or, on the other hand been apt to confine its meaning to *Specialities*.

In proof of the first criticism, it seems fair to assert that the present state of Bibliography could not have existed, if the several parts of Bibliography had been duly recognized.

In proof the latter statement, I ask is it not a common occurrence for men to regard Bibliography, each from the point of view of his own particular *Speciality*, regardless of the rights of others? There are those who regard Bibliography solely from its classical side of Old Editions, Rare Books, Black-Letter type, and beautiful Bindings. There are others whose thoughts are more directly engrossed on the modern and practical Bibliography of daily life. There are again, the distinct existences of General Catalogues, Special Bibliographies, Subject Indexes, Selected Lists and Indexes, all of which, occupying distinct positions in the field of Bibliography, draw their adherents in their train. And in a great measure, this is only as it should be.

(I own that at this present moment, my thoughts are fixed more especially on *Modern Literature* and Special Bibliographies.) But what I wish to point out is that, in thinking of our own specialities, we are apt to under-rate the Specialities of other branches; to be content in our prosperity to hear of *their* adversity, forgetting that we are all parts of a whole, and that the one cannot suffer without the other.

### Ancient and Modern Bibliography Compared.

Now I do not think it can be denied that Ancient Bibliography had far more than its lawful share of patronage in the past, compared with any amount of time, money, and intellect which have been spent on Modern Bibliography.

Apart from any consideration of those grand monuments of bibliography, such as the Authors' Catalogue of our own National Library, if we compare Ancient and Modern Bibliography, I suppose the one is a success—the other only just getting out of failure, compared with what *should* be, and compared with what *might* be.

But without bestowing reproaches on Ancient Bibliography having been especially favoured, there are three points which I wish to lay stress upon.

- 1) That Ancient Bibliography is only a success, after the expenditure of Mints of Money, generations of time, and the life-blood of numberless devotees, all of which sacrifices were unnecessary if the laws of Bibliography had been duly recognised in the past.
- 2) That Modern Bibliography may be made a startling success at any expenditure which is trifling compared with the corresponding gain.

That while Ancient Bibliography can exist—has existed—with detriment to Modern Bibliography, Modern Bibliography cannot be successfully restored to order without conferring the greatest advantages on Ancient Bibliography.

much for the artificial restrictions and the internal wars in the Bibliographical world, resulting from the want of interpretation of this word of twelve letters.

### Existing Definitions.

Let us turn to the *Encyclopædia Britannica* and to the *Webster's Dictionary*. It may be considered absurd to suppose definitions found in these two great authorities could

I do not say that they are wrong; but I put the question—What is a definition?

The question however, not with a view of here attempting completely, but merely with the view of remarking that a definition may be satisfactory so far as concerns the

general public, it may yet fail to suffice for the specialist; in other words, that existing definitions are proved to be of too *general* a character to be of practical value to Bibliographers, in defining their ideas and directing their studies.

I notice that Mr. Wheeler, in his Index to the "Spectator," repudiates, and rightly so, the necessity for adhering to Definitions simply because they represent the popular traditional idea, and expresses the hope that if Bibliography is to be regarded as a Science, we shall one day have a scientific accurate terminology.

This expresses what I wish to say. We are constantly having to re-define terms in every department of life, as the ages advance. The word "Bibliography" has already undergone a very significant modification of what it was once understood to be; and when we find that, even now, the meaning, as understood, and after past development, is not yet as clear as it might be—as it should be—and that evil results ensue, *then* it is time for us to re-define the word, in order to make prominent, important details which have, hitherto, escaped attention.

In Mr. Besant's words, applied elsewhere:—"We must have a re-adjustment of the old machinery—a reconsideration of the old methods."

In the *Encyclopædia Britannica* we read:—"Bibliography, thus understood, may be defined as the Science of Books, having regard to their description and proper classification."

In the *New English Dictionary*, the second signification of the word is given as:—"The systematic description and history of Books, their authorship, printing, publication, editions, &c."

Now, it is at once apparent that while these definitions are accurate so far as they go, in using the word "description," they do not convey any clear idea as to where that description begins, as to what that description depends upon; nor are we made to realise that there is any importance in the reference of stages, nor that there are many "proper" classifications, which vary in propriety, according to the special object for which each classification is made, and which each classification may be expected to fulfil. What, then, are these stages referred to?

In answer, let me repeat a definition which is practically identical with one which I have suggested on a former occasion in this room:—<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> In my remarks at the Preliminary Meeting, convened, at 20, Hanover Square, on the 15th July, 1892, "to consider and determine as to the desirability of forming" a Bibliographical Society, "and the lines upon which it should be conducted."

### Draft Definition.

*Bibliography is the Science of Books having regard to their production and most advantageous use and enjoyment, as connected with the successive stages of Compilation, Publication, Registration, and the more final stages of Book-Lists, Special Bibliographies, Catalogues, Indexes, &c. (I should mention that the arts of Printing and Binding are here included under the general term of "Publication.")*

Now, let me be clearly understood. As formerly, I have not the slightest idea of putting this definition forward as a final one. I wish merely to impress the necessity of emphasizing the existence of those vital stages of Bibliography which are apt to escape attention, leaving it to wiser heads than mine to formulate and supplement the exact language.

### Theory of Compilation and Publication.

To deal, then, with the first stage—the theory of Compilation. In using the words "*Theory of Compilation*," it is impossible to escape feeling that there are some who regard it as a high-sounding phrase, used to confer dignity on a mechanical period of authorship, which should rather be considered as a necessary adjunct to literary genius or talent.

I think a short consideration will show that although inspired genius will generally unconsciously avail itself of the principles alluded to, this is not a permanent necessity; and, in fact, that it will be found that the Laws of Compilation, bibliographically understood, have a separate existence of themselves.

The underlying principle is that in regard to the object of recording information for the use of mankind, there is a right and wrong way, and that if you wish to produce your Books to the best advantage, so that the information contained is *get-atable*, and that the books may be found and not lost, the classification of Books in Subject Catalogues and Special Bibliographies depends for its success on previous due attention to the classification and arrangement of *thought before printing*.

In other words, you have to anticipate the struggle for a useful existence of your book among a million of others.

I must apologise for quoting from a Paper which I read before this Association in 1890. But I do not think that I can better explain my meaning unless it be in the words which I then used

in regard to my former subject of State-Papers, and which I will here repeat with a few necessary alterations :—

### **Theory of Compilation Defined.**

The theory of Compilation pertains to the accurate and logical record of facts, not only in reference to the immediate object of a special work, but also in reference to the position which it shall afterwards occupy among all other works, as determined by the manner in which it is subsequently published.

Compilation and Publication being mutually dependent on one another, it is necessary that all Compilation shall be based upon a certain subject-group arrangement specially designed to forward the mutual interests of both objects, to the detriment of neither.

It naturally follows that the theory of Publication is the logical outcome of that of Compilation. It is that by which the world is best enabled to benefit by each printed Record, taken separately or collectively with other works, and thus relates principally to the manner in which such printed Records are issued.

Thus Publication is to Compilation as Compilation is to Facts ; or, in other words, the object of Compilation is to make Facts accessible ; the object of Publication is to make Record-of-Facts accessible.

The theory may further be summed up in the statement that :—

Subject A shall be dealt with in Book A, and shall be called Book A, and shall be bound up with other Books A.

It rests upon the truism that no information (which is intended for future use) should be entered in print, except where we may most reasonably expect to find it, and the theory of Publication further dictates the precise manner in which it should be issued to the public so as to enable men to make the best use of it.

It is convenient to include the Printing and Binding Arts under the general term of "Publication," as the Publisher is more often the general director of both undertakings, except the printer be his own publisher. Apart from these two branches of the work, the general details included under "Publication" would be :—  
*Separate Issue ; Correct Association in series ; Correct and*

*Comprehensive title and title-page; The use of special Title-pages for sectional reports where necessary; The use of appendices; The insertion of proper Tables of Contents; The necessity of printing a Report in the same year in which it is written, and the system of Binding according to subjects.*

My meaning may be made clearer by the following rule :—

Given a country, the subject-matter of which is divided into any twenty-six divisions, A—Z, with corresponding Books A—Z, the composition of any Book B, shall not include (if it can be avoided), more than is absolutely necessary to the special object of the Book, if, by such inclusion, matter is inserted which is wanted to complete the perfection of any Book C. If, however, it be necessary that the composition of Book B contain matter which is also vital to the composition of any other Book C; the arrangement of the printed matter contained in Book B shall be such as shall enable Book C also to benefit by the matter referred to.

In regard to *Publication*, it claims to be associated with a Theory on account of its close connection with Compilation, and from the fact that it has the power to make or ruin half the Records in the world.

### Lost Records.

A study of the old Indian State Papers will reveal to you that there is an incredible amount of information practically lost from having been inserted in Reports where it could never possibly be looked for. Thus you will find an Archæological work in a Sanitary Commissioner's Report; a Land Revenue Work in a Forest Report; valuable glossaries of Native Dialect concealed in Trade Reports, and a thousand other inconsistencies, and the unfortunate part is that subjects differing so widely as Sanitation and Archæology, are often so closely interwoven with one another, that in order to separate them, you have to read page after page of the Report, and even then you will be baffled in your attempts to tell where one subject ends and the other begins.

### The Value of the Section.

This then leads me to the subject of *Sectional arrangement* which has a most important bearing on Bibliography.

Given three subjects :—A, B and C.

If a man who is writing on A, find it necessary to insert

important information relating to B, which is quite a separate group, by all means let him do so; but let him insert it as a separate *section*, *paragraph* or *appendix*, and if possible give it a distinct sectional title (as well as mentioning it on the title page) so that it can easily be referred to from B.

Thus, if a man were writing the history of the National Association for the promotion of Social Science, he would naturally write separate sectional reports on *Jurisprudence*, *Education*, *Health*, *Economy* and *Trade*, and *Art* (which were, I believe, the original sections of the Association), and the publisher should see to giving each chapter, a half title-page and the bibliographer should equally do his duty by entering such Titles, either as Index or Catalogue entries. I allude especially to this subject of Sections, because I believe that we have lost sight of the value of Sections as Books, in regard to any practical recognition of their importance from a Bibliographical point of view.

I could easily enumerate bad instances of this statement, but I would prefer stating instances where the value of Sections has been recognised. It would be an interesting subject to work out as to **What is a Book**, for we must most of us have often noticed instances of books being entered in "Books." And I believe that we shall find in the answer a clearer illustration of the neglect of the laws of Compilation than we suspect. We are accustomed to look upon the title of Book as sacred. And this must be so, for apart from the impertinence to authors, if once we begin to tamper with the title of the printed book, in general literature all certainty would cease as to catalogue entries, and we should constantly be unable to find the books we wanted. But we may well lay aside our credulity in titles, for we shall find more often than we think, that the titles are constantly misleading, and that possibly each of the books before us contains other books.

Perhaps I cannot do better than refer to an example with which most of those present will be familiar, viz., *Mr. Lecky's History of Ireland*. Now, this was none the less a distinct Book when contained as separate Sections in the "History of England," except that from being separated by sections of English history its present title-page could not have been given it before.

Another familiar instance is that of the General Chapter on "India" in *Sir William Hunter's Gazetteer*, which chapter was none the less a book appearing as it did as part of Volume IV. of the first edition, than it was when it appeared as a separate volume or separate work in subsequent years.

Again, the work which we now know as "*The Administration of Warren Hastings, 1772-1785, reviewed . . . by G. W. Forrest*" (consisting of over 300 pages), was originally the "*Introduction*" (with Appendices added) to the "*Selections from the Letters . . . and . . . State-Papers preserved in the Foreign Department of the Government of India . . . Edited by G. W. Forrest,*" 1890, fol.

The *Gazetteers* of India as a whole, afford good illustrations of the existence of Books within Books under the disguise of Sections.

Suppose a theoretical case of three Presidential Gazetteers, each arranged in four Sections.

	BENGAL. Gazetteer.	BOMBAY. Gazetteer.	MADRAS. Gazetteer.	
	Sections.	Sections.	Section.	
A Book.	Agriculture.	Agriculture.	Agriculture.	Agriculture in India.
A Book.	Education.	Education.	Education.	Education in India.
A Book.	Meteorology.	Meteorology.	Meteorology.	The Meteorology of India.
A Book.	Sanitation.	Sanitation.	Sanitation.	Sanitation in India.

You have only to bind up extra copies of the sections transversely, and you have four *books* on Indian Agriculture, Education, Meteorology, and Sanitation; and the same principle may be pursued from the *District* upwards, and extended to embrace every country in the whole world.



### Theory of Publication.

I have been referring hitherto more especially to certain aspects of the earliest stage of "compilation." But, as I have already said, this stage is ultimately dependent on that of "Publication"—so much so that the latter may easily make or mar the former through care or neglect. I have (pages 218-219) briefly specified the points of importance in Publication. I cannot now dwell on them all in detail, so will confine myself to giving a few illustrations by diagrams on that part of the subject which has to do with the *Title-page*, exhibiting some Title-pages which are conspicuous for their defiance of the laws of publication, and for the trouble which they cause the librarian.

Here reference was made to a diagram—a copy of No. 23 of the "*Selections from the Records of the Bombay Government*" (1856, 8°), showing (1) *how the proper title appeared only on a slip on the cover* (which librarians are, of course, obliged to ignore to a great extent, as covers are not permanent); (2) *how the real Title-page is filled up by the Table of Contents* (thirteen Titles).

The same volume and the other volumes of the series are remarkable for the supply of admirable half-titles for the several works contained.

Important and difficult questions are raised by such instances, as to the *choice of Titles* (from which to make cross-references), and as to the *dates of publication*.

The next diagram illustration was the Title-page of the admirable work known as "*Burma, its People and Productions; or, Notes on the Fauna, Flora and Minerals of Tenasserim, Pegu and Burma. By Rev. F. Mason. . . . Re-written . . . by W. Theobald.*" (1882-83. 8°.)

Vol. i. : Geology, Mineralogy and Zoology.

Vol. ii. : Botany.

Vol. ii. (which contains a General Index to vols. i. and ii.) contains nearly 800 pages solely devoted to Botany.

This is an instance of *Books within Books* (as Sections).

What a pity that it should have been burdened with the long title quoted, when it might have been issued independently by itself, and been known and quoted as :

*The Botany of Tenasserim, Pegu and Burma.*

Surely 800 pages is sufficient to constitute a separate work?—and the farce is prolonged by reprinting the words, "Burma, its People and Productions," some 390 times at the top of the pages of a purely botanical work. There are other points which might be similarly criticised, but these are the most important.

The subject was then continued as follows :

Let me next ask your ideas about another title-page. Now, how can the record of Modern Literature be satisfactorily carried out if we violate all first principles, as you see here is done? I require a Bibliography on the Aborigines of Australasia. I argue to myself: If a Bibliography there be, I shall find it published as

a separate work, or at least, if it be published in a series, it will appear somewhere with an appropriate title. Not a bit of it! Having made elaborate researches, we at last discover that such a work has been published in connection with one of the Government Departments, and this diagram represents the title-page, the perusal of which makes your head reel before you arrive at what you want.

"Department of Mines (and Agriculture)."

"Memoirs of the Geological Survey of New South Wales."

\* \* \*

"Palæontology, No. 8."

\* \* \*

"Contributions to a Catalogue of Works . . . on the Anthropology, Ethnology, and Geological<sup>1</sup> History of the Australian and Tasmanian Aborigines. Part. i. [iii.], 1890-95."

Thus, before we get our information, we have to call on the Minister of Mines and Agriculture, obtain a letter of introduction to the Government Geologist, procure another introduction to the Palæontologist, and finally we arrive at our destination! If I thought that any blame rested with the enterprising Bibliographer, to whom we owe a debt of gratitude, I should not quote this instance; but no blame attaches, because it is easy to see that in printing the work in the series in which it appears, "as a matter of convenience," he was probably seizing the one opportunity afforded for printing it at all. Nevertheless, in principle, librarians must protest against such gratuitous creation of difficulties for them; for, note, that apart from the amount of waste title, and the possibilities of the work being entered differently in different catalogues, the work, as part of the series referred to, can only be referred to by a most laborious cross-reference.

If local exigencies are difficult to contend with, and works, so differing in nature, be published by the same Department, let us beseech Government printers to conceal the irrelevant part of the title in an obscure corner in small type (which they are so well able to do), and thus avoid the evil complained of.

How are unfortunate librarians to keep the records of the world of Literature in order, if such inconsistencies are indulged in?—if, in America, the Patent Office<sup>2</sup> issues (this is now past history) the Publications on Agriculture, and in Canada, the

<sup>1</sup> This word might be omitted.

<sup>2</sup> "A General Index of the Agricultural Reports of the Patent Office," &c. Washington, 1879, 8vo.

Department of Agriculture<sup>1</sup> issues the Canadian Historical Archives; while, in New South Wales, the Palæontological Branch of the Geological Survey of the Department of Mines and Agriculture issues the Ethnological Reports!

### Buried Bibliographies.

The last example having also been alluded to in regard to the concealment of Bibliographies, reference was then made to Vol. X. of the *Gazetteer of the North-Western Provinces of India*, in which a considerable number of Bibliographies are buried.

Reference was next made to the "*Bibliography of the Australasian Races*," buried in Vol. II. of the "*Report of the Australasian Association for the Advancement of Science* . . . 1890." This Bibliography is not very long, and, if my memory is right, it has since been reprinted separately; but nevertheless, it was absolutely wrong to insert it as pp. 293-311 of the volume in question. So also it was wrong to include the "*Australasian Geological Record*" as pp. 357-360, and, withal, not to give it a clearer title.

These are two small and apparently trivial instances, but the principle they illustrate is of the utmost importance, viz., the evil results of such custom being:—

- (1) *That the Bibliography is concealed, and its existence difficult to discover.*
- (2) *That if discovered, it is difficult for ordinary students to obtain, and to purchase.*
- (3) *That being printed as part of the body of the work, it cannot be extracted without injury to the general volume; whereas, if it had been printed in the form of an appendix, with separate pagination, it could have been easily extracted, if necessary.*

These are but solitary instances of what takes place every day in a far worse degree. Now, of course, we cannot object to Special Bibliographies being included in other works. Financial difficulties are such that unless they are thus published, many of them would not be published at all. But we can reasonably claim and ask:—

- (1) *That Bibliographies be supplied with proper title-pages;*
- (2) *That, when included in other works, they shall be published as Appendices, separately paged by themselves, and not as part of the body of a work;*
- (3) *That Separate Reprints shall be struck off at the time of issue.*

Thus we should be able to know of their existence; should be able to catalogue them with ease; and could avail ourselves of their contents.

---

<sup>1</sup> As the Report of the Archivist is published separately, with good title-page, this does not matter.

With these remarks, I pass on to the consideration of that part of our subject (The Theory of Publication) on which everything else hinges :—

### The Division of the Stream of Literature,

where—in the words of De Quincey—“*one condition of Publication defeats another.*”

Now, let us consider :—What is the natural order of Publication in the world of Literature? Is it not this?—as you see on the Chart, that if the world visible and invisible, be divided into any Divisions A, B, C, D, every work written on A, should be separately issued under the name of A, so that it can be separately acquired, catalogued, indexed and bound, referred together with all other works on A—and similarly with B, C, D, etc. But what do we find? Human ingenuity has invented methods by which the works on A which we expect to find associated together, are, by reason of the process of “collecting” (!), scattered, and to be found under every other Division but A, viz., under such numerous other sources as you see marked on this chart. Thus here you find the information which we expect to find under A, B, C, D has been snatched away and lies concealed within the pages of :—

- { General Works of Reference.
- { Special Works of Reference,
- { General “Collections” of Works.
- { Special “Collections” of Works.
- { General Learned Societies Publications.
- { Special Learned Societies Publications.
- { General Periodicals (Magazines).
- { Special Periodicals (Magazines).
- { General Newspapers.
- { Special Newspapers.

and the same process of the dispersion of Literature is repeated in like manner, though in a lesser degree, throughout the Division, of Official Documents.

### Works of Reference.

At first it is natural to consider that nothing is a “Book,” unless it be published separately, and yet, directly we consider the subject, it will be apparent that if a work appearing as an “article” in the Encyclopædia exceed a certain length and be of a special importance, it should rank as a “book,”<sup>1</sup> (being

<sup>1</sup> The article on Persian is about 100 quarto pages in length.

certainly of greater value than thousands of pamphlets constantly issued, all of which are properly catalogued as books.) I should myself have been very glad to have been able to have purchased the article on "Bibliography" as a pamphlet-book if I could have obtained it.<sup>1</sup>

#### Collections.

So with works issued as the "Collected Works" of an Author, as works on a particular subject collected together. Although they appear often in one volume, or at least under one General Serial Title, they constitute nevertheless, so many *separate books*, irrespective of the accident of their having been supplied or not supplied with Special Title pages or Half Titles.

#### Publications of Learned Societies and Magazines.

As we have undervalued the importance of the Section in the interior of a book, so we have lost sight of the fact that a paper appearing in a Learned Society Journal is a "Book"; so also an Article in a Magazine.

I shall at once meet with the reply that *the more important papers* in the Learned Society Journals do receive references in certain General Catalogues as Books, and are also referred to in certain Special Bibliographies as such, to which I answer: "Yes," but this is the sole recognition in the matter, and this is and can only be very imperfectly carried out under present conditions. If such works received the recognition due to them, we should find in existence Annual Lists of the Articles published by the the learned societies of this country, arranged in Periodical Reference Volumes. I am quite aware of the List of Learned Society Reports in Messrs. Low's English Catalogue, as also a selected List in the Red Year Book of the Scientific Societies, but neither of these publications seem to me to fulfil all that is required in the matter.

Similarly, in regard to Magazine Literature, in spite of the great success which has attended Mr. Stead's enterprise, there remains much yet to be done.

#### Newspapers.

It is also evident, as shown by the existence of numerous reprints, that books also exist in newspapers.

Having drawn attention to the manner in which the direct stream of Literature divides into thousands of ramified channels, I should think that

<sup>1</sup> Many of the articles have, I believe, been issued in separate form.

the only remedy to the evil is to re-direct the several currents of Literature back again into their main courses, on the very earliest opportunity, in order to lay the foundations of Special Subject-Catalogues.

This led by natural sequence to the consideration of the necessity for *system*, and having illustrated (by a fable) the gradual natural development of the need for Works of Reference as keys to a Nation's Literature, I proceeded to discuss the nature of the remedy required in the shape of State-printed Book Registration, which latter part of my paper was afterwards summarised in the form of "The Battle of Bibliography." In explanation of the title chosen, my paper concluded with the following words :

### Conclusion.

This represents in the main that which I wished to say this evening, *i.e.*, that if we neglect the preliminary stages of *Compilation* and *Publication* in Bibliography, we are bound to suffer for it in the end, and shall have to retrace our steps *backwards* and perform the work of Compiler and Publisher all over again. Furthermore, that if we neglect, as Librarians and Bibliographers to secure our Lists of Books at the moment when alone such work can be properly done, we shall (by allowing the books to be dispersed), again have to work *backwards* at a loss of much time, money and labour, in order to re-collect the books from the point from which they originally started—and fail to do so.

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

■

THE  
BATTLE OF BIBLIOGRAPHY

Being  
An extended Summary of part of a paper  
("Bibliography Backwards")  
read before  
The Library Association,  
February, 1893

IN  
ADVOCACY OF  
COMPULSORY NATIONAL BOOK-REGISTRATION  
AND  
PRINTED PERIODICAL CLASS-REGISTERS  
FORMING  
SPECIAL BIBLIOGRAPHIES

BY  
FRANK CAMPBELL.





## The Battle of Bibliography.

The last decade of the nineteenth century will witness the solution of many great problems which have hitherto been looming as dark storms upon the horizon, ready to break, we know not when nor where, with consequences which we cannot yet foresee. If this be so especially in the political, religious and social worlds, the literary world will not escape without its trials. We are slowly awakening to the fact that the flood of Modern Bibliography has overtaken us, and we are at length forced to confess that we are unable to cope with it. Advancing with stealthy line, it has found us unprepared and unorganised, and we have fled. What, then, will be the result? Where will the flight end? Must it continue? are the questions which we ask ourselves.

### 1. Two Fallacies.

To any casual observer of matters bibliographical, there are many tendencies which will at once attract attention. In regard to the object of this paper, two are especially noteworthy.

(i.) The prevalence of the belief that the evils which afflict Modern Bibliography are *necessary* evils for which there is no radical remedy.

(ii.) The belief that if solution there be, we must turn for remedy to *Indexes*.

Now, of course, Indexes contribute a share, and a valuable share, towards the solution of our difficulties. But the great radical defect of Modern Bibliography is the absence of the systematic Periodical Series of Lists of Books on Special Subjects.

### 2. Two Wants.

The first great national want in Bibliography is to be able to find with speed and certainty any book out of the million, on knowing the author and title. This want is supplied to perfection by the Author's Catalogue.

The second great want is, without any previous knowledge, to be able to find a chronological list of ALL the books on any given subject, with absolute certainty, in reference both to time and geographical area.

### 3. The Remedy.

This want remains to be supplied.

Whence, then, the remedy? The answer is simple, Pursue a course exactly opposite to that of the past.

In the past, the books of the years have been allowed to disperse, before taking due note of them for the purpose of Special Bibliographies, at the moment when note could best be taken. The consequence is that when solitary individuals have bravely set themselves to the task of re-collecting the books, they have done so only after endless cost of money, time and labour, and have then often only succeeded in bringing a fraction of the books on a subject together again to the point from which they originally started ("*Bibliography Backwards*"), and where they might have been so easily retained in the first instance.

It is not, therefore, a question of after-remedy. We must *prevent* the evil together. And the solution of the problem is to be found in the printing of Periodical National Registers of Books. We want Periodical Lists of all the books of the year, which we can afterwards divide into any reasonable number of natural divisions and sub-divisions at will.

And how are we to get these Lists?

The most natural way is to avail ourselves of the first registry of books which can possibly take place. But alas, this registry does not exist, except on a very limited scale, and even then the registers are not printed.

If the reason be enquired, we must point to the existing law.

### 4. Copyright Laws as Affecting Bibliography.

The fate of an important branch of modern bibliography depends on the difference between the little words *may* and *must*. According to English law, a man *may* register his book for copyright.

In India and the United States a man *must* register his books. Consequently, in the two latter cases registers exist. With us they are absent.

But whether a register exists or not in this country, we have **so** far progressed that it is generally approved of in principle. It is generally agreed that a reformed Stationers' Hall under immediate Government control is the *sine qua non* of future copyright reform.

There is reason to suppose, however, that we are yet far from realising the full value of a register *bibliographically*.

In India it is arranged on lines unsuited to the highest aims of bibliography.

In America, at once like and unlike our cousins, they have written up "*customs*" over the door of bibliography—in other words, the first contemplated use of the recent scheme of registration in America was to supply tariff lists of books for the use of the Customs Officials.

#### 5. Additional Advantages of National Registration.

Now the real value of a National Printed Register is that whereas it is necessary from a copyright law and commercial point of view, it may also be made available for furthering the welfare of one of the most important branches of bibliography.

Registry *has* to be made concerning the ownership of copyright, the term of duration, and other details; and since, under a proper system of registration, all books not *privately printed*, or at least all books to be copyrighted would be registered simultaneously with the date of publication, the register entries (being in strict chronological order) would form, if printed, the best possible basis for special lists of books, provided that the original entries were made in proper fashion.

#### 6. Plan of National Book-Registration.

In conclusion, then, let me in the briefest manner sketch the outline of a National Register, noting the essential conditions.

All copyright books must be registered on the date of issue from the press.

Each entry in the Register must be a compact one, including all the essentials of a bibliographical title.

Periodicals and Continuations will be kept separate.

The registering being performed by means of manifold-writing books and type-writers, several entries could be made at one time, one for a receipt form, another as an office reference form; another as a title form, &c., &c.

Once a quarter the chronologically numbered title-forms would be sorted into a reasonable number of broad but well-defined subject group bibliographical sections, and sent to the printer.

If necessary, further details could be added to title-forms after distribution of receipt forms, and extra titles could be type-written when common to more than one group.

In regard to internal details, special attention would be paid to uniformity of type, continuity of arrangement, and simplicity of treatment.

Each quarterly section would be issued with a separate title page; would contain titles printed only on one side of the paper; would be on sale as a separate work for a moderate sum.

Here, then, for the year, and for all future time, provision is made for the special bibliography of the greater subject groups, and with a minimum of labour and expense, and with absolute certainty of details. (*Diagram 1.*)

But this is not all. By the mere cutting up and re-arrangement of selected entries in spare copies of the quarterly lists, and by the shifting of the type before it is broken up, there is easy scope for the immediate compilation of any number of *smaller bibliographies* of special subjects which may be in request. And all this without any delay in visiting libraries, in hunting through catalogues, and transcribing titles in manuscript.

#### 7. Cataloguing of Collected Work.

In addition also to the above advantages, when once we have our Periodical Registers, it would then be possible to promote a further elaboration of bibliographical enterprise, by which the thousands of books which are at present diverted from the natural stream of literature as subordinate "parts," "papers," and "articles" in "Collected Works," "Learned Society Journals," and Periodicals, &c., would be drafted back in due honour as appropriate sections of the Periodical Registers. This plan, while not interfering with, but rather aiding, the system of separate and collective *Indices*, would render a large portion of the literary world very greatly independent of indexes which do not and cannot supply all our needs.

#### 8. International Bibliography.

Furthermore, not the least of the results of the Periodical Class Registers, would be that a beautiful system of International

Bibliography would arise (certainly amongst the English-speaking nations), which, while enabling any one country to inform itself concerning the whole or any part of the literature of any other country, year by year (*Diagram 2*), would also enable each country to contribute by International Bibliographical Exchange (*Diagram 3*), periodical lists of its contributions to the National literature of any other country.

Is not this a matter worth thinking of?

---

## APPENDICES.

TO ILLUSTRATE THE THEORY OF NATIONAL  
BOOK-REGISTRATION.

- 
- A. Note *re* Book-Registration in America.  
B. Note *re* Book-Registration in India.  
C. Note *re* the absence of Book-Registration in the United Kingdom.  
FIG. 1. To illustrate the Bibliographical value of Annual Classed-Registers of the Books of any given Country.  
FIG. 2. *Ditto* in reference to two or more Countries.  
FIG. 3. To illustrate the Theory of International Bibliographical Exchange.  
FIG. 4. Specimen of Quarterly Book-Registers in India.  
FIG. 5. Suggested Book-Registration Form.

## APPENDICES.

## A.

## AMERICAN COPYRIGHT ACT OF AMENDMENT, 1891.

Sec. 4956. "No person shall be entitled to a Copyright unless he shall  
*on or before the day of publication* . . . deliver . . . a printed  
 copy of the title of the book . . . nor unless he shall also, not  
 later than the day of the publication thereof . . . deliver . . .  
 copies of such Copyright Book, &c.

## B.

## BOOK-REGISTRATION IN INDIA.

Act No. xxv. of 1867 (Amended by Act No. x. of 1890).

"An Act for the Regulation of Printing-Presses and Newspapers, for  
 the preservation of copies of Books printed in British India, and for the  
*Registration of such Books.*

Pt. v., Sec. 18. "There *shall be kept* . . . a Book to be called a Catalogue  
 of Books printed in British India, wherein shall be registered a memo-  
 randum of *every* book," &c., &c.

Pt. v., Sec. 19. "*The Memoranda* registered during each quarter in the said  
 Catalogue *shall be published* in the local Gazette," &c.

## C.

## ENGLISH EXISTING COPYRIGHT LAW.

## COPYRIGHT ACT OF 1842 (CAP. XLV.).

Sec. xi. "And be it enacted, That a Book of Registry, wherein *may be*  
*registered,*" &c.

Sec. xiii. "And be it enacted, That . . . it shall be lawful for the  
 Proprietor of Copyright . . . to make entry in the Registry Book,"  
 &c.

The marginal note reads:

"Entries of Copyright *may be* made in the Book of Registry."



1					2				3			
G. B. & I. QUARTERLY CLASS-REGISTERS.					G. B. & I. QUARTERLY CLASS-REGISTERS FOR 1893.				INTERNATIONAL BIBLIOGRAPHICAL EXCHANGE.			
	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D	G. B. & I.	U. S. A.		
1893	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D	1893. QUARTERLY REGISTERS.	1893. QUARTERLY REGISTERS.		
1894	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D				
1895	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D	1893. LIST OF BOOKS RELATING TO THE U. S. A.	1893. LIST OF BOOKS RELATING TO G. B. & I.		
&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.	A	B	C	D				

A, B, C, D, &c., represent any clearly-defined subject groups, such as Theology, Science, Art, Biography, Poetry, &c.

FIG. 4.  
SPECIMEN (COMPRESSED) OF THE OFFICIAL QUARTERLY REGISTERS OF GENERAL LITERATURE  
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY THE LOCAL GOVERNMENTS OF INDIA.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
[Registered] Number.	Title (to be translated into English when the title page is not in that language).	Language in which the book is written.	Name of author, translator, or editor of the book, or any part of it.	Subject.	Place of printing and place of publication.	Name or firm of printer and name or firm of publisher.	Date of issue from the press or place of publication.	Number of sheets, leaves, or pages.	Size.	First, second, or other edition.	Number of copies of which the edition consists.	Printed or Lithographed.	Price at which the book is sold to the public.	Name and Residence of Proprietor of Copyright, or any portion of it.	Remarks.	[Registered] Number.

NOTE.—The chief value of the above system is that it secures uniformity and accuracy in the information supplied under circumstances generally unfavourable to such results.

In any country where the National Registration of Books could be performed at *one* office and by *one* staff, such a system could be greatly improved, and at the same time be reduced to far greater simplicity. (*Vide* Fig. 4.)

F. B. C.

FIG. 5.  
SUGGESTED BOOK-REGISTRATION FORM.  
(*Manifold Writing Books.*)

* TITLE (specifying Edition, Number of Volumes or Parts, Pagination, Publisher, Place of Publication, Size, Price, &c.)  RECEIVED OF..... 189.....  No. of Copies } forming the Edition. }		No.....  Date of issue from the press.
Printer's Name and Address.	Proprietor of Copyright, Name and Address.	Date of Expiration of Copyright.

**THE  
BIBLIOGRAPHY OF THE FUTURE**

**A Paper  
Reviewing the existing Condition  
of  
National and International Bibliography  
with  
Suggested Reforms**

**BY  
FRANK CAMPBELL**

**Read before the Annual Meeting  
of the  
Library Association,  
Belfast, September, 1894**

**"We want a complete scheme of human life."**



## The Bibliography of the Future.

The subject of the paper which I offer for discussion to-day is that of "National Bibliography." And I make bold to believe that you will pardon the choice, firstly, in memory of the noble efforts made by this Association in the past in regard to this very subject; secondly, because encouragement of bibliographical research is, in reality, one of the purposes for which this Association was founded.

Moreover, I feel sure that a moment's reflection will show that the matter is one deserving of your most careful consideration, because, eventually, it affects the work of free public libraries very closely, as it does the work of every library in the country.

### A Function of Public Libraries.

One of the most important functions of a large public library is not only to preserve and store books, not only to be able to supply individual books when asked for—but to be able at will to readily and surely supply the fullest information, up to date, relative to the existence of *collections* of works on particular subjects, irrespective of whether such books are at the time all actually in the library: and this, not only in regard to the literature of our own country, but of *all* countries, including especially our colonies; and not only in regard to past time, but having regard to *present* time.

### Inability to Carry out the Same.

Now, gentlemen, you will not, I trust, misunderstand me when I say that, at the present moment, if we insert the short phrase, *complete up to date*, librarians are unable to afford this information, and this, not through any individual fault of theirs, but because the means do not exist such as will enable them to supply this want, nor do the means yet exist in any library in the world.

If, then, my statement be correct (and I wish most sincerely that you could prove it otherwise), we are face to face with a most serious and startling fact.

### Importance of Bibliography still Unrecognised.

It is a truism to refer to the vital connection between literature and the progress of civilisation; but as you know, it is often the most obvious truisms which are most difficult permanently to realise, and therefore, to act upon. And I do most emphatically assert—and this in spite of all effort made in the past—that we do not yet *fully* realise what is the real connection between Bibliography and national progress.

How otherwise can we account for the condition of Bibliography such as we know it to be, to our cost?

After the lapse of centuries, the science of Bibliography, regarded as a whole, is yet in its infancy, and the world's literature continues in disorder. The Press continues to pour forth its tons of books, but we have no mill to digest them; our machinery is antiquated and useless; or, to be more correct, for the more intricate work we have never had anything worthy of the name of machinery. To borrow an idea, we still continue to plough with the spade and reap with the sickle. And, to make matters worse, every day, nay, every hour, the situation grows more serious.

Some may think I exaggerate. Let me, then, seek to prove my assertions.

### The Aims of "Bibliography."

On a previous occasion, in a paper read before this Association, I attempted to define the word "Bibliography." It is unnecessary for me to repeat that definition now. But it is necessary for me to state what I conceive to be the aim of Bibliography, in order to establish a standard of comparison.

I imagine, then, that the final aim of Bibliography is: To enable every person, in every country, to derive the fullest possible use and enjoyment from all the books of every country, for all time, and on every subject.

### Essentials of Bibliography.

And that this object may be fulfilled, there is one grand essential, viz., that Bibliography should be complete. "Bibliography is only useful when it is complete," wrote Renan, and a truer statement does not exist — *Completeness*, identical with *certainty*, as involved in and contributed to by *definiteness* and

*continuity of place, subject and time*, so as to include every work (in whatever form issued), of every author, on every subject, at any time, in every country, as attained by co-operative individuality or centralisation, and individual co-operation or decentralisation, at all times working forward from the unit to the aggregate.

It is impossible to exaggerate the paramount importance of this element of *certainty*. There is no price too high to pay for it. To be able to say of the reference works you hold in your hands, that they contain a *complete* list of the works of that *country*; of the works of that *author*; of the works of that *period*; of the works on that *subject*—this is the ideal state of bibliography to be aimed at, and we ought not to be satisfied with less.

#### Essentials of Bibliography not Fulfilled.

What do we find, however? The reverse in all directions. Alas, the characteristics of Bibliography, as we know it, are those of incompleteness, of uncertainty, indefiniteness of country, confusion of subject, vagueness of time.

This is the feature of the *majority* of "*Special Bibliographies*," that, being in the first instance incomplete, they overlap one another; omitting to cover their own ground, they poach on their neighbour's preserves; referring to indefinite areas of time, place, subject, it is impossible to know what they include or exclude; even if accurate, now too discursive, now too concise; even if of value, ceasing to be continued, or sold at a prohibitive price; compiled on a hundred different systems, with a hundred different aims, we cannot understand their arrangement; in fine, *we never know where we are*, and can only stand and stare in blank bewilderment.

If you want a complete record of the literature of this country, you cannot get it—as is well known.

If you desire a complete record of the literature of any country in the world, you cannot get it.

There does not exist a record of the modern literature of any country, even for any one year, which is *bibliographically complete*.

If you wish for complete Special Lists (quick up to date) of all the works issued in this or any other country on important subjects of the day, such as Education, Agriculture, Art, Theology, Medical Science, Socialism, you ask for an impossibility.



And in spite of the existence of masses of Official Documents in all directions, not a catalogue exists of the documents of any country on the map.

Now please let it be understood, I am not for one moment unmindful of the existence of the great monuments of Bibliographical industry of the past. But I am here to-day not to praise but to criticise. And in reference to the finest work of the past, consider, gentlemen, at what a cost of life-blood, energy, intellect, time and money they have been produced, such as may well make us weep. And all unnecessary.

### **The Causes of Disorder.**

Whence then the cause?

The cause is obvious, viz., the total want of system consequent on the absence of organised investigation of the theory of Bibliography, and the lack of means for enabling such researches to be carried out. We expect the work to evolve itself without the aid of money, men and effort.

### **National Book-Registration.**

If we look around for facts, the lack of system is most conspicuous by the absence of National Registration of Books, which Registration is alone the true basis of all Bibliography.

In the moment when a complete record of books may most easily be secured at a minimum cost of time, labour and expense, we allow them to disperse *without making that record*. And it is only years afterwards that efforts are made by isolated individuals, all working on different systems, to try and partially remedy the evil by endeavours to re-collect at great cost of energy, a record of the books allowed to be dispersed; and when this is done, such collections, known as "Special Bibliographies," are *never* complete.

### **Fallacy re "Selection."**

In connection with the subject of Registration, it is necessary for me here to refer to an objection which is constantly being made that Registration is undesirable because it would involve the cataloguing of so much "rubbish." We *must* meet this objection, for there is no idea which deprives the cause of so much support at the present moment as this fallacy.

Let me first frankly recognise the fact that there *is* rubbish,

and also a great deal of it which would necessarily have to be registered. We all deplore it! But there the matter ends. There is no possible escape from the difficulty. In the Free Public Libraries, with limited supply of space, books, funds and restricted functions, it is possible—nay, absolutely necessary—to exercise a most stringent selection in the works to be purchased. But when it is a matter of the Record of *National Bibliography*, the great essential of which is completeness, you cannot avoid the evil, otherwise the idea of National Bibliography is at once destroyed.

And supposing that you attempted the task of selection prior to Registry, the result must be futile.

No two men will ever be found who could conscientiously agree on any fixed principle of selection, for the simple reason that no absolute standard of comparison exists. What is of value to one is useless to another; what is worthless at one time is valuable at another. In a large collection of books it becomes purely an arbitrary matter, dependent on the personal tastes or prejudices of the individual. And the principles acted upon by one are just as likely to be reversed by another.

In fine, the principle of selection will always be a door of escape not only for the bad, but also for the good works.

As a matter of fact, the principle of careful selection, exercised on a large scale, means an expenditure of time and labour on the part of a staff of specialists which in the end would be most serious, and it would invariably lead to many of the rejected, and therefore lost works being purchased in after years, when out of print, by the several libraries at exorbitant prices.

Can we measure the untold loss of time, money, health and intellect that has been spent (alas, all too contentedly) by bibliographers in recovering *lost books*? It is impossible to help contrasting the anxiety shown for the discovery of lost pages of past history compared with the comparative indifference shown for the preservation of the pages of present and future history. And remember that the work must eventually be done by someone.

In the one case it will be performed by trained experts, working together under the very best condition, at a minimum cost of money, time and labour, and with comparatively perfect results—done *completely once and for ever*.

In the other case the work will be attempted over and over again for years to come by untrained hands, who will waste, not only their own time, but what is more important—the time of us

librarians—in futile attempts to recover lost records; and if private individuals endeavour to make good the lack of public enterprise, such attempts will generally result in bibliographical work which will violate all the chief essentials which we have already considered.

Mr. Panizzi went to the root of the matter when he stated that “you cannot have a large library and a short catalogue, nor a long catalogue and a short index”; and, in extension of the same truth, it is contrary to all the dictates of reason that we should have a large National Literature and rest content with a stunted record of it.

### Periodical Special Bibliographies.

Again (alluding to a matter which is dependent on National Book Registration), it has never yet been fully recognised that one of the great wants of the day in the world of literature is a *complete system* of Special Bibliographies to cover the whole range of English Literature at home, and this quite apart from the necessity of “Selected Subject-Catalogues” and “Indexes of Matters.”

It has never been sufficiently recognised that Special Bibliographers as a class, as we know them, are an intolerable nuisance, and a species of bibliographical hypocrisy, because they make believe to satisfy wants which they do not satisfy, and which, under existing conditions, they can never satisfy.

Nor has it yet been conceded that the work of compiling Special Bibliographies should be performed by the State, on *one continuous system*, instead of being left to the mercy of chance bibliographers.

And in connection with such a system, it remains to be recognised that the **actual work of compiling Special Bibliographies is a work which should precede all other catalogue work.**

According to present traditions, if we attempt the work at all, we catalogue books first and re-catalogue them in Special Bibliographies afterwards. We should adopt exactly the reverse method, for by striking out the extra descriptive matter in a bibliographical title, the slip is ready for the printer of the ordinary catalogue-titles, without the necessity for a second examination of the book, whereas according to present methods a book has always to be examined and catalogued twice, thus necessitating exactly double the work.

And similarly, as Mr. Winter Jones pointed out in the course of his Inaugural Address to the London Conference of Librarians, in 1877, the titles for an Index of Matters should be written at the moment when a book is first examined for cataloguing purposes (thus saving the necessity for a *third* examination of a book).

In short, to perform all the bibliographical work ever needed in connection with a book, *simultaneously*, avoids not only the necessity for subsequent re-examinations, but also the necessity for the repeated moving of the books of a whole library to and from the librarians' tables.

And, be it observed, what is of infinite importance, that in regard to the system of National Book-Registration and National Special Bibliographies compilation, if the work be done properly once and for all, there will be no need for modern literature ever to be catalogued again in manuscript. For all that librarians will have to do is to cut the titles out of the National Periodical Lists, and incorporate them with their other accessions ready for the printer. And if provincial libraries require abbreviated titles, well, it would be the easiest thing in the world to supply special Periodical Lists with Titles abbreviated in conformity with the wants of free public libraries.

In regard to this last point I speak a little theoretically without actual practical experience of the working of such a theory, and therefore, I must leave it for those present afterwards to say whether they think the idea would be eventually saving of time.

Finally, if we may place faith in the technical possibilities of the scheme propounded by Mr. William Cooley, Secretary to the Hakluyt Society, before the British Museum Commission in 1849 (and I confess on a brief examination, his general views, as expounded in the *Athenæum* of 1850, appear to me to be most masterly), the bibliographical facilities afforded by cutting up pages of stereotyped titles seem boundless.

### **Fallacy *re* Impossibility of Classification.**

It is necessary here to refer to the old-fashioned argument that Bibliographers can never agree together on any one system of Classification. For this is one of the most deadly arguments brought against the idea of a system of Special Bibliographies, and one which I trust we shall trample under foot.

Of course we shall never agree to any *detailed* systems of Classification. Mr. Panizzi clearly demonstrated in the year 1849, that wherever science is involved, in accordance with the fresh increase of scientific knowledge year by year, all *detailed* classification of scientific Class-Catalogues will periodically become obsolete and therefore most troublesome, if not altogether useless.

But this objection does not apply to the use of broad, well-defined groups of sub-classification, such, for instance, as is in vogue for purposes of shelf-placing in the free public libraries.

And there is good reason to suppose that when once a system of *Broad-group* Bibliographies is well started, it will be found easily possible to use the same materials for purposes of sub-group classification, by the issue of a large number of smaller Bibliographies required.

However this may be, one thing is very certain, that people *will* have Special Bibliographies, whatever we may say, because they supply a legitimate want.

We may, therefore, just as well take the matter seriously in hand and see that it is done properly once and for ever, instead of allowing it to be done badly. And on this head be it remembered that the curse of bad work does not always end with itself, but often not only delays but actually prohibits the work from ever being properly carried out.

### Division of Stream of Literature.

I have now referred to several matters of great moment, but I have not even yet mentioned one of the most serious defects in Bibliography. I allude to the evils resulting from the division of the stream of Bibliography into several channels.

And so important is this matter, that although I have remarked on the subject on a previous occasion, I will again ask your most earnest attention to this part of my paper.

To put the matter bluntly, we have stumbled over the meaning of the word *book*! We have allowed the traditional significance of the word to interfere with its true bibliographical sense. **What is a book?**

Six men write six works upon Agricultural Science.

1. One publishes his work separately, and men call it a "book."

2. The second work is buried in a "Collected Works" series, which is generally provided for by one vague title.

3. The third appears through the medium of a learned society journal, and it is called an "article."

4. The fourth appears also as an "article" in a magazine of the day.

5. The fifth appears as a contribution to a National Encyclopædia.

6. The sixth appears by instalments in an enterprising newspaper.

Possibly the separately-issued book is the shortest, often the most worthless of the six works. But traditionally it is a "book," and therefore has a full-entry title assigned to it, in most of the catalogues of the world.

The five remaining works are considered to be "only articles," and victimised as such; therefore, except in the instance of certain catalogues, they are deemed unfit for further notice, and soon become comparatively lost to the world.

A kind Bibliographer may occasionally hunt them out and insert them in his Special Bibliography. (He probably will fail to come across them.) They will not be entered in an *Authors' Catalogue* because they are "articles." For the same reason they will be excluded from Subject-Catalogues.

And it is only due to unrequited private enterprise that they will be *indexed* (necessarily with abbreviated titles).

Now this is all wrong. And to sum up the excuses urged in the matter, we are told that they are only "ephemeral"!

This may be true in one sense. But practically it is quite a delusion. They are no more ephemeral than half the worthless productions of literature issued in the shape of books—indeed, far less so, for articles *must* conform to a certain standard, and at any rate reflect closely the life and thought of the day.

The above is sufficient to show that no man can be certain of obtaining all the information he requires without seeking in six different directions, and—having regard to the Division of State Papers—without having often to investigate twelve different sources of information, an impossible task.

It remains, therefore, to remedy this great evil. And it will never be remedied until we recognise the necessity of regarding each work in periodical and collected literature as a *book*, giving its full title as such, from the very first. Thanks to private enterprise, often unappreciated, in America and England, *Indexes* of a high character to periodical literature have been compiled. But there is yet much to be done in the matter. And there is no

remedy short of the institution of complete series of *separate* Periodical and Continuous Authors' Catalogues, Class Catalogues, and Indexes, dealing first with the parts and then with the whole of the periodical literature contained in the journals of learned societies and in the magazines of the day.

With a perfect organisation, the same might be done for books buried in Collected-Works Series.

This done, it would then be possible to re-draft the lost "books," into their proper channels in the main stream of literature, and one of the most necessary tasks in our National Bibliography would be an accomplished fact.

### **Intermuddling of National Literatures.**

Another evil of Bibliography which I must protest against is the practice of one country meddling in the Bibliography of another, a most pernicious system which has resulted in the intermuddling of national literature.

There is no principle more sound and necessary than that **each country must perform its own Bibliography**; and that if it has a craving to undertake its neighbour's duties, at least it must first perform its own properly, and in any record it may choose to make, it must first record its own Literature *separately*, before mixing the record of it with that of other countries.

Of course the obvious theory of International Bibliography is the evolution from the unit to the aggregate, and yet we frequently find the principle of "**Bibliography backwards**" pursued here—men attempting to catalogue the literature of the world, before cataloguing the parts of it.

Obviously all such attempts must be failures. It is only the individual country which has the power and the opportunity to make a complete record of its own literature.

### ***Re* General Catalogue of English Literature.**

Now, while I have been enumerating what I conceive to be some of the chief points in Bibliography which must engage our best efforts in the future, I am quite aware that the general subject has already been considered on several previous occasions in connection with the project of a

### **Catalogue of English Literature.**

And it is because it has been seriously discussed that I wish to refer to it for one moment in order to provoke further dis-

cussion on a matter for which I will again ask your most serious consideration and attention.

Now I do not wish in any way unnecessarily to throw cold water on the project; but I do feel very strongly that the moment is premature for furthering the idea. After considerable study of the question, I can arrive at no other conclusion than that we are attempting a gigantic task without first sufficiently realising the necessary conditions of success.

I have stated before that each country must *first* (I lay great emphasis on the *first*) record its own Bibliography separately before there be any attempt at international incorporation of literature.

In view of the tremendous arrears of disordered Bibliography, I have urged the necessity of first staying the flow of disorder of *to-day*, and of thus dealing radically with the present before attempting to deal with the past.

In spite, however, of these apparent essentials, if I judge aright, the present intention in connection with a general catalogue of English literature is to commence a general attack on English literature, including the literature of the Australian Colonies and America. But I would urge that the conditions necessary for the success of such an effort do not yet exist.

Before a Catalogue of All English Literature worthy of the name can be compiled, it will be necessary for each of the English-speaking countries to compile separate catalogues of the literature actually originating in each country. And before this can be done, it will be necessary to investigate some very intricate problems in connection with the treatment of official documents which, especially in America, India, and the Colonies, contribute so largely to English literature.

It will be necessary, moreover, to reconsider the bibliographical treatment of the great section of periodical literature, a matter already alluded to, and one the importance of which cannot be exaggerated.

Now, at the present moment neither the official nor the periodical literature of any country in the world has yet been catalogued, nor are there signs of any disposition to investigate the theories, a knowledge of which can alone render the attempt possible.

I do not question for one moment the possibility of obtaining records of an enormous mass of English literature within a comparatively short period of time. But I do most strongly assert



that the machinery does not yet exist adequate for so great an enterprise, and that we have yet a great deal to learn before we rashly embark upon what can only be a huge experiment, certain to be a comparative failure, if it is to be judged by the essentials of completeness and certainty.

We are committing the great error of trying to conjure the "*whole*" into existence before the "*parts*" are complete—the old mistake of working backwards to the unit instead of forwards from the unit.

No! the proper method of procedure is to first get the Bibliography of each country into perfect working order before we attempt to combine the parts and incorporate the whole together.

And instead of dealing with all time, we should be content first to deal with single years until we are certain of our methods.

Let us quickly devise a system to deal with the *present*, commencing, perhaps, with the year 1895, and making all efforts to secure the institution of corresponding systems in America and the Colonies.

In two years we shall, then, at comparatively small expense and trouble, be able to exhibit a practical working system of Bibliography, and thus be able to remodel the past to the present.

And if this be not feasible—if we fail to devise a plan for introducing order into the literature of a single year to-day, it is very certain that we shall never succeed in attempting to evolve order when we attempt to deal with the *centuries*.

### **Conflicting Claims of Ancient and Modern Bibliography.**

Finally, there is another difficulty of a different nature, which I would submit to your consideration, viz., the need for the reasonable adjustment of the conflicting claims of ancient and modern Bibliography in regard to the attention, time, and money support to be accorded to each.

It is quite possible for men to combine a real love and appreciation of all that is beautiful and of real interest in the old book-world with a practical appreciation also of the claims of Modern Bibliography. But is this always the case? It is by no means an unfounded complaint that the progress of Modern Bibliography in the new world is held back by that of the old world, and that Bibliographers too often live in the

past instead of living in the future. And this is a practical difficulty which yet remains to be solved. It appears certain that there is yet much of ancient bibliographical work to be done before Bibliographers are satisfied. But why should the *New Bibliography* suffer for the sins of the *Old*? Why is the failure of the past to prevent the success of the future?

Surely (and I trust the opinion of those present is with me), surely, the first duty which lies before us is at once to close the flood-gates of bibliographical disaster, and at once to concentrate all our energies on devising a system by which we can evolve order out of chaos for to-day. When this is done, and we have got a well-organised system in proper working order, then is the time, and *then* only, to work backward and strive to remodel the Bibliography of the past time to that of to-day?

What, then, is the plan to be pursued?

In answer, it is impossible to give the details in a paper such as this. But, as far as the main features are concerned, this must be the programme of the future.

### Programme.

The Institution of:—

1. Training College for Librarians.
2. Fund in support of *Modern* Bibliographical research.
3. National Bibliographical Bureau, including :—
  - (a) Registration Branch.
  - (b) Special Bibliographies Branch.
  - (c) Periodical Literature Branch.
  - (d) Indexing Branch.
  - (e) International Bibliographical Branch.
  - (f) State-Papers Branch.
  - (g) Provincial and Municipal Official Literature Branch.

The establishment of such a Bureau corresponds, amongst other things, to the following work to be performed :—

### General Literature.

- (a) The establishment of Compulsory Book-Registration.
- (b) The issues of complete Series of Periodical Special Bibliographies.
- (c i.) The issue of Annual Catalogues of articles contained in Publications of Learned Societies.

(c ii.) The issue of Annual Catalogues (apart from Indexes) of the articles contained in the Magazines and Reviews, &c.

(d) The issue of Series of Indexes according to the wants to be supplied.

(e) The issue of International Lists, showing the annual contribution of this country to the literature of every other country.

#### Official Literature.

(f i.) The issue of Annual Catalogues (not merely Indexes) of State Papers, both at Home and in the Colonies.

(f ii.) The issue of *Continuous* Catalogues of the Home and Colonial State Papers from the year 1800.

(f iii.) The Issue of Special Catalogues of selected Areas and Subjects—*e.g.*, of the Official Documents relating :—To England, Scotland, Ireland, and Wales separately. To each of the Colonies and India separately. To the Army and Navy. To Agriculture, Commerce, Labour, Education, Sanitation, &c., &c., &c.

(g) The issue of Catalogues of Official County and Municipal Literature.

#### Conclusion.

Such being the programme to be carried out, it remains to be considered how it can be best put into execution. I have stated my opinion and firm conviction, after much careful study of the matter, that the work can alone be satisfactorily performed by the State. But the programme alluded to involves a considerable expenditure of money, and of course no vote could reasonably be expected from Government until we are prepared to put forward definite proposals on the matter, supported by the opinion of the majority of librarians in the country. How, then, are we to proceed?

There are numerous agencies which might contribute to the solution of the problem. Of these, the two most prominent ones are the Library Association and the Bibliographical Society. The former Society, in addition to its immediate work, has rendered invaluable aid in the past to the cause of general Bibliography, a debt which can never be sufficiently acknowledged. But, of course, it has even yet an all too formidable task in the administration and further promotion of the Free Library movement.

The latter Society, fresh starting, has a great future before it. But it is a question open to fair debate, and a most momentous one, as to whether two Societies alone are sufficient to cope with the formidable task confronting us.

There are those who wonder whether it may not be necessary to look to the establishment of additional Special Societies, devoted exclusively to the development of *Modern Bibliography*, and pledged to the speedy special investigation of the several sections of it enumerated. It is very certain that there is more than enough work to occupy the energies, for many years to come, of the following auxiliary Societies, which, if formed, should meet together once a year in Annual Conference to report progress and discuss their work.

(a) A Society for the establishment of Compulsory Book-Registration.

(b) A Society for the investigation of Subject-Classification, and the work of compiling Periodical Special Bibliographies.

(c) A Society to investigate the Bibliography of Periodical Literature.

(d) An Index Society.

(e) An International Bibliographical Society.

(f) An Official State Papers Bibliographical Society.

(g) A County and Municipal Official Literature Society.

The above suggestions are, of course, obviously open to the cynical retort, "Get your societies."

But such a reply will be no proof against the desirability of their existence.

It may well be that the time will come when the need for so many societies will disappear. Very well, then. Let them vanish. When they have done their work, *then* they may lie down and die, but not till then.

I am quite aware of the natural objection to the multiplication of kindred societies. They are apt to lead to unnecessary divisions and unhappy rivalries in matters where Bibliographers should be prepared to meet one another half way to combine in one united effort.

But I see no other prospect of a due recognition of the claims of modern Bibliography except on these lines, where Bibliographers can combine to promote the development of the several branches in which they are most interested.

I shall, therefore, be most anxious to know what is the opinion of this meeting on the subject.

Whether, however, my suggestions may meet with approval or not, there is one thing certain, viz., that we are already half a century behind the times in Bibliography, and we are not moving fast enough.

In the year 1850, if we consult a most remarkable article in the *Athenæum* of that date, we shall find notice of a project, for which I have theoretically great respect, to form a Universal Printed Catalogue of the literature of the world.

In the year 1877, Mr. Cornelius Walford formally propounded before this Association the plan of a complete general catalogue of English literature, a project which has been considerably discussed of late. (And in the same year Mr. Henry Stevens suggested the establishment of a "National Clearing House.")

But we are no nearer the accomplishment of these projects than we were fifty or twenty years ago—in fact, we are rather further off, because we have an additional fifty or twenty years' accumulation to deal with. And these two projects are only two of many others of even greater importance waiting to be carried out.

And why this want of progress?

Simply because we persist in trying to create the whole before we have formed the parts; and because we fail to recognise what an amount of theoretical and practical investigation of the subject is necessary before we can possibly be in a position to commence operations aright; because we have ignored the necessity for the institution of permanent *special* associations of Bibliographers to be responsible for the maintenance of such investigations; because we continue to delude ourselves that it is possible for private enterprise to carry out that which the State alone can perform; and because we expect that Bibliography will evolve itself without a preliminary expenditure of money.

We continue to build libraries and to accumulate books, but we have *not* paid sufficient attention to making books still more accessible for research. Our attention has been too exclusively concentrated on collections in particular libraries, to the neglect of the great annual national collection pouring from the press.

Moreover, we have become too contentedly accustomed to the idea of confusion, and have grown to regard it as a natural and a necessary evil.

But it is high time to rise and shake ourselves free from the trammels of past traditions.

We have roads and railways and rivers free of access to all. But the channels of *printed* thought communication are yet horribly blocked. It remains for us to clear them.

If the work is not to be performed as here suggested, *how* is it to be done? And *who* is to make the effort?

---



**Memorandum relative to the need for Special Bibliographical Societies, with an appendix on the division of the Stream of Literature, by F. B. F. Campbell.**

A Paper submitted to the "Library Association," September, 1894, in illustration of "The Bibliography of the Future."



### **Special Bibliographical Societies.**

In connection with the suggested need for additional Bibliographical Societies, the following Memorandum will give some idea of the pressing claims of Modern Bibliography.

**(a) Society for the promotion of the Establishment of Compulsory Book Registration.**

The work to be performed would be :—

1. To consider the Report of the Copyright Commission of 1878 in special reference to the demands of National Bibliography.
2. To watch the progress of any Copyright Amendment Bill when introduced into Parliament.
3. To take measures for the effective voluntary Registration of *Privately Printed* Books.
4. To investigate the general possibilities of the internal organisation of a Book-Registration Bureau.
5. To endeavour (through the Agency of the International Bibliographical Society) to promote the establishment of compulsory Book-Registration throughout the world.

**(b) Society for the Investigation of Subject-Classification, and the Work of Compiling Periodical Special Bibliographies.**

The work of this Society would be :—

To examine and report on the existing Literature of Classification, more especially in reference to those systems already tried and found useful—special attention to be paid to the systems of classification already adopted in the record of National Literature of the more important countries.

To inquire into the possibility of the compilation of the "Catalogue of Special Bibliographies of English Literature," recommended by Mr. Chancellor Christie :

To inquire into the possibilities of the issue of Catalogues of the Special Bibliographies printed in Foreign Countries.

*Do.* in the Colonies.

— the possibilities of the issue of Critical Commentaries on the Special Bibliographies already issued.

(a) In the United Kingdom.

(b) In Foreign Countries.

(c) In the Colonies.

— the possibility of maintaining an exact annual Record of all Bibliographies issued in the future.

— the possibility of the issue of Catalogues incorporating the contribution of all countries to the series of *Universal Special Bibliographies*.

To consider the classification to be adopted in regard to a complete Large-Group system of Periodical Special Bibliographies covering the whole range of National Literature.

To consider the possibilities of the subsequent issue of a series of smaller Bibliographies answering to Dr. Garnett's description of an ideal Sectional Subject Catalogue—"where everybody would find what he wanted, and nobody what he did not want," and which everybody could *purchase* separately, without having to *purchase* additional matter not required.

To endeavour to stay the world-wide pernicious custom of burying Special Bibliographies in the pages of Periodical Publications, without issuing *separate* copies of the same with proper titles.

The necessity for the consideration of the important subject of *Method in Bibliography* has already been urged by Mr. Falconer Madan before the Bibliographical Society.

#### (c) **Society for the Investigation of the Bibliography of Periodical Literature.**

The Work of this Society will be :—

1. To keep a Register of all Learned Societies.
2. To investigate and report on the existing Catalogues, Indexes, &c., in the world of Periodical Literature.
3. To investigate and report on the various systems of publication pursued by Editors, with a view to securing greater uniformity in details of publication adapted to the special needs of Bibliography.

---

(<sup>1</sup> Including *all* the Publications of Learned Societies.)

## 4. To prevail on Societies to issue :—

Annual Lists of Publications arranged numerically

Do. Do. by Authors ;

Do. Do. by Classes (?) ;

Annual Subject Indexes ;

and to supply separate special copies of the same to the Bibliographical Bureau.

*(Every Society which exists for the investigation and diffusion of knowledge is a debtor to the cause of Bibliography.)*

The contribution of such Reference Lists would greatly facilitate the work of the Bureau in the supply of Reference Works relating to Periodical Literature.

The following are a few of the questions relative to the Bibliography of Periodical Literature which we ought to be able to answer in the affirmative :—

## Learned Societies of Great Britain and Ireland.

- (1) Is there a complete Authors' Catalogue of all the works ("Articles," &c.) printed by the Learned Societies during any given year ?
- (2) Is there a Ten-year or Five-year Authors' Catalogue of the same, dating from the year 1800 ?
- (3) Is there a complete system of Special Bibliographies in which the works ("Articles," &c.) printed by the Learned Societies, are classed in *Large-Group* order of subject for any given year ?
- (4) Is there a similar system of Ten-year Special Bibliographies dating from the year 1800 ?
- (5) Is there a complete system of Special Bibliographies in which the works, ("Articles," &c.) printed by the Learned Societies, are classed in *Small-Group* order of subject for any one year ?
- (6) Is there a similar system of Ten-year Special Bibliographies dating from the year 1800 ?
- (7) Is there a system of *Large-Group* Subject Indexes (*abbreviated entries*) to the works ("Articles," &c.) printed by the Learned Societies during any one year ?
- (8) Is there a similar system of Ten-year Subject Indexes dating from the year 1800 ?
- (9) Is there a General Subject-Index (*abbreviated entries*) to the works ("Articles," &c.) printed by the Learned Societies during any one year ?
- (10) Is there a similar system of Ten-year Indexes dating from 1800 ?

## Magazines and Reviews.

And in reference to the articles contained in the Magazines and Reviews, we ought to be able to answer the same questions, in regard to the existence of :—

- { (1) Authors' Catalogues (Annual).
- { (2)       "       (Ten Years).
- { (3) Large-Group Special Bibliographies (Annual).
- { (4)       "       (Ten Years).
- { (5) Small-Group Special Bibliographies (Annual).
- { (6)       "       (Ten Years).
- { (7) Large-Group Subject Indexes (Annual).
- { (8)       "       (Ten Years).
- { (9) General Subject-Indexes (Annual).
- { (10)      "       (Ten Years).

Apart from the above remarks, there are many other connected matters which require investigation.

It might not be unreasonable to ask every *individual* Learned Society, as its contribution to Bibliography, to prepare Chronological Catalogues, Authors' Catalogues, Subject-Catalogues (Large-Group and Small-Group) and Subject Indexes relating to the Literature it has created during the course of the present century up to the year 1900.

There is also the question of Works of Reference—to contain *selected* entries only.

Finally, it will be necessary to consider the advisability of the issue of Annual Lists of works contributed by this branch towards the Literature of Foreign countries, and the possibility of obtaining like returns.

NOTE.—*Since the Publications of Learned Societies are chiefly periodical in nature, it is convenient to consider them under the head of Periodical Literature.*

#### (d) **An Index Society.**

In regard to the work of Indexing, the writer cannot claim any experience. But it is obvious that if a majority of Books require Indexes, both to their contents and titles—both individually and in varying combinations—there must be a vast amount of past and future Indexing Work to be performed, which should be investigated, promoted, guided and directed, if possible, by one authority.

The recent project of a "College of Indexers," viewed in connection with the large amount of Index Work performed in America rather than in the United Kingdom, all points to the same conclusion, viz., the necessity for a new Index Society, which should *continue* the good work of the former Society, but confine itself

strictly to the consideration of the measures necessary for the proper compilation of

Indexes to the Contents of particular *Books*.

Indexes to the Titles of *Books*.

The theoretical work of the Society should be comparatively easy, owing to the attention already bestowed on the subject by a number of specialists, whose names it would be invidious to select from.

The difficulties would be those of *organisation* and *selection*, rather than difficulties of classification. At the same time a perusal of the "Eleventh Annual Report of the American Committee on Indexing Chemical Literature," 1893, would seem to suggest grave responsibility in regard to the logical selection of subjects and *combination of subjects* (the literature of which it may be desirable to index), lest we eventually require *Indexes to Indexes to Indexes*.

Mention should be made of the necessity for the co-operation of Publishers, Editors, and Authors, who might render great assistance by contributing Extra copies of all Indexes printed to a Central Body of Indexers (which in many instances would itself perform the work).

(c) **G. B. & I. Branch of an International Bibliographical Society.**

The work of this Society would be:—

- (1) To Investigate the Bibliographical methods of the Colonies and Foreign Countries, with a view to a clear understanding of the same, and the appropriation of whatever is worthy of imitation.
- (2) To issue Printed Reports explanatory of such Colonial and Foreign systems of Bibliography for home use.
- (3) To endeavour to secure the institution of responsible International Bibliographical Agencies in other Countries, with which correspondence may be maintained.
- (4) To endeavour to promote the adoption of compulsory Book Registration in those Countries where it does not exist, and to improve the systems already initiated.
- (5) To superintend the issue of Annual Catalogues showing the contribution of this Country to the literature of every other Country.
- (6) To issue occasional Reports for home and international

circulation, explanatory of the Bibliographical system of the United Kingdom, with latest details.

(7) To endeavour to obtain the issue, on the part of other Countries, of Annual Catalogues showing the yearly contribution of such Countries to the Literature of the United Kingdom.

(8) Finally, one of the most important functions of the Society would be (acting on the recommendations of the State-Papers Society) to promote the adoption of a proper system of "*State-Papers*" Bibliography throughout the world.

(f) **An Official State-Papers Bibliographical Society.**

The duties of this Society would be:—

(1) To investigate the theory of the Bibliography of State-Papers.

(2) To report upon existing Reference works connected with the State-Papers of the United Kingdom with reference to possible improvements.

(3) To report upon the possibility of the issue of one Annual Catalogue of State-Papers, which shall include the entry of *all* Official Reports issued during the year, under the Departments responsible for the same (apart from the question of Separate Sale-Catalogues issued by the larger Departments).

(4) To report upon the possibility of the issue of *one* Annual Catalogue, which shall include the entry of *all* the Official Reports issued during the year, arranged primarily according to *Subjects*.

(5) To report upon the need for a Continuous Catalogue of all the State-Papers of the United Kingdom, from the year 1800.

(6) To report upon the proposed issue of Special Catalogues of State-Papers relating to selected areas and subjects—*e.g.*, of the Official documents relating to:—

England...	...	Since 1800.	...	Annually.
Scotland	...	...	"	...
Ireland ...	...	...	"	...
Wales ...	...	...	"	...
India ...	...	...	"	...
The Colonies	...	...	"	...
The Army (?)	...	...	"	...
The Navy (?)	..	...	"	...
Agriculture	...	...	"	...

Commerce	...	Since 1800.	...	Ten-Yearly.
Labour	...	...	„	...
Education	...	...	„	...
Sanitation, &c., &c.	...	...	„	...

(7) To report upon the desirability of the institution of an Annual Review of State-Papers.

(8) To report upon the possibility (through the agency of the International Bibliographical Society) of promoting the adoption of similar measures in regard to the State-Papers of the Colonies and Foreign Countries.

At the present moment (as far as the writer is aware), with the exception of India (*Quarterly*), Canada and the United States (*Monthly*, edited by J. H. Hickcox), there is no single country in the world (abroad) which prints or publishes any Annual Catalogue of the numerous State-Papers issued, not to mention the utter absence of *Continuation Catalogues*. This is a disgrace to civilisation.

**(g) County and Municipal Literature Society.**

At a time when Local Government is becoming so rapidly developed, it follows as a matter of course that a very considerable official Literature must be produced, relating to the administration of Counties and Towns, apart from what has already existed in reference to the life of our great cities.

It becomes therefore positively necessary that steps should be taken throughout the country to duly record such Literature and make it readily accessible for reference, while the task is yet possible.

NOTE.—Since the above was written the U. S. Government has commenced the issue of *Periodical Official Catalogues of Public Documents*.

This is all the more necessary because probably the majority of the reports alluded to, would not fall under the Copyright Act, as the present law stands.

Probably little difficulty would be experienced in persuading the several authorities to take the requisite steps. But even if this be accomplished it will be very necessary for the cataloguing work to be directed according to *one* system and from *one* centre. Everything points to the necessity for the formation of a Special Library in London to collect such Literature under one roof, and for the control of this branch of Bibliography by the State.

## APPENDIX.

## The Division of the Stream of Literature.

Theoretically, all Literature consists of *Separate Works*.

In order to make such works fully accessible to the student, the following "Works of Reference" are necessary :—

- (1) Authors' Catalogue.
- (2) Title Catalogue.
- Subject Catalogues.
- (3) *Large-Group Catalogue.*
- (4) *Small-Group Catalogue.*
- (5) Subject Index ("Index of Matters").

in all, five Reference-Works.

Practically, however, the stream of General Literature divides into four<sup>1</sup> additional channels, each of which contains *Collections of Separate Works*, each of which works (independently of the particular form in which it is "collected") is *bibliographically* a Book.

Thus, instead of having *one* class of Literature to consider, there are *five* distinct classes, each of which must be similarly treated, if we wish for COMPLETE Bibliography.

If, then, five Reference-Works are required for the one class of "Separate Works," and it be true that the remaining classes consist also of "Separate Works" (collected) requiring corresponding Bibliographical treatment, it follows, then, that an equal number of "Reference-Works" are required for each of the remaining four classes—the whole amounting to twenty-five Reference-Works *per annum*—before we can claim to have mastered the General Bibliography of a single country for a single year.

Class 1. Separate Works	...	..	..	..	(General and Special)	× 5
„ 2. Works of Reference (Encyclopædias, &c.)					„	× 5
„ 3. Collected Works	..	..	..	..	„	× 5
„ 4. Learned Society Publications	..	..			„	× 5
„ 5. Magazines and Reviews	..	..	..		„	× 5
Works of Reference						} 25
per Annum.						

<sup>1</sup> Works of Reference (Encyclopædias, &c.).  
Collected Works.  
Learned Society Publications.  
Magazines and Reviews,  
(to which might sometimes be added :)  
Newspapers.



It is true that the above calculation is liable to certain objections. It may be urged that the need for Title-Catalogues is limited (*if* we could get rid of the Anonymous works), and, secondly, that Encyclopædias being such obvious sources of intentionally separated information, the "Separate Works" so often contained in them cannot be lost, even if their existence be not always generally known to the public.

On the other hand, to balance these objections, it is equally plain that the region of Special Bibliography presents such unlimited scope for the necessary compilation of Periodical Reference-Works, as to more than counterbalance any apparent overstatement of figures.

Having thus dealt with the parts, it becomes ultimately necessary that the five parallel Reference-Works of each of the five classes should be incorporated together in the following manner :—

(1) Authors' Catalogue	{	Class 1.
		" 2.
		" 3.
		" 4.
		" 5.

(2) Title Catalogue ...	{	Class 1.
		" 2.
		" 3.
		" 4.
		" 5.

#### Subject Catalogues.

(3) Large-Group Catalogue	{	Class 1.
		" 2.
		" 3.
		" 4.
		" 5.

(4) Small-Group Catalogue	{	Class 1.
		" 2.
		" 3.
		" 4.
		" 5.

(5) Subject Index ...	{	Class 1.
		" 2.
		" 3.
		" 4.
		" 5.

thus reducing the necessity of searching twenty-five Reference-Works by four-fifths.

Hitherto, however, reference has only been made to *General Literature*. There remains, therefore, the Second great Division of *Official Literature*, consisting of "State-Papers," and a minor Division of Local (Provincial and Municipal) *Official Literature*. Omitting all reference to the Local *Official Literature*, the great Division of State-Papers would require the compilation of practically an equal number of Reference-Works, *if State-Papers are printed to be read*.

In the first place, State-Papers would have to be subjected to the process already described, in order to discover the reports of a Geographical, Historical, Scientific, Art, or Personal nature, duplicate entries of which are also required in the General Literature Catalogues.

Secondly, State-Papers, although not requiring Authors' or Title Catalogues, require the issue of a considerable number of minor Class-Catalogues.

Finally, it must be remembered that the number of Catalogues required to complete the record of a single year's Bibliography would necessarily be increased by the issue of Catalogues of *Selected Works*, and by the issue of Catalogues of our International contributions to the Literature of the World.

In regard to the increase of Catalogues as affected by Completeness, by the Divisions of Literature, Place, Time, and the principle of Selection, the following diagram may be useful.

(See next page.)

---

DIVISION I.		DIVISION II.	
GENERAL LITERATURE.	OFFICIAL LITERATURE.		
1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	i. Separate Works.	1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	In reference to a single Country.
1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	ii. Works of Reference.	1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	In reference to 100 Countries.
1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	iii. Ordinary Collected Works.	1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	In reference to a single year.
1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	iv. Works of Learned Societies.	1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	In reference to five and ten of Years.
1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	v. Magazines and Reviews, &c.	1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	In reference to Complete Bibliography.
1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index		1. Authors' Catalogue 2. Title Catalogue 3. Large-Group Catalogue 4. Small-Group Catalogue 5. Specific-Subject Catalogue 6. Subject Index	In reference to Selected Bibliography.

### Some Works of Reference, and What They Teach Us.

A Subject Index of the Modern Works added to the Library of the British Museum in the years 1880-1885. Compiled by G. K. Fortescue. Pp. 1004.

British Museum: London, 1886. 8°.

Do. ——— 1885-1890. Pp. vi. 700.

British Museum: London, 1891. 8°.

The above work (*in progress*) confirms and illustrates the necessity for the existence of Catalogues of *Selected Literature*, as *supplementary to (not as substitutes for)* the more complete and comprehensive Works of Reference required in National Libraries.

There are students innumerable whose researches in modern literature are not of an exhaustive character, but who require the best and most recent works on any subject, added to the collections in a National Library.

To such students, the above work is invaluable, and its value is enhanced from its character of a Specific Subject Catalogue. This is the term which seems to me to most accurately designate its nature.

I call it a *Catalogue*, because it has *full titles* as opposed to *abbreviated* ones.

It may be called a *specific Subject Catalogue*, because its main purpose and use is to direct a person to the books existing on a particular subject, independently of that subject happening to be

A large group as "Zoology;"

A smaller group as "Birds;"

A smaller group as "Pheasant."

But inasmuch as large collections of *units* are bound to develop into groups of increasing size, so the entries of titles relating to the smaller groups increase very greatly; and thus a work which is primarily a *Specific Subject Catalogue*, gradually assumes the additional character of a *Small-Group Subject Catalogue*, which constitutes an additional self-developed advantage.

It should be noted, however, that, apart from its nature of a *Specific Subject Catalogue*, and a *Small-Group Subject Catalogue*,

Mr. Fortescue's work includes, in certain degrees, the elements of a *Territorial Catalogue*, that is to say, under each country, "*Sub-headings will be found for works on the National Antiquities, Army, Colonies, Constitution and Government, History, Law, Navy, Politics, Social Life, Topography, Trade and Finance*"; but the Territorial element exists only in part, for the Compiler states that "*Works on the Agriculture, Art, Botany, Education, Folk-Lore, Geology, Heraldry and Genealogy, Land Tenure, Mineralogy, Police, Railways, and Topography of each country are treated independently, and will be found under those headings.*"

The lesson we learn from this divided policy, is not that it is necessarily a wrong policy to pursue, within certain limits (for it is certainly more natural to think of the Topography of France than the France of Topography!) but that there is something still wanting in the world of Reference-Books, *viz.*, complete *Territorial Catalogues*, which shall show ALL works relating to each country, arranged so that the subject is always subordinate to the particular country.

It should be remembered that, for reasons stated, the work under review does not include certain works of the class of individual Novels, Poems, Plays, and other works concerning which it is hard or invidious to distinguish, and which it is natural to look for and possible to find in the Authors' Catalogue of the Library.

#### **The Authors' Catalogue (British Museum Library).**

It will be unnecessary for me to refer at length to this splendid achievement in the world of Bibliography, beyond making the following brief remarks:—

For any library of great size (especially when books count by the million) the kinds of Catalogues required depend chiefly upon financial circumstances.

There are several kinds of Works of Reference required, which should be compiled simultaneously. But if choice has to be made between them, an *Authors' Catalogue* is of the first importance (in a large library); the first requisite being *to find an individual work with speed and certainty*, an event which nothing but an *Authors' Catalogue* can ensure. For this reason, the world at large owes a debt of gratitude to Sir Anthony Panizzi, for having been the means of instituting the Authors' Catalogue of the British Museum (on lines mainly as we know it now).

Its chief and intended advantages are, then, the following:—

- (1) It is the form of Catalogue most necessary in such a library, if choice has to be made.
- (2) By entering a work under its Author (or according to *Author* Rules, if the authorship is unknown, disguised, or of minor importance), any individual work can be found with speed and certainty on knowing the name of Author and Title.
- (3) Since the Titles are fully drawn out, there is small chance of erroneous or imperfect descriptions, so that foreigners and others, can obtain full and accurate information as to works in the Library which are of interest to them, and may journey from the other end of the earth without being disappointed in their expectations.

But this is only secured by very strict rules, the necessity of which is obvious, for if once any real licence in discretion be permitted, all certainty would vanish.

The necessity for fulness of title, in order to secure accuracy, is also of the highest importance, when it is realized that these titles are and will be quoted far and wide on the authority of the "British Museum Catalogue."

Personally, I think that the Catalogue under review should be alluded to as the *Authors' Catalogue*, and not as the *Alphabetical Catalogue*, for other Catalogues are also *Alphabetical*, which are in no sense *Authors' Catalogues*.

The most accurate phrase would probably be the *General Authors' Catalogue*, to emphasize the fact that there are other *Special Catalogues* arranged on the *Authors' System*, in certain Foreign languages. But such a term is too long for ordinary use.

---

## APPENDIX.

**The Relative Structure and Use of "The Annual Literary Index, 1894 (Index to Periodicals of 1894)"** published at the Office of the Publishers' Weekly, New York; **and the "Index to the Periodicals of 1894,"** published at the Office of the Review of Reviews, London.

It is of the highest importance that both Reader and Librarian shall have *definite* knowledge, instead of vague ideas, concerning the difference between one Work of Reference and another. Perhaps this is nowhere better illustrated than in the case of the **American "Annual Literary Index"** ("Index to Periodicals of 1894") and the **English "Index to the Periodicals of 1894."**

Here are two Indexes to the same class of works, which probably the majority of people consult with the idea that they are similar in arrangement; and, indeed, it is not easy at first sight to see in what the difference consists.

Let us try and discover the difference by actual comparison of the entries, relating to Articles appearing in the "Nineteenth Century," of 1894.

"Italian Art at the New Gallery. By C. Whibley."

In an Index, which is *purely an Index of Matters*, we should expect to be able to find this Article under *Italian Art* and *New Gallery*.

We look in the **A** (*American*) Index, and we find it under "*Italian Art*," &c. We do not find it under *New Gallery* (although "*Italian pictures at*" are there entered), nor do we find it under "*Art in Italy*," although there is such an entry. (This latter absence is quite right).

We look in the **E** (*English*) Index, and we are directed from "*Italy*."—"(*Italian Art*") to "*Art*," and under "*Art*" (*New Gallery*) we are directed to "*Art*" ("*Italian Art*"). We look under "*New Gallery*," and are equally directed to "*Art*."

"The Place of Heresy and Schism in the Modern Christian Church. By W. E. Gladstone." In an Index, which is *purely an Index of Matters*, we expect to find this under *Heresy* and *Schism* and *Church* or *Christian Church*.—*Heresy*, &c.

In the **A** Index we find it under "*Heresy and Schism*," and under "*Schism*," but not under *Christian Church* nor *Church*.

In the **E** Index we find the Article under "*Heresy and Schism*," as a Cross-Reference to "*Church and Christianity*." (We do not find it under *Schism*). Under "*Christian Church*" we find another title, "*Can there be Heresy and Schism in the Church?*" (which does not appear in the **A** Index.)

Take another Article, "*The Farce of University Extension*." In the **A** Index you find it as "*University Extension, Farce of*." In the **E** Index you are directed from "*University Extension*" to "*Education*," where you find it under "*Education—University Extension*." "*The Farce of University Extension*."

"*Christian Socialism, by the Duke of Argyll*." In the **A** Index, we find it as "*Socialism, Christian (Argyll)*." In the **E** Index we also find it under "*Socialism Miscellaneous, and Social Science*." In the former work there are only some eighteen Titles under Socialism; and the work is arranged (with abbreviated Title, read backwards) in the alphabetical order of its catch-words, so that it is easy to find.

In the latter case it is arranged with title reading forwards, and, being one of some eighty titles, is not easy to find, for want of alphabetical arrangement.

To take a final case. "*The Press in Turkey*." By H. A. Salmoné."

In the **A** Index we find "*Press, Church and, Relations of*," but nothing about Turkey. We find it, however, under "*Turkey, Press in*," which is, of course, its first place of entry. (?If Italian Art at the New Gallery appears under Italian Art, should not this latter title appear also under *Press*?)

In the **E** Index we are directed from Press to "*Journalism*," where we find "*The Relations of the Church to the Press*," and "*The Press in Turkey, H. A. Salmoné on, &c., &c.*"

The above instances are sufficient to illustrate my paper. They show **what is so hard to discover in the absence of the use of more technical terms and prefatory explanations**, that the two Indexes are compiled on radically different systems, serving two different objects.

The *American* Index is what may be called a **Specific Subject-Index** pure and simple, in which the entries are entered under the immediate subject; the *English* work is a combination of a **Classed Catalogue** and a **Specific Subject-Catalogue**, the words being, if possible, entered rather in Small-Group Subject order,



sometimes under the Specific Subject, and sometimes under *both*. (Thus we find the "Syriac Gospels discovered by Mrs. Lewis in 1892" under both "*Bible and Biblical Criticism*" and "*Syriac Gospels*.")

The A Index refers (in 1894) to some 120 Magazines, and has abbreviated Titles, read backwards, arranged in a second alphabetical order of the *catch-word*, being thus a *bonâ-fide* Index.

The English work has more or less *full* titles, which thus read forwards (being, therefore, rather a Catalogue); but the titles are not arranged in alphabetical order.

The English work refers in 1894, to some 160 Magazines, supplements numerous faulty titles; and, as a Classed Catalogue, is of great value, especially as the several kindred groups are closely connected by very numerous cross-references.

The American Index has Author-entries in a separate part of the volume. The English work, where it includes Author names, incorporates them with the subject headings.

The above is the best I can do to give a fair comparison between the two. If I wished to find an individual article in the leading Magazines, I should use the American Index; if I wished to find a collection of articles on a particular subject, I should use the English work.

F. C.

### Upon the evils of Short-Title Catalogues.

(Being Evidence given by Professor Augustus De Morgan and Mr. Panizzi before the British Museum Commission in 1849.)

The following remarkable and interesting evidence is valuable as showing the extreme importance of fulness and accuracy of title in a *National Catalogue of Literature*. It must be remembered, at the same time, that abridged and Single-line Title-Catalogues have their uses elsewhere in a National system of Bibliography.—F.C.

(The Earl of Ellesmere in the Chair).

*Professor Augustus De Morgan examined, Feb. 22, 1849.*

5708\*. Do you consider fulness, accuracy, and completeness, qualities indispensable to the usefulness of a catalogue?—Accuracy and completeness, most undoubtedly; completeness meaning a complete description of the titles. As to fulness, if your Lordship mean giving every title in full, I think it must be a matter of discretion in some points; but, generally speaking, the safe rule is to give the title in full whenever there is a doubt.

5709\*. Do you think that titles falling short of fulness and accuracy, and drawn up with a view principally of saving time in the publication of the catalogue, would be desirable for such a library as that of the British Museum?—No, nor for any other library whatsoever.

5710\*. (*Lord Seymour.*) In reference to your last answer, do you mean that you object to short and incomplete titles, because it would not answer the purpose of finding the book for a stranger?—No; a short title might answer the purpose of finding the book, but I object to printing and circulating mere finding catalogues under any circumstances, because I have reason to know that a very great deal of inaccurate knowledge is going about, a great part of which is caused by the briefness and inaccuracy of short titles in catalogues.

5711\*. You think a mere finding catalogue altogether objectionable?—Not at all objectionable for finding, but objectionable for every other use.

5712\*. From a national point of view, do you think it would be objectionable for the Museum to put forward that which might be called a mere finding catalogue?—Yes, I do most assuredly, because I feel sure that such a catalogue would be a means of perpetuating a great number of existing mistakes, and also of creating a considerable number of new ones.

5713\*. Can you assist the Commissioners by showing why a catalogue, in favour of which we have had a good deal of evidence, though an imperfect catalogue, merely for the purpose of finding books, would be disadvantageous for the public?—It would give an insufficient account of books—it would confound one book with another—it would induce inaccurate writers to furnish still more insufficient accounts of books, because whatever is printed they will shorten. I should be very glad to give a written list to the Commissioners of the sort of errors which occur; I will make a collection of some.

5714\*. Will you be good enough to send in a list illustrative of that which you have stated?—I will.

5715\*. (*Chairman*). Do you think the time occupied in making titles is materially diminished by shortening the titles themselves?—There is a newspaper which heads its notices to correspondents, "Take time, that your letters may be shorter." I think that newspaper has hit the mark exactly. I think more time would be expended, and more consideration would be necessary, in shortening titles to the utmost extent to which shortness could with advantage be carried, than in writing out the full titles.

\* \* \* \* \*

5801\*. Is there any mathematical book in that first volume of the catalogue to which you can refer?—Here is the head "Apollonius Pergæus," in page 284. Under this very head I see an instance where any shortening might have led to serious mischief. Look to the head "See Horsley (S), Apollonii Pergæi, inclinationum libri duo. Restituebat S.H." A person shortening the titles would be very much inclined to strike out the last, "Restituebat S.H.," and people would be prepared to believe that these two books of Apollonius are in existence, as many have believed from similar faults of entry, those two books being in fact fictitious: mathematicians have tried to write a book as much like as they could to that which Apollonius wrote, taking as guides the heads which Pappus has given of that very book of Apollonius. The book above named is a restoration, and the restorations have often

been described as the genuine books of the author, on account of the words describing the restoration being left out.

\* \* \* \* \*

(The Earl of Ellesmere in the Chair.)

*Prof. Aug. De Morgan further examined, March 1, 1849.*

6481. (*Chairman.*) Have you any further information to give to the Commissioners, in addition to your evidence upon a former day?—I undertook to give the Commissioners **some information upon the evils of short-title catalogues**. I have drawn up a statement, which I would beg permission to read, asking that permission because I consider it to be rather in the light of new evidence than merely a matter of reference from former evidence :—

“ When I had the honour to give evidence on the subject of catalogues, I promised some written illustration of the mischiefs arising to knowledge from the practice of abbreviating the titles of books, which many makers of catalogues adopt, independent of the question of the advantage or disadvantage of such practice in a finding catalogue not meant for printing. In fulfilling this promise, I confine myself to *Scientific Works*, the objects of my own studies, and in so doing I resign an advantage instead of escaping a difficulty. I might contend that scientific books are more capable of having their titles shortened than others. Describe a book by the title of *Geometria*, and the chances are that the nature of the contents is better defined than that of another as briefly described by *Historia*. If, indeed, the former were Cavalieri's *Geometria Indivisibilium*, one of the precursors of *Fluxions*, it would not be well described by a word which rather suggests the *Geometria Euclidis*. But suppose the two histories to be an *Historia Ecclesie* and Willughby's *Historia Piscium*, and the mathematical abbreviation will appear to be much less absurd than the other. Both are really extremes; the two geometries and the two histories are about as distinct from each other as they can be, but the geometries much less removed from each other than the histories. I might fairly contend that the disadvantages which I point out exist, *à fortiori*, in general literature, both as to extent and importance; but I am content to rest the case upon the limitation that they shall be supposed no greater, if it be conceded that they are no less. So much of preliminary remark on subject-matter. As to description of incidents, as editorship, date, adjuncts, &c., of course scientific books and others stand exactly upon the same footing.

I shall, as much as I can, avail myself of cases which I have already published; the more I do this the less I can be supposed to have made my opinion colour my facts, and the better the presumption that that opinion is a result of experience. And I think it desirable, in the first instance, not to rely on large numbers of examples, but rather to spend the time which can be allowed me in pointing out distinctly the effects of those I produce, relying on the impression which they must, I think, create, that such things, if they happen with moderate frequency, must happen very often. But I shall show that I speak of classes of errors, not of isolated instances; and should the instances be held too few in number, I am perfectly ready to add others. I might point out, though I need not rely on it, that it is not absolutely necessary to fair explanation that I should confine myself to the short titles of catalogue-makers. **If an author himself make his title too short, the resulting mischief is precisely of the same kind with that caused by a cataloguer who abbreviates too much.** I do not intend to found anything upon this; I make the suggestion that those who are versed in books, but not in catalogues, may illustrate my argument for themselves, by cases in which shortness of title has led them into misconception.

To produce one instance—Finck, a young Dane, who introduced into trigonometry (A.D. 1583) two words, *tangent* and *secant*, so well known by the end of the next century as to furnish materials for the satirist, has never had the credit of a very seasonable introduction, owing to the shortness of his title, the words of subject-matter in which are only "*Geometriæ rotundi* [sic] *libri xiiii.*" Had he added "*Accedunt tabulæ novissimæ sinuum tangentium et secantium,*" and had bibliographers, as no doubt they would have done, omitted the addition, *they* would have had to bear the blame of Delambre, the most searching of scientific historians, being led into a useless criticism on Vieta, for his supposed rejection of the words *tangent* and *secant*, the fact being that Vieta wrote the matter criticised at least four years before the words were invented. But in this case the fault was the author's.

To take another case, chargeable directly on catalogues. Rheticus, the friend of Copernicus passed for the editor of the second edition of the immortal work of the latter, Basle, 1566. In the day of confidence in book lists, this story tended to the discredit of another, which rests on perfect authority, namely, that Rheticus would have edited the first edition, but that it was found

convenient to print at Nuremberg, and Rheticus then lived at Wittemberg. Now, he was in Hungary at the time when he is said to have edited the work published at Basle. A person who has to rely upon the story of his editorship, must try to believe that it was easier for a Hungarian by residence to edit a book printed at Basle in 1566, than for an inhabitant of Wittemberg to edit a book printed at Nuremberg in 1543. But the truth is, there is not a particle of evidence, except short-titled catalogues, that Rheticus ever edited the second edition of Copernicus, any more than the first. His name appears on the title-page, it is true, but only because the editor (probably the celebrated Basle printer, Henricus Petri, who also printed the book) added what is described as follows:—"Item, de libris revolutionum Nicolai Copernici, narratio prima per M. Georgium Joachimum Rheticum ad D. Joan. Schonerum scripta." Some short-title maker has converted this into Rheticus's edition. It will be said that he took undue licence. I grant it: but **abridgement always involves more or less matter of discretion and opinion; and abridgement of titles, except when made by a person well acquainted with the books he catalogues, is discretion without a guide, and opinion without knowledge.** In this I hold that a much-abridged catalogue and a classified catalogue stand on the same footing; whether either can be done properly is a question; but that neither can be done properly, except by those who are thoroughly acquainted with the contents and histories of the books, is a certainty.

Put the following case:—There is a discussion on the subject of this editorship (there are always some to hold by a received story), and a catalogue-maker knowing nothing of the discussion, but abbreviating, and surely it will be said with judgment, gives the following title, "Copernicus, Nicolaus, de Revolutionibus Orbium Cœlestium libri vi. [accredit G. J. Rhetici, narratio prima], Basle, 1566, 4to." **Now the omission of one letter destroys material evidence on one side, some may think on the other, of the supposed dispute. It is the "M" for Magistrum:** Rheticus would have been very unlikely (though the point is not conclusive) to have styled himself, in long or short, "Magister," on his own title-page. Or, perhaps, some may think Magister Rheticus, as opposed to Dominus Schoner, shows the former to stand in some different relation to the book from the latter. I think not, believing them mere university titles; but that other person, and I myself, have each a right to our means of judging: and the catalogue-maker, in destroying he knows not what, has taken them away

from both of us. But what does it matter whether Rheticus did or did not edit the second edition of Copernicus? A year or two ago the story was revived of Copernicus prophesying that some day the phases of Venus would be discovered. This story I showed to be at variance with the opinions of Copernicus in his own work. In the investigation, the second edition varied from the first in a certain reading which bore upon the point. Had I believed, as I once did, that Rheticus was the editor, I should have received the reading of the second edition, even against Galileo, with confidence, knowing that Rheticus would have performed his part with filial care, and that he was conversant with the opinions of Copernicus, taken from his own mouth. But as a variation of the Basle printer, it was quite another thing. This is an instance of the effect of short titles. It must be explained at length, for the mere mention of the fact of abbreviation, and a few words of result, will not put the bearings of the case before anyone unaccustomed to research.

I may now enumerate *what has happened in the above instances from short titles* :—

- (1) **Loss of due credit to an author.**
- (2) **Historians put on a wrong scent.** Nobody can lay the blame on Delambre; he read more books than any mathematical historian, but no one can read all.
- (3) **A false notion given as to the facilities of communication of European cities with one another; or else, a story discredited which there is no reason to doubt.**
- (4) **Undue importance given to the variæ lectiones of a particular edition, and the proper balance of probability on the real opinions of a great leader of opinion destroyed.**

But I remember that I undertook not to found anything upon shortness of title, which was the fault of the author. I will then take an instance in which the blame lies on the catalogue-maker. Our modern historians give the first printed publication of trigonometrical sines with a decimal basis to Regiomontanus, whose work, "*De Triangulis*," which is the short mode of describing both editions, was printed in 1536 with a date, and in 1561 without one (as it is stated—I have not seen the second edition). So do the older historians, and they are right, for they do not distinguish manuscripts from printed works; and Regiomontanus is credibly stated to have left such manuscript tables. Now the fact is, that the first edition contains no tables at all. Why then is it stated that it does? Lalande, who had seen the second edition, but not

the first, and who had found the short title "De Triangulis" equally applied to both, and knew the abbreviating style of catalogue-makers, took it for granted that the two editions were of the same title, and in entering the first edition in its place, wrote out the title of the second, including the words "una cum tabulis sinuum." The consequence is, that Peter Apian, who knew nothing of the manuscript of Regiomontanus, and who calculated decimal sines afresh, printed them at his own press at Ingoldstadt, in 1533, and caused them to be reprinted at Nuremberg, in 1534, is never mentioned by historians in connection with tables. The abbreviation "*de triangulis*" is mischievous. It ought to be "*de triangulis omnimodis*," by which it is seen that the work contains both plane and spherical triangles. If the catalogue-maker, as such, be not skilled in the details of mathematical subjects, he cannot be expected to think *omnimodis* an essential word; and to demand that he should be so skilled, is equally to demand that he should be alive to the minor distinctions of all subjects.

Taking up a collection printed by Apian, to verify the dates above-named, I am reminded of another instance. This collection contains the Latin version of the Arab astronomer Geber, which is very scarce. The British Museum possesses a copy of this collection, of which the leading title words are, "Instrumentum primi mobilis à Petro Apiano," Nuremberg, 1534, folio. But the octavo catalogue shortens a long title, and omits the work of Geber. I repeat again, what I said in evidence, that the octavo catalogue, as the actual work of two librarians, urged, as I understand, to speed, is as creditable to those gentlemen as any catalogue that ever was completed; for many more deliberate works present as much inaccuracy. The many errors which it contains could not, in my opinion, have well been fewer or less; they should be charged on the plan, and on the shortness of hands and time. Nevertheless, there is a work of great rarity concealed; for a great many years the nation attached, as a condition, to the disclosure that it possessed the astronomy of Geber, a previous desire to see that of Apian. But this is not the main point; short-title writers, taking the special title of Geber's work in the body of the collection, "in quibus Ptolomæum alioqui doctissimum, emendavit," have made Geber to be an editor or commentator of Ptolemy. Halma, the only modern editor of Ptolemy, a man of great research, with Delambre always at his call, could not obtain a copy of Geber, and could not find him described otherwise than as a commentator on, or rather as a translator of, Ptolemy. On this he forms the theory that



Purbach and Regiomontanus, whose epitome of the Almagest he thought savoured of Arab astronomy, made that epitome from Geber, and not from Ptolemy. And thus two foremost men of their day, to whom Europe is more indebted for the introduction of Ptolemy than to any others, are represented as having had recourse to a false description of their epitome, and are reproved in terms for so doing in the most splendid edition of the work which they laboured to communicate to Europe. Halma may have judged hastily, but he was led into it by catalogues. Had he known the real title of Apian's version of Geber, he would have found the book, even though, supposing the Museum catalogue to have named it, his Government had applied to ours for the loan of it. An original writer would, in his criticisms, have furnished means of illustrating the text of Ptolemy, which a copyist could not have yielded.

My instances suggest one another, which will show that I have made no search for new grievances to support my opinion. In tracing the progress of the attempts made to alleviate arithmetical computation previously to the invention of logarithms, I found in catalogues the above-mentioned Finck's "*Tabulæ Multiplicationis et Divisionis*," Copenhagen, 1604. For this book I made much search, not knowing what I afterwards knew, that it is not even in the library of Copenhagen. But I should have been spared all the trouble, if the maker of the catalogue who abbreviated the title given in the *Cimbria Litterata* had preserved the words, "*seorsim monetæ Danicæ accommodatæ*," which point it out to be what is called a ready reckoner, and not a scientific book at all.

**Short catalogues have in this way wasted for me and others a great deal of time; indeed, I have almost given up taking anything they say into consideration.**

It was once necessary for me to hunt out the work of Suisset, entitled, "Calculator." This is an abbreviated title for a whole collection of tracts, and on it rests a common assertion, that Suisset, of the fourteenth century, was a splendid arithmetician, and even an inventor or introducer of algebra. The British Museum catalogue, if executed in the manner proposed, would have prevented or cured such an error by giving the headings of the separate tracts, not chapters, which compose the work; such as "*De intensione et remissione*," "*De Difformibus*," "*De intensione elementi*," and so on; all well calculated to throw the onus of proof upon those who suppose them to contain either algebra or even arithmetic. This is one way of treating the subject, namely,

pointing out injustice, error, and inconvenience which have arisen from insufficient description of titles.

I will now take a name full from a full-titled catalogue, and examine the omissions that might be proposed, and their probable disadvantages. And here I must not venture to suppose, as likely to happen, anything so strange as the things which, as above shown, have happened; just as a novel-writer must not invent things so improbable as those which take place every day.

I take the name "Archimedes" in the printed volume of the new catalogue: I take so celebrated a name advisedly, and as against myself, for everyone who is fit to consult a catalogue knows that obscure names and obscure books need more catalogue information than illustrious one. But for the difficulty of drawing the line, it would bear argument whether works of a certain notoriety (to use an adjective which is the proper term when a line cannot be drawn) might not be abbreviated throughout; but though it would bear argument, I think the question would be decided by the consideration, that the more notorious the connexion between the author and the subject, the less are his editions known and distinguished. The very notoriety of Euclid's geometry, as a system, has swamped the history of its editions as a book. I may say that the most celebrated and the most obscure works are extremes which meet as to the state of bibliographical knowledge. On the nine commencing cross-references I have nothing to say. No abbreviation which I could advocate, or even tolerate, would save more than two lines, and I am not prepared to say I could produce a rule which would uniformly apply. I now come to the *editio princeps*, in the title of which, as given, there are several omissions. All but one are justifiable. We do not want "*philosophus ac geometra excellentissimus*," nor of the works "*quorum catalogum versa pagina reperies*," nor "*Cum Cæs. majest. gratia et privilegio ad quinquennium*." But I am not clear about the omission of the word "*Syracusanus*" after "Archimedes." I admit that as to Archimedes no mistake can arise: but the question is, can any librarians, in the multiplicity of entries they have to make, undertake to institute a rule for the mode of leaving out the local designations of the ancients? Certainly Archimedes of Tralles did not write anything which has come down to us, but he is said to have written on mechanics. I do not ask the librarian, as such, to know Archimedes of Tralles, who is only a name; all I ask is, that the works which give Archimedes to Syracuse should be made to do so. And, for a

reason more than I have yet mentioned. I think it desirable that catalogues should exhibit the errors as well as the truths of title-pages.

Many of the old editions of Euclid give Euclid to Megara, confounding the Alexandrian geometer with a philosopher of the same name. It is only right that it should be known whether this mistake is made or not. Again, from Torelli's edition, presently noted, the adjectives "Ἀσκαλωνιτου" and "Ascalonitis" are omitted after the name of Eutocius. Now, though there be not a tradition of any other Eutocius, except the commentator, yet the associations of place may be otherwise useful. Anyone who hears the Arabic story of Euclid being a Tyrian, is prepared with a strong probability against it, if he remember that the celebrated Ascalonite geometer, from whom so many historical allusions proceed, would certainly have mentioned it if he had ever heard it. Next, anyone will say, why do you not object to the many words in which this extract of title announces an *editio princeps*, when the librarian's ED. PR. is sufficient? For the following reasons, which serve to show how much there is to take into consideration before deciding on an omission:—

*First*, the title announces itself as the *princeps* both of Archimedes and Eutocius, whilst the librarian's four letters, taken alone, leave this point ambiguous. It by no means follows that the *princeps* edition of a text, accompanied by the commentary, is therefore the *princeps* of the commentary.

*Secondly*, there are two kinds of *editiones principes*—those which announce themselves, sub-dividing into the cases of true and false announcement, and those which do not announce themselves, but receive the title from their being the earliest known to exist. If the title announcement, when it exists, be not made, it must be supplied by the librarian's mode of making *his* announcement; that is, he must distinguish by his own symbols between the self-asserting and the inferred claim. But scores of other announcements are just in the same predicament; and if once we begin to substitute librarians' symbols for information given by authors and editors, it will be difficult to say where to stop. If anyone will take a look at Griesbach's Greek Testament, with all its signs of the probable characters of the lections, and the manuscripts they occur in, he will form some idea, though not a complete one, of what library algebra would be, if catalogues were to substitute arbitrary signs for title points of frequent occurrence.

*Thirdly*, it is of importance to give such title points in the

words of the authors or editors, that their frequent ambiguity may be thrown upon themselves, and that the reader may decide the meaning, and not the librarian. In the case before me, I grant it clear that, truly or falsely, the edition is announced to be a *principes*. But what will be said to the "*Novamente posta in luce*," which stands in front of Bombelli's Arithmetic, or the "*Noviter impressum*," which is in the title of that of Sacrobosco? Are these both *principes* or neither, or one and not the other, and if so which? In the first the editor announces (at least we are so to suppose, for such is the fact) that Bombelli is printed for the first time; in the second, another editor announces that he gives a new edition of Sacrobosco. Is the catalogue-maker to know all books so well as to decide rightly all such cases for the reader? I confidently say it is impossible. Next, it may be asked whether the mode in which the commentaries of Eutocius are announced be not longer than is necessary? There is a usual mode of speaking by which Eutocius is treated as a commentator on the whole of Archimedes; but all that has come down to us, and we do not know that ever there was more, is a comment on three books. This, of course, the editor of the *editio princeps* knew well, and yet there is a misprint or mistake in his title-page, which tends to confirm the notion of Eutocius being a universal commentator. Instead of "*in eosdem Archimedis libros*," it should be "*in quosdam Archimedis libros*." The literary reader has a right to have this misprinted or mistaken word, of which he has probably seen the consequences. And so far from too many words being given to Eutocius, it may be a question whether the separate title of his commentaries which comes afterwards in its place should not have been introduced. I now come to Rivault's edition. I mentioned in my evidence the practice of calling editions of geometrical works Greek and Latin, in which only the enunciation of the proposition are Greek. I cannot blame the catalogue for following a usage justified by title-pages. An advocate of short titles would object to the apparent surplusage of the words "*novis demonstrationibus comentariisque illustrata*." He would prove from the words of mathematical historians, that this book is fully identified by the words "*Rivault's Archimedes*," very well known for a bad edition; and, further, that the announcement of new demonstrations and commentaries means nothing more than is to be inferred of course, when a modern editor and an ancient mathematician are seen with their names in contact. But the necessity of closely looking at the title, and of doing so at a time when one or two

other editions of Archimedes were at hand, enables me to say that the extract of the catalogue-maker proves the historians wrong, and shows that if a bad work, it ought to have been called a bad substitute, not a bad edition. For it is nothing but the proposition of Archimedes, with the demonstrations of Rivault himself, (namely, the demonstrations of Archimedes largely altered at the discretion of Rivault, without any indication of the several alterations, or other notice than that of the title-page), as I find by very little comparison with Torelli's text. Accordingly the words, which, as the advocate of abbreviation is supposed to have remarked, very justly, might have supposed to be only a flourish, are in this instance the plain truth, and the actual description of the distinctive feature of the edition. Call the work merely "Rivault's Archimedes," and the reader is allowed to employ himself upon Rivault, when he thinks he is reading Archimedes, by and with the full consent of mathematical historians and antiquaries. Give him a proper title, and he has a chance of hitting the truth in spite of his guides. In Torelli's title, as given, there is surely nothing to omit. That the Latin version is new, and that various readings are given, which is not done in any other edition, are both essential pieces of information. I object, as before-mentioned, to leaving out the native place of Eutocius, and I object also to shortening "Josephus Torelli" into "J. Torelli." In Barrow's edition, the fulness of title is necessary to show, what many people already know, that Barrow gives his own demonstration, not those of Archimedes. In the title given of Peyrard, there is not a word to omit. The reference to Delambre's memoir, the *princeps* of his several writings on Greek arithmetic, is essential; equally so is the reference to the analysis of the writings of Archimedes, which is the only place I remember in which there is a precise separation of the mathematical inventions of Archimedes.

Having now gone down the page, I think I should only weary the Commissioners if I defended, step by step, any apparent superfluities in the remaining titles. It will be observed, that I find the titles given rather too short than too long. And having thus shown that errors do occur from short titles, and that if abbreviations were made on a good catalogue, errors most likely would occur, and defects of essential information certainly; and having pointed out (not at all to my own surprise) that a person who sits down to this subject is pretty sure to detect something erroneous in history, arising from bad bibliographical habits (and good ones never will be formed without good catalogues), there would naturally suggest itself an inversion of the process, an

examination of the particular merits of some short-title cataloguer. On this point I have only to say, that I have found all which my line of study enables me to pronounce upon so defective, that I am not the proper person to choose an instance. But if the Commissioners will signify to me on what such catalogue they would have me employ myself, provided that it contain a good number of scientific works, I will enter upon the examination and report the results. In the meantime it will not be forgotten that all the writers in literary journals, who exclaim against what I believe to be the best conception of the present century for the promotion of true and discouragement of false literature, the most direct attack upon error in its citadel, have shrunk from answering my public challenge to point out a fit model for the Museum Catalogue from among the library catalogues which have been completed, or with one reserved exception, from among unfinished undertakings.

6482. (*Lord Seymour.*) You said you had been in the habit of examining booksellers' catalogues sometimes, for the purpose of obtaining books?—Booksellers' sale catalogues.

6483. Have you ever examined the German catalogues?—I have sometimes—German book sale catalogues.

6484. There are German catalogues published, which are common to the trade, are there not?—I believe there are. I think there are Fair catalogues.

6485. Do you think you have ever examined any of those?—I have seen them; I do not remember at this moment, that I ever closely examined a Fair catalogue.

6486. Having looked at some of those catalogues, have you found them practically of use to you for the purpose of obtaining the information which you wanted respecting the books?—Those which I have examined have been short-title catalogues, which have very often brought me from Germany the right book when I ordered it; sometimes a wrong one; and sometimes an imperfect one.

\* \* \* \* \*

**Mr. Panizzi on the same subject.**

9855, p. 701. "It is very seldom indeed, that you find that a book can be shortly and accurately catalogued, in the way that "shortly" is understood by some of the gentlemen who have given evidence. There is not one book in a thousand that can be catalogued in that way; 'usefully' and 'accurately' are convertible terms."

---

[<sup>1</sup> From the point of view of a *National Library*.—F.B.C.]

**On the Disadvantages incidental to Classed Subject-Catalogues. (With special reference to Sir Anthony Panizzi's expressed views.)**

While Classed Catalogues are of the utmost value to all students, there are, of course, certain weak points inherent in their nature which will always exist, although they can be greatly diminished. While these should not bias or frighten the student of Bibliography, he should nevertheless know what they are. The following remarks of Sir Anthony Panizzi on the subject are therefore quoted from the Report of the British Museum Commission, 1849 (p. 704):—

- “The diversity of opinion respecting the ramifications of the various branches of human knowledge renders it extremely difficult, if not impossible, to devise an unobjectionable classification, and still more difficult to apply it.
- “Persons who wish to consult a Classed Catalogue are unable to do so before becoming thoroughly acquainted with the arrangement adopted by the compiler: but even then they are not sure of applying the system as he did: they may, therefore, search for a work in a class or section widely different from that under which it is entered.
- “A synopsis of the catalogue, which may assist the inquirer in forming an idea of the plan of Classification, is of no use in finding how it was applied in every individual instance. Anyone who has had occasion to consult a Classed Catalogue will own that he has seldom been able to make [? full] use of it without having recourse to the Index of Names of Authors generally added to such compilations.
- “But when the names of authors are known, an Alphabetical Catalogue answers the purpose in a simpler and plainer manner.
- “It cannot be denied [?] that, for the most part, the student knows the name of the author of the book which he wishes to peruse, and therefore an Alphabetical Catalogue of Writers is more *generally* useful; and, as it leaves nothing to discretion, there can never be any doubt as to the place where a work is to be entered or sought for in a catalogue of this kind.”

It is important to quote Panizzi's evidence, in order to show the weak points of Classed Catalogues. At the same time, it is still more important to remind the student that Panizzi was

acting the part of a pleader for a special object, and in that capacity he was obliged to overstate his case.

No amount of arguments can overcome the fact that Special Classed Catalogues have their advantages, as well as their disadvantages, and that if you expose the latter, you must equally recognise the former.

Panizzi made it appear that Classed Catalogues were to perform the duties of *Author-Catalogues*, as indeed there was danger. It was a case in which a battle waged over what was to be the form of Catalogue to be adopted in the British Museum Library, there being only two alternatives possible at the time. The camp was divided, with two giants, Panizzi and De Morgan, on one side, opposed to an army of lesser bibliographical knights on the other side. The majority of special scholars and students wished to give the pre-eminence to *Classed Catalogues*, in hostile opposition to *Authors' Catalogues*, and consequently Panizzi, on being called upon practically to choose between the two, very rightly chose in favour of the *Authors' Catalogue*. In this, if choice there were to be, he was perfectly right, and the extraordinary *general* value of the Library of the British Museum is due to his policy and triumph. But in regard to the conflict itself, the battle was fought on wrong issues. The real fact was, as it always will be, that both kinds of Catalogues are necessary, and we cannot progress without either; and what is more, specialists and scholars *will* have their *Classed Catalogues*, for otherwise they can make no progress.

The value of *Authors' Catalogues* lies in the certainty of being able to find an *individual* work on knowing the name of the Author and probably the title. The value of *Classed Catalogues* consists in their presenting to you a *collection* of works on a particular subject.

How these works are arranged in *minute* detail is of less concern in one sense, compared with the advantage of being able to say, "*I hold in my hand a complete list of the works on the subject in which I am interested,*" and that it is useful to call in the aid of an *Author's Index*, or even of a *Subject Index*, is no disparagement to the principle of classification, but only a pretty instance of the combination of instruments which should exist.

I have myself been placed at a considerable disadvantage in writing this work, from being unable to obtain a *List of Works and Papers on the Theory of Bibliography*, which may and must have appeared lately in England, America, and other countries.



If we wished, it were easily possible, in an illogical manner, to make Alphabetical Author's Catalogues look as silly as Panizzi made Classed Catalogues appear to be.

Do Author's Catalogues supply you with a List of Works on Large-Group Subjects? *No.*

Do they afford Lists of Works on Small-Group Subjects? *No.*

Do they show you which was the *first* work printed on a subject? *No.*

Do they exhibit the *last* work printed on a subject? *No.*

"Then what do they do, Gentlemen?" our pleader might cry. "They do nothing we require." "It is said that they enable us to find a Work under an Author's name. But we do not want to find a work under the Author's name. We do not know the Author's name, and care still less; perhaps a work has no author's name; perhaps that name, if it appears, is a fictitious one. We are *not* concerned with the Author's *name*; we are concerned with the fact that certain works have been written on a particular subject, and sense or nonsense, we wish to see a list of those works."

Thus, if we wished, we might prolong the farce of debating on false issues, and succeed in puzzling both our own brains and those of other people. And it is no false cry, when I warn the reader that, although the prejudice is slowly disappearing, the fallacy still exists, and is repeated from time to time with the most amazing confidence.

---

**On the nature of an "Index of Matters."  
Being evidence given before the British  
Museum Commission of 1849, by Mr. Panizzi.**

Of all Librarians, Sir Anthony Panizzi was *the* great advocate in favour of the advantages of an "Index of Matters" as a bibliographical work of Reference.

For reasons which it is unnecessary to detail here, he pressed the apparent advantages somewhat too far, and made it appear that "*Indexes of Matters*" were necessarily the proper and only substitute for *Classed Subject-Catalogues*, which, for private reasons, he outwardly condemned without mercy.

Nevertheless, his pleading in favour of *Indexes of Matters* is all the more valuable for this very reason, that he clearly demonstrates their special advantages, and equally places his finger on the weak points of *Subject-Catalogues*.

On page 704 of the report of the Commission, he repeats the arguments which he had used before the Royal Society.

In the latter part of the answer to question 9869, he proceeds:—

"Those who want either to consult a book, of which they only know the subject, or to find what books on a particular subject are in the library, can obtain this information (as far as it can be collected from a title-page, which is all that can be expected in a catalogue) more easily from an *index of matters to an alphabetical catalogue* than by any other means. Here also nothing is left to discretion as far as concerns order. Entries being short, cross-references are, in a great measure, avoided; and repetitions, far from being inconvenient, will save the time and trouble of looking in more places than one, in order to find what is wanted. This very brevity of the entries renders it easy to dissect a title into many parts, and thus to enter in its proper place every word giving a clue to any subject, however slightly touched upon in the title itself; an advantage either lost in a *classed catalogue*, or *obtained only by repeatedly entering a work under different classes or sections*. The plan which is proposed was adopted by Dr. Watt in his *Bibliotheca Britannica*, the usefulness of which work must be

acknowledged by every one conversant with bibliography. That it would not be so useful, had any systematical arrangement been followed seems undeniable. The vast plan of the *Bibliotheca Britannica*, however, did not allow its author to give either to the titles of books, or to the index, that extent which ought to be given to both in the catalogue of the library of the Royal Society." I appended to this a specimen of what an index of matters should be for their catalogue; and this paper passed off perfectly unnoticed.

\* \* \* \* \*

"9879. In other sciences it (*classification*) would be still more difficult, as may be supposed from the evidence of Professor De Morgan, who says that he would not trust any mathematician in Europe to make a catalogue for him of what were mathematical works?—He is such a good authority that, if he would not trust anybody, I am sure I would not.

"9880. (*Mr. Milnes.*) Do you not think that classed catalogues on scientific subjects might, to a certain extent, be so far adapted as to be most useful for the especial departments of the British Museum, and to accompany the collections of the Museums?—No; I think it is impossible to say what are books on natural history. It is very easy to say that a book by Cuvier is natural history, and nothing else; but when you come either to sub-divisions or to many other works, it is extremely difficult to know what is natural history, or any special branch of it, and what is not; but an index of matters provides for all that.

"9881. (*Sir Charles Lemon.*) Can you state what is your idea of an index of matters?—I was coming to that. *If you have full and accurate titles well drawn up for an alphabetical catalogue, you take all the words which indicate any of the subjects treated of in that work*, such as would appear on a proper comprehensive Title-page, and you enter them alphabetically, without any trouble, whether it is a scientific arrangement, or whether it is any other arrangement except alphabetical. For instance, if you look in the index of matters under the word 'Butterflies,' you find all that has been stated about butterflies, whether in a scientific sense, or in a poetical sense, or in any other sense, in the works alphabetically catalogued, so far as the titles of the books have told you. That is my notion of an index of matters. Under the word 'Fire' you have all that is said of fire, whether fire is considered as a technical expression in works of art and in manufactures, or whether it is fire in the sense in which the term is used by philosophers,

naturalists, and so on. That is my notion of it. That the Commissioners may see the advantage of such an index, I cannot do better than remind them of what happened before them with Professor Owen, who is so much for a classed catalogue. The *Professor never once had recourse to a class—never*; he referred to the index of matters which is in Dryander's catalogue; and when you put to him that puzzling question (5223) about the Dodo, and asked him what he would do with the Dodo—

"9882. Where he would class it?—Yes. He did not tell you that it would be classed according to the system of Dryander, or according to the Cuvierian system, but he said 'I should look for it in this catalogue, if I went further than an alphabetical catalogue, according to the classification in vogue at the date of the catalogue: *but the index would suffice* for information as to all the literature on the Dodo in the Banksian Library.' Now, if the index was 'sufficient,' and if there is no proper place immediately in that classification, and you are obliged to look at the 'classification in vogue' at the time, what use is it to have a classification? The index will apply to the Alphabetical Catalogue; and under 'Dodo' I find whatever is written about the Dodo.

"9883. (*The Lord Advocate.*) So far as appears in the title-page?—Yes; and there can be nothing better *if the titles are well done.*

"9884. (*Chairman.*) Is not a large portion of natural history found in books of travel?—Yes.

"9885. In your index of matters would there be a reference, to the Dodo, where it referred to any early travels in which some remains, or supposed remains, of the Dodo were found?—If it is mentioned in the title-page; and if it is not mentioned in the title-page, the case is much worse in a classed catalogue; *you must read every book to class their contents.* Now, the reason that the index of matters of Mr. Dryander is the most perfect that ever was made, is, *because he gives such excellent and full titles*; but to show how *difficult* it is *even to compile such an index of matters*, I will tell you what seems to me a great fault in Mr. Dryander's Catalogue, as far as his index of matters goes. Mr. Dryander has not adopted one language only for the index to his catalogue, but he gives references from the different names as they are in the title-page. For instance, for the article 'Bees;' you do not find upon looking under 'Bees,' all that has been written upon bees. In his index you find what is in English

under 'Bees;' then you must look for 'Abeilles,' 'Apes,' 'Bienen,' 'Byen,' according as the work is in English, French, Latin, German, or Dutch, and so on. If a man does not know what is the name of the bee in these languages, and if Mr. Dryander has forgotten (which I believe he has in Swedish in this very case of the bee) to put a reference from one of the languages which I have not enumerated, to some work in that language, that work is not to be found in the index; whereas, if he had adopted one language for his index, and put 'Bees,' and under 'Bees,' all that is written upon bees in all languages, this would have been avoided.

\* \* \* \* \*

"9890. Then it will appear from your evidence as now given with reference to an index, that one of the most important things to render a catalogue complete, as a means of studying subjects in the Museum, is to have a *good index of subjects*?—An index to a full and accurate alphabetical catalogue. We cannot expect to have an index of the books themselves. There should be an index of subjects *as far as a good title can afford* that information; and, of course, the better the title, the better the index would be, and the fuller the title, the fuller the index would be.

"9891. Can that index be commenced until the catalogue is finished, or can it go on simultaneously with the catalogue?—I think it could go on simultaneously, and I said so in 1836 (see above, Question 9869); but at present, we have so much extra work, that it would be impossible to do it on account of the superintendence and the service of the library."

---

Tuesday, 30th July.]

[A. No. 4

SIXTH INTERNATIONAL GEOGRAPHICAL CONGRESS  
LONDON, 1895.

*Abstract of Paper.*

**The Literature of Geography: How shall it be  
Recorded?**

BY FRANK CAMPBELL

*(Of the Library, British Museum.)*

In approaching the subject of the Bibliography of Geography, there are two aspects of the question which invite special attention:—

- I. The consideration of measures calculated to drill into order the Literature of Geography in the past.
- II. The adoption of a system by which, in the future, all works of a Geographical interest shall be properly  
Registered,  
Classified,  
Catalogued, and  
Indexed,  
for the common benefit of all.

Referring only to the latter object, *i.e.*, the *Registration, &c.*, of the Literature of the future (*e.g.*, for any given year, 1896) each country will desire to possess:—

1. A complete List of those works of Geographical interest which have issued from its own Press during 1896.
2. A complete List of those works which have been published within every other country during 1896.
3. Complete Lists of works relating to any given country, Tract, or Geographical subject, during 1896.

How are these objects to be realised? They are best realised by obtaining

A Complete Register of the Titles of every single work issued during the year.

from which to select.

But the Literature of any given country consists not only of

1. *Separate Works*,
- but of Separate Works which are "*collected*" in the pages of
2. *Large Works of Reference*.
3. *Serials*.
4. *Journals, &c., of Learned Societies*.
5. *Magazines and Reviews*.

In order, therefore, to obtain a Complete Record of the Literature of GEOGRAPHY for any one year, it will be necessary first to obtain Registers of all the works buried in the Sub-Divisions (2-5) alluded to, or at least in the last three Sub-Divisions.

It will also be necessary to obtain corresponding Registers of Works issued as "*State Official Documents*."

But there is no single country where Literature is thus registered completely or in accordance with the fullest requirements of Bibliography.

And thus, if *Completeness* be desired, *one* great Door of Enquiry is closed.

The only alternative, therefore, for those who wish to record the Literature of Geography is for them to gain access to the *Books* themselves, and thus personally to compile their own Records.

But nowhere can Complete Collections be found, except in the National Libraries. And it would be impossible to allow, to the public, free entry among the existing official Staffs of such Libraries.

Thus the *Second* great Door of Enquiry is closed.

And this is the sole remaining source of enquiry, and thus any attempt to undertake the Bibliography of any large section of Literature as a *private enterprise* is doomed to comparative failure.

But, why should not the Several Learned Societies—and indeed every reasonable branch of Learning—be *represented* on the Official Staffs of the existing National Libraries? Why should not the several National Libraries undertake the *Complete*

Registration of each National Literature in all its Branches and in all its earlier Bibliographical stages ?

*This* is the fundamental principle of all Bibliography—that the *whole* of the National Literature of each country should be :—

**REGISTERED,  
CLASSED,  
CATALOGUED,  
and  
INDEXED**

by “ Government ” :

on the day it issues from the Printing Press,  
in one and the same *place*,  
at one and the same *moment*,  
on one and the same *system*,  
by one and the same *Staff* of Experts, who should represent both the Official and the Private Life of the Nation.

*Why* should the *Registering* of Literature be left to one body of men, the *Cataloguing* to another, and the work of *Compiling Special Bibliographies and Indexes* utterly neglected or left to anybody to perform? Surely it is the duty of the *State* to perform such work !

When Government has laid the foundations of Bibliography, private individuals may proceed singly or by co-operation to elaborate the details according as circumstances demand, but *the foundations must first be laid*.

If then, in the future, the several Members of the Geographical Congress can prevail upon their respective Governments to properly Register the Literature of each year completely according to the requirements of Bibliography, *then*, not only the Learned Societies, but all mankind, could share in the results.

---





THE LITERATURE OF GEOGRAPHY:  
HOW SHALL IT BE RECORDED?

By FRANK CAMPBELL,

OF THE LIBRARY, BRITISH MUSEUM.

---

*Reprinted, with permission, from the Report of the Sixth International  
Geographical Congress, held in London, 1895.*

### General Objects in View.

In approaching the subject of the Bibliography of Geography, there are two aspects of the question which invite special attention.

(1) The consideration of measures calculated to collect and drill into order the literature of geography in the past.

(2) The adoption of a system by which, in the future, all works of geographical interest shall be properly registered, classified, catalogued, and indexed, in the manner most suitable for complete, accurate, speedy, and convenient reference, and paying all due regard to the claims of other branches of science relative to literature possessing an interest common to all.

I do not propose, myself, to refer directly to the re-ordering of the existing literature of geography, but desire rather to deal with the present and future aspects of the subject.

### Special Objects in View.

Let me, then, suggest that we forget for a moment the existence of the past, which only tends to bewilder us, and that we concentrate our attention on the literature of the coming year, 1896.

What, then, are the interests of the geographical world in the matter?

May I define what I conceive them to be?

(1) Each country will desire to possess a *complete* list of those works of geographical interest which have issued from its own press.

(2) Each country will wish to possess a *complete* list of those works of geographical interest which have been published in every other country during the same period.

These are the first two considerations. But there is a third of only lesser importance, involving, very greatly, an examination of the theory of international bibliographical exchange; for, not being content with merely knowing what has been PUBLISHED WITHIN certain well-defined sections of the globe,

(3) Each country will desire to know what works have been

published relating to any given country, ocean, sea, tract, or geographical subject, during the given period 1896, each nation being thus dependent on the co-operation of every other nation.

(It is true that there are other wants to be supplied, but these are the three primary necessities to which allusion must be made, on which all other claims depend, and compared to which all other questions are of minor importance.)

How, then, are these objects to be realized? How are we to obtain complete lists of the geographical literature

(1, 2) *issued* in every country ;

(3) *relating* to every country or geographical subject?

In other words, what are the essential CONDITIONS OF SUCCESS? Plainly (to confine ourselves for the moment to the case of a single country only), it will be necessary to obtain a **complete register of the titles of every single work issued during the year**—for it is evident that you cannot select all the entries geographical, unless you have a complete list of all other works from which to select, and from which to follow up inquiry.

But it is well known that in every country there are a large number of works published every year, which, instead of being issued as

(1) *separate works, are issued as sectional parts of "collections" of works;*

(2) *some being contained in large works of reference, like the 'Encyclopædia Britannica ;'*

(3) *others appearing under some serial title ;*

(4) *others being issued in the pages of the Journals, etc., of Learned Societies ;*

(5) *others included as "articles" in independent magazines and reviews.*

Such being the case, if you wish to extract, not part only, but **ALL** the geographical factors from the literary records of the year 1896, you will not be able to succeed, unless, in addition to a complete register of separate works, you obtain certainly three, if not four, other registers of those works which are buried in the divisions of collected literature just referred to.

Furthermore, for technical reasons, you will have to obtain separate but corresponding registers of the works belonging to the second great division of literature—that of **OFFICIAL DOCUMENTS**.

But it is scarcely necessary for me to state that, although there are several countries where modern literature is registered in a manner, there is no single instance of a country which

registers its literature completely or in accordance with the highest aims and requirements of bibliography.

Thus, if you aim at completeness—and this is what I naturally conceive the object of geographers to be—one great door of inquiry is closed.

If, then, you cannot obtain the desired national registers of national literature, the only other alternative is for you to be able to gain personal, permanent, and speedy access to the very works themselves, as soon as they are issued from the press, and thus to compile your own lists yourselves.

But in no single country can you expect to find anything approaching to a complete collection of national literature, except in the great national libraries; and, of course, it would be out of the question, with the best wishes in the world, to permit the experts of any one learned society the free entry among the working staff of a national library, especially as what one society enjoyed as a privilege, all would claim as a right. Thus the second great door of inquiry is closed.

And this is the sole remaining source of information, for although learned societies can, by co-operation, register the titles and contents of a large number of individual works and periodicals, the results can never be anything but *comparative*. To control a scattered co-operative staff, so as to secure uniformity, continuity, quickness, and guaranteed accuracy of work, is a task teeming with difficulties in spite of the noble voluntary efforts which are ever to the fore. And, as already stated, all workers in the field of bibliography are ultimately dependent on the national libraries for supplementing and completing their stock of knowledge.

### The Remedy.

But—and this is the point of my paper—why should not the several learned societies, and, indeed, every reasonable branch of learning, be represented on the official staffs of existing national libraries?

Why should not national libraries undertake the complete registration of national literature in all its natural branches and in all its earlier biographical stages?

Of course, gentlemen, this is the great fundamental principle, and the only sound principle of bibliography, without which rational bibliography in the future is an utter impossibility, and doomed to comparative failure—the principle that national literature should be registered by a trained staff of experts the moment

it leaves the press and reaches the national library, and registered in such a manner that any learned society or individual; in the country, or, indeed, in any part of the globe, can avail himself of the results, and can purchase periodical lists independently of the proximity of a library, with the certainty that those lists contain an entry of every single work (separate or *collected*) on his particular subject for a given period, and in regard to a given area, and with the certainty that he will not have to pay for extraneous and superfluous matter of no interest to himself. *This* is what we have to aim at. Thus, instead of the registering of fractional collections of national literature being incessantly attempted on the part of numerous different societies and individuals separated by long distances—producing imperfect results—each national literature would be continuously registered on a complete scale, by one trained staff, in one bureau, on one system, producing perfect and harmonious results which would remain once and for ever the common property of all men. And this coincides with the fundamental axiom of bibliography, that the work of registering, cataloguing, classifying and indexing of books should be performed at one and the same time once and for ever on one and the same examination of a book.

Why should the registering of national literature be left to one body of men, the cataloguing to another, and the task of compiling special bibliographies and indexes utterly neglected or left to any one, and the whole work performed at different times and in different places, on different plans?

Surely it is contrary to all the dictates of reason and common sense that bibliography should be left to such precarious chances, and is in defiance of all rules of economy, efficiency, and division of labour.

This, then, is the remedy for the evil—the undertaking of national bibliography by the State.

And here let me point out that, in insisting on the registration of the sectional contents of collected-work series, I am not suggesting anything which is in any way unreasonable or impossible of execution.

For it can be proved with certainty that the registration to which I allude is actually carried on, on a very large scale, in numbers of catalogues in very many countries—which fact is alone sufficient proof of the wide-spread appreciation of its necessity and value.

My simple complaint is, that the work as at present attempted, is necessarily so imperfectly executed as to be most expensive and yet comparatively useless to the community, and I merely submit it to your judgment whether it is not worth while for the nation to carry out *well* that which the individual necessarily carries out badly.

### **The Respective Spheres of Government and Private Enterprise.**

But, let me be clearly understood: in advocating such a policy, I do not place a blind reliance in governments, for the learned societies have equally their particular responsibilities.

Indeed, it is an easy matter to assign their respective duties; for the sphere of each is clearly marked out, independently of any arbitrary decision.

Each does what the other cannot perform.

**Government lays the foundations of bibliography. It is for the private individual to complete the work.**

It is for governments to register national literature: (1) according to its natural divisions; (2) to undertake the work of issuing catalogues and special bibliographies and indexes according to the broad class-divisions of daily practical use, but on broad simple lines only.

Having done this, the work of Government ends and that of private individuals or learned societies begins, in the further elaboration of the factors supplied, according to minute and intricate classifications necessary for the full development of the several branches and sub-branches of learning. For it is obvious that, in recommending the presence of experts in National Libraries, I am only alluding to experts in the general outlines of the various sciences, and not to specialists in the highest sense of the word.

Furthermore, the learned societies, and, indeed, all who are responsible for the issue of collected literature in separate series journals, or magazines, can considerably lighten and facilitate the task of Government and make success more sure by transmitting periodically, to the Government bureau, extra proof-copies of each, work in the literature which it has created. (Every society is responsible for the registration of the birth of its own children.)

But even here the responsibility of the individual does not end, if attempt is made to register the literature of so wide a subject as that of geography. For let me remind you that no one branch of learning exists except in connection with other branches. And

nowhere is this truth more clearly illustrated than in the instance of geography, which, as it has been repeatedly shown by eminent geographers, links together the natural sciences, and forms an introduction to history in general.

For these reasons, to undertake the bibliography of geography is to make yourselves responsible for important sections of the bibliography of many of those branches of learning beyond that of geography generally.

Are you, for instance, prepared to supply periodical class-lists of all geographical works which have a special interest for *biologists, botanists, geologists, mineralogists, zoologists* ? and are *they* in a position to make like periodical returns in the many instances where they are the contributors of works which have a bearing on geography as a general science ?

Are you prepared to register geographical works in such a manner, year by year, that you can enable *schoolmasters, politicians, historians, sailors, soldiers, missionaries, doctors, merchants, travellers, and emigrants*, and others to benefit by the geographical literature annually issued which is of interest to *them* ? And are you prepared to arrange for the necessary exchange of literary items, not only in your own particular country, but between all civilised countries on the face of the globe ? And yet, this is all necessary work which yet remains to be done.

But I trust that I have already shown that it is impossible for you to accomplish the task, and therefore useless to attempt it.

### Conclusion.

I hope, therefore, that a definite agreement will be arrived at as to what are the agencies properly responsible for the execution of such work in every country—and all the more so because, in contending against disorder in geographical literature, you are fighting the battle of *all* the sciences ; for each branch of science (more especially the *zoologists, the geologists, and the lawyers*) has been engaged in the same conflict, and their requirements still remain unsatisfied. For these reasons, the future of bibliography is very dependent on the decision which you may give to-day.

This concludes the remarks which I have the honour of submitting to your attention.

Gentlemen, in the words of the President of the Congress,



"*The times of desultory work are past.*" These are the natural remedies for an unnatural evil, and the application of them lies in your hands.

## APPENDIX.

TABLE I.

## Showing the Natural Divisions of Literature.

DIVISION I.	DIVISION II.
GENERAL LITERATURE.	STATE OFFICIAL PAPERS.
1. Separate Works.	1. Separate Works.
<b>BURIED LITERATURE.</b>	
2. Works of Reference.	2. Works of Reference.
3. Ordinary "Collected Works" (essays, etc.).	3. Ordinary "Collected Works."
4. Works of Learned Societies (chiefly "collected.")	4. Works of State Institutions.
5. Magazines and Reviews.	5. Magazines and Reviews.

N.B.—Registration of literature, to be efficient, must coincide with the *natural* existing divisions and the parts of which they are composed.

TABLE II.

## Showing the kinds of Works of Reference which are Necessary in Literary Research :

1. Authors' Catalogues.
2. Title Catalogues.
3. Large-group Subject-Catalogues.  
(In which the works are kept together and classified according to the larger divisions of knowledge).
4. Small-group Subject-Catalogues.  
(In which the works are arranged according to the smaller divisions of knowledge—i.e. more scattered under the specific subject).
5. Subject indexes, or "indexes of matters."

*The above-mentioned works of reference are, strictly speaking, all necessary, according to circumstances, in reference to any collection of literature—whether it be the literature of the universe generally, or of any particular country, library, period, or subject. They are here specified for the purpose of showing that in undertaking the bibliography of any subject, such as "Geography," there is a great deal more work required than at first appears if the subject is to be dealt with in a thorough manner, and thus that the requirements and difficulties of private enterprise (as opposed to State-directed work) are far greater than is commonly realized.*

POSTSCRIPT (*added October, 1895*).

I am permitted to state that, at the time of reading the above paper, I had no knowledge of the recent spirited scheme projected by the Royal Society (for the "International Record of Scientific Literature"), papers of which were subsequently forwarded to me on application.

On a perusal of the papers received, I am glad to be able to state that they only emphasize the value of the principles I have referred to, and that there is, therefore, no necessity for me to modify any of my above remarks, except to express my admiration of the energetic action of the Royal Society, and my conviction that the investigations set on foot will tend to prove the necessity for the registration of literature by the State as the true foundation for all subsequent co-operative work, and that whatever promotes the general institution of such registration will most truly forward the object which the Royal Society has in view.—F.C.

---

Discussion.

Dr. H. R. MILL: I think the central difficulty in the way of preparing a bibliography of geography lies in classification. A mere catalogue of works under the authors' names is of comparatively little service, and no one who has not himself attempted to construct a scheme for cataloguing geographical works according to a geographical system of arrangement, can realise the true nature of the problem. Geographical works are already catalogued with some completeness as they appear, in the publications of several geographical societies. All these attempts are capable of improvement; but they are improving, and it

seems to me that, if Government aid is to be given to geographical bibliography in any country, it would be well to do so through the medium of the geographical societies rather than through the national libraries of the country.

The question is, in fact, rather one of geography than of bibliography, and the national division is unnatural. Even the division by languages is not an essential one. The literature of geography published in all countries, in any language, should be catalogued together, as the Royal Geographical Society are now attempting to catalogue, month by month, all the accessions to their library, not books alone, but—what is equally important—the chief memoirs published in the Transactions of Societies, and the principal articles in other periodical publications.

Monsieur PAYART : La Société de Géographie de Nancy a pris une résolution que j'ai l'honneur de soumettre au Congrès, en priant le Bureau de bien vouloir admettre cette résolution parmi celles sur lesquelles le vote doit avoir lieu samedi. La Société s'est occupée d'une lacune que vous aurez ressentie tous ; c'est qu'il est impossible aujourd'hui de trouver réunis les renseignements bibliographiques qu'il faut pour l'étude de la géographie.

Je propose donc à votre considération le projet suivant.

(1°) *Que toute Société de Géographie représentée à ce Congrès publie annuellement le catalogue des ouvrages, rapports, opuscules, cartes et plans de sa bibliothèque et adresse un ou deux exemplaires de ce catalogue à toutes les sociétés de géographie représentées au Congrès.*

(2°) *Que ce catalogue mentionne l'éditeur, la date, le prix de l'ouvrage, et les traductions qui en auraient été faites, ainsi que les traductions du catalogue, s'il y en a.*

N.B.—Pour éviter les frais d'édition, un appendice annuel suffira après l'envoi du catalogue.

Dans ces conditions, notre mission sera plus facile, plus productive, car toutes les nations du monde pourront être à la même hauteur scientifique. J'espère que ce Congrès international de géographie siégeant à Londres adoptera ce projet à l'unanimité.

M. PAUL VIDAL DE LABLACHE en faisant hommage au Congrès de la livraison de Bibliographie publiée pour l'année 1895 par les *Annales de Géographie*, insiste en quelques mots sur l'utilité que peuvent offrir, à côté de recueils, tels que la *Bibliotheca Geographica* publiée par la Société de Géographie de Berlin, des bibliographies volontairement incomplètes mais critiques et analytiques. Il faut supposer que le choix des compte-rendus y

soit exercé dans un esprit de sage discernement. Mais, s'il en est ainsi, il fait observer que ce genre de Bibliographies peut rendre de réels services, surtout aux étudiants, à cause du nombre et de la valeur très inégales des publications qui s'accumulent chaque année dans les diverses branches de la géographie.

If I were asked to strike the keynote of my paper on "The Literature of Geography," I should say :—"Geography does not begin or end with Geographical Societies, any more than it begins or ends with itself.

---

### Registers of Colonial Literature.

The following were my remarks<sup>1</sup> on the occasion of the reading of a paper, on "*The Library of the Royal Colonial Institute*," by the Librarian, Mr. J. R. Boosé, May 29th, 1894.<sup>2</sup>

I reprint them here, as they form another link in the chain of argument which I have endeavoured to place before the Librarian world for several years. Sir Frederick Young kindly promised at the meeting that the Council of the Institute would do their best to help in the matter, with the result detailed in Mr. Boosé's interesting and instructive paper on the subject, which I have received permission to reprint in this work.

"Mr. F. B. CAMPBELL: May I be permitted to add my appreciations to those already expressed for the very interesting paper to which we have listened? It is a subject of intense interest to me, and I am sure that it is impossible to over-estimate the influence which the Royal Colonial Institute has exerted in this country, in disseminating information concerning our Colonial Empire. And it is because the Institute has done *much* in the past that I am ambitious for it to do *more* in the future. It may sound enigmatical, and at first ungracious, when I say that I am anxious that the Institute should use its powerful influence so to organise the bibliography of the Colonies that it may eventually render us independent of its own existence. Let me explain myself. The Chairman in his opening remarks conferred upon librarians the honourable epithet of 'Guardians of Literature,' and it is a term of which librarians must be proud. At the same time, however, while in one sense, we must ever remain the 'Guardians of Literature'—in so far as we may have collections of books entrusted to our charge—yet, it should ever be the highest ambition of librarians not to be the willing guardians of the *contents* of books, but as much as possible to render the world independent of our *personal* presence and knowledge, by the due supply of the necessary lists,

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted from the *Proceedings of the Royal Colonial Institute*.

<sup>2</sup> At a meeting of the Library Association, held at the Royal Colonial Institute.

bibliographies, and catalogues. The Library of this Institute, as we have just heard, is rich in stores of Colonial literature, but, gentlemen, the Royal Colonial Institute exists only in London. There are thousands of men throughout the country (at least we hope so) who are interested in the Colonies, and who wish to keep themselves informed on Colonial matters, but they cannot all come to *London*—some may be living in the most inaccessible wilds of Scotland—and how are they to inform themselves under the circumstances? Now, at the present moment, the bibliography of the Colonies is in a most disordered state, both in regard to general literature and official 'State Papers'—and this in spite of the praiseworthy efforts of many private individuals, some of whom are in the room at the present moment. And *why*? Simply because it is not a matter in which private enterprise alone ever can succeed: it is essentially the work of Governments, and Governments alone can perform it. One of the speakers has just alluded to the value of supplying information relative to the Colonies. But how is it possible for us to obtain such information if the Colonies omit to publish lists and catalogues, and to keep them up to date? At the present moment, with a few minor exceptions, the Colonies do nothing in the matter. It is true that there are a certain number of isolated works of reference of a kind, but they are *neither continuous nor complete* (points on which all bibliography hinges), while in the great and important division of 'State Papers,' there is only a handful of indexes, which are not compiled in the right manner, and which cannot atone for the absence of proper catalogues. Only recently a very considerable 'Australasian Bibliography,' has been published at Sydney. But, although this is a most useful work, representing much labour, yet it does not fully satisfy our wants, and such a publication never can and never ought to satisfy us. It is radically wrong that Sydney should attempt to do the work of Melbourne, Brisbane, and Adelaide, and other Colonial centres—for the simple reason that it never can perform the work *completely*. Each Colony can alone do its own work, and it is to each Colonial Government separately that we should look. And as to the whole question, the remedy is so very simple, and merely a matter of common-sense. All that we desire is that the several Colonial Governments should each issue periodical printed registers, containing entries of every work published during a given period, with full titles of the same, and that this should be done, not only in reference to general literature, but that similar

lists should be issued every year, containing separate entries of the titles of each individual 'State Paper' published. If this be accomplished, then we shall all be able to purchase complete reference lists of the literature of any Colony for any period of time, and our present difficulties will vanish."

In the course of the discussion, Mr. Garnett, the keeper of the Department of Printed Books at the British Museum, kindly supported the above remarks in the following terms:—

"Respecting the shortcomings of Colonial Governments in the dissemination of Colonial literature, I must express my concurrence with the remarks of Mr. Campbell. I cannot but think that if these Governments were to recognise the importance of the people of the Mother Country being well informed on their affairs, they would take more pains to make the productions of their press accessible at home. I presume that Colonial publications are registered by some public authority, and if so, I can see no insuperable difficulty in making them known by an official publication, if only an occasional page of the 'Government Gazette.' It is remarkable that the disposition to carry out the Imperial Copyright Act seems to be, generally speaking, in inverse proportion to the importance of the Colony and the liberality of its institutions. Many Crown Colonies have passed ordinances entitling the Museum to receive their publications, and thus preventing the Copyright Act from remaining a dead letter. The Indian Government, unsolicited, have included the Museum in their own Copyright Act, but no self-governing Colony of the first rank has adopted either of these courses except the Cape of Good Hope. I hope that the influence of the Royal Colonial Institute may be judiciously exerted to procure an amendment in this respect; and I desire to express once more my appreciation of what has been done already, and the interest with which Mr. Boosé's paper has inspired me."

---

**Registers of Colonial Publications;<sup>1</sup> by J. R. Boosé,  
Librarian, Royal Colonial Institute.**

A SHORT time since, it was my privilege to read a paper before the members of the Association, in which I gave an account of the contents of the library of the Royal Colonial Institute. In the course of the discussion which followed, a suggestion was made that the several Colonial Governments should each issue **Periodical Printed Registers** containing entries of every work published during a given period, with full titles of the same, and that this should be done, not only in reference to **General Literature**, but that similar lists should be issued every year, containing separate entries of the titles of each individual **State-Paper** published; and further, that the Council of the Royal Colonial Institute should draw the attention of the Colonial Governments to the matter. Impressed with the importance of the suggestion, the Council of the Institute took the necessary steps to ascertain the views of the Colonies; and it is my intention to place before you the results of their action, so far as replies are received.

Before doing so, however, a few words are necessary as to the past from a bibliographer's point of view. It is an undisputed fact that the bibliography of the Colonies generally is in a thoroughly disordered state, it having been no one's business to preserve the records of general literature, or of the official State-Papers. In spite of this, however, several public-spirited individuals have, in a most praiseworthy manner, compiled valuable bibliographies of separate Colonies, but their exertions have barely been recognised. As a case in point, I might mention the magnificent work commenced by Mr. E. A. Petherick, in a quarterly publication, known as the *Torch*, of a Bibliography of Australasia, which had to be abandoned owing to insufficient support being accorded to it, even to cover the cost of printing. It has been my privilege to see Mr. Petherick's bibliography,

---

<sup>1</sup> Read before the Eighteenth Annual Meeting of the Library Association, Cardiff, September, 1895, and reprinted from "The Library."



which has occupied many years of close and diligent research, and I can conscientiously say that it is a most complete and exhaustive collection of titles of Australasian literature, which would prove of the utmost value to all students of the history and progress of those Colonies. Such a work should, undoubtedly, be acquired and published by one or other or all of the Governments of the Australasian Colonies, and so rendered accessible to the world, and to librarians in particular. In a few instances bibliographies of individual Colonies have been published: this being the case as regards New South Wales, South Australia, New Zealand, the provinces of Canada, the Straits Settlements, Ceylon, Cyprus, and Jamaica, but with these exceptions, and a few others, the student of Colonial literature has no opportunity, without the expenditure of much time and labour, of gaining any knowledge of the numerous works, both official and otherwise, which have been published in the Colonies, from time to time, up to a certain period. All that has been done is due to private enterprise and energy; and there is no immediate prospect, with one or two exceptions only, of any official action being taken in the Colonies, as regards the past. Such being the case, we must turn to the future with hope and, I am glad to say, with some encouragement of official assistance in the preservation of complete Records of Colonial Literature.

Coming now to the action of the Council of the Royal Colonial Institute, on the 7th March last, the following resolution was forwarded to every Colonial Government:—

**“That the Colonial Governments be respectfully invited to issue—through the medium of their Government Gazettes or otherwise—Registers containing entries of all official publications within given periods, and also all other locally published works, with their full titles, so as to furnish for general information complete records of the literature of each Colony.”**

As regards the terms of that resolution it was pointed out that, whilst endeavouring to complete their own collection of Colonial literature, almost insuperable difficulties presented themselves, inasmuch as there were no available records of the works that had been locally published; and, under the circumstances, it was submitted that if the authorities of each Colony would cause the full titles of all books published in such Colony to be periodically notified, the difficulties referred to would be removed, and much valuable information made available to the public at large.

The replies to that resolution I will now briefly submit to you :—

In the **Dominion of Canada** all publications, both official and otherwise, which are copyright, appear in the **Canadian Patent Office Record**, which is issued monthly. By an Act passed in 1886, the Minister of Agriculture is responsible for the proper registration of works, official lists having been published in the *Record* for the past twenty-two years. It should be also stated that the Department of Agriculture at Ottawa is the centre for the registry of works published in all the Provinces of the Dominion.

No special regulations are in force in **Newfoundland** for the registration of publications, but the Government of the Colony has undertaken that in future the publication of all works, both official and unofficial, shall be recorded.

The Government of **Bermuda** is of opinion that no necessity exists for issuing any special registers of locally published works, as only a few annual official returns are issued in the Colony, together with an annual almanac. This reply is unsatisfactory, as the trouble and expense of publishing the titles of such works as are issued would be almost *nil*, and although the publications themselves may, to some extent, be insignificant, the registration of their titles would considerably assist in the work of the future—which remark equally applies to several of the Colonies to which I shall refer.

In **Australasia** one might expect to find a perfect system in force for the registration of all works issued in those Colonies, but, except in the cases of **New South Wales** and **Victoria**, little or nothing has been done by the Governments of the other Colonies. The reply of **New South Wales** is to the effect that the public library at Sydney issues once a quarter a list of all private local publications received by that library, and that a list of official publications is published from time to time in the Government Gazette. No more unsatisfactory method could exist than this division of labour between the public library and the Government printer, as well as the uncertain periods at which the lists appear.

In **Victoria** a copyright register is kept at the office of the Commissioner of Patents, but as registration is not compulsory, that register contains the names of only a very small proportion of works issued in the Colony, although the Melbourne Public Library is entitled, under the Copyright Act of 1890, to a copy of every book first published in Victoria. As regards official

publications, periodical lists are published by the Government printer, this being the system adopted by New South Wales—a division of labour between the public librarian and the Government printing department.

The reply of the Queensland Government is extremely brief, and is as follows;—Upon inquiry, the Government has ascertained that there are no means at their disposal of complying with the resolution in regard to the periodical notification of complete lists of all works published in the Colony.

The reply from Western Australia is that, with the exception of a Year Book and Blue Book, there are no official publications issued by the Government of that Colony, and that with regard to private works there are none which have been locally published, the few books known to have been written by Colonists having been published in England. During the past twelve months, however, there have been delivered in London from Western Australia over 150 distinct Parliamentary papers and reports published by the Government printer, besides volumes of debates, statutes, &c., together with private works of considerable interest bearing upon the mineral resources of the colony. Such an official intimation, therefore, gives little encouragement to those interested in Colonial bibliography.

As regards New Zealand, lists of works published by Government are *usually* notified in the New Zealand Government Gazette from time to time, and a price list of all Government publications for sale is issued at intervals. There is, however, no information available regarding works published by private firms and individuals, though it is believed that the number of books (as distinguished from pamphlets) so published is small, perhaps, not exceeding ten per annum. It is worthy of mention, as regards New Zealand, that a very complete bibliography was compiled in 1889 by Mr. J. Collier, the Librarian to Parliament, and published under the auspices of the Colonial Government.

Fiji simply acknowledges the receipt of the resolution; whilst no replies have been received from South Australia or Tasmania.

Summarising, therefore, the replies from Australasia, they cannot be described as anything but disappointing. It will be noticed that in no single instance is it suggested that steps will be taken in future to comply with the terms of the resolution.

The comparison between the Australasian Colonies and the Cape of Good Hope is most marked, the last-named Government having for some years past recognised the importance of preserving

complete records of the various works published in the Colony. In accordance with the **Books Registry Act of 1888**, as well as under the provisions of the **Copyright Act of 1873**, a transcript of the entries registered in the Registry Book, under either of those Acts, has to be prepared quarterly by the Registrar of Deeds, and forthwith published in the Government Gazette. By this means a complete register of all works is preserved, showing the date of registration, the title of the book, &c., the time of publication, name and place of abode of the publisher, name and place of abode of the proprietor of the copyright, name of author, editor, or compiler, and general remarks. The system is in every way excellent; and might, with advantage, be taken as a guide by other Colonies.

The neighbouring Colony of **Natal** is as backward as the **Cape of Good Hope** is advanced; the reply being that in the absence of any copyright law, under which registration of all publications would be necessary, there are no means of requiring publishers to return lists of works published by them. No reference whatever is made to official publications. The question, however, I have been privately informed, is to receive the attention of the Legislative Council at an early date, when the system in force in the Cape Colony will probably be adopted.

The **West African Colonies** are decidedly sympathetic, and willing to co-operate; the Governments of the **Gold Coast** and **Sierra Leone** replying that the request of the Council will, as far as possible, be provided for. No replies have yet been received from either **Lagos** or the **Gambia**.

In what may be termed the Eastern Colonies, a most satisfactory state of affairs exists. In **Ceylon**, the **Straits Settlements**, **Hong-Kong**, and **Mauritius** (where copyright laws are in force), the system adopted is excellent in each instance; and it is to be regretted that the course pursued by these Crown Colonies has not been adopted by the Colonies of which I have already spoken. In **Ceylon**, a list, such as that suggested, is published quarterly; and already two volumes have been issued, containing lists of works published in the island since 1885. The **Straits Settlements** have issued quarterly, since 1886, lists containing particulars of *non-official* works published in the Colony, and with reference to official publications, instructions have been issued for the compilation of an annual list to commence with the current year. **Hong-Kong**, by means of an ordinance passed in 1888, has in every way complied with the

terms of the resolution from that date ; whilst in **Mauritius** the practice is to have a return of all publications published quarterly in the Government Gazette.

Turning to the **West Indies**, replies have been received from **British Guiana**, **Jamaica**, **Trinidad**, **Barbadoes**, the **Windward Islands**, and the **Bahamas**. As regards **Jamaica**, lists of non-official publications have, since 1887, been published quarterly in the *Jamaica Gazette*, in accordance with the provisions of an Act passed in that year ; and directions have now been given for the issue of a quarterly list of all official publications. I may here draw attention to the excellent work which has been already commenced by Mr. Frank Cundall, the secretary and librarian of the Institute of Jamaica, in the compilation of a Bibliography of the literature of Jamaica—the first attempt, I believe, on record. Mr. Cundall's work cannot fail to prove of considerable service to all students of West Indian history, as well as to his brother librarians in this country.

In **British Guiana** no record has been kept of publications of the nature referred to, but the matter is receiving consideration, and it is hoped that the Government may be able to make arrangements to meet the wishes of the Institute.

**Trinidad** has carried out the terms of the resolution in every respect for the past seven years—quarterly returns of all publications being regularly published in the *Royal Gazette*.

The Government of **Barbadoes** replies that if a specimen copy of the form of the register which it is desired to have kept is supplied, the Governor will be glad to comply, as far as as may be practicable, with the request of the Institute.

The Government of the **Windward Islands** has undertaken to issue lists of all publications once a year in the Government Gazettes of the three islands of the **Windward group**, viz., **Grenada**, **St. Vincent**, and **St. Lucia**.

The reply from the **Bahamas** is to the effect that only a few official publications are locally published, but that should any other publications be issued in the Colony, the desire of the Council will be borne in mind.

The Mediterranean Colonies of **Malta** and **Cyprus** have replied to the following effect : the Government of **Malta** states that it would be extremely difficult to comply wholly with the request, inasmuch as only such publications come under the cognisance of the Government for which copyright under an ordinance passed in 1888 is applied for, but that quarterly lists

of copyright works are published in the Government Gazette, whereas in Cyprus an ordinance is in force requiring the publication annually of all non-official works, and that with respect to official publications, which are few in number, the suggestion will be adopted.

The small Colony of the **Falkland Islands** undertakes to make a note of the request in the event of their being any publication within the Colony.

I may mention that in every instance the Colonies have kindly consented to supply the Royal Colonial Institute with such lists as are published, and these I shall at all times be pleased to place at the disposal of any member of the Association who may desire to consult them.

Having now traversed the Empire, it will be seen that whilst many of the Colonial Governments are willing to comply with the terms of the resolution formulated by the Council of the Royal Colonial Institute, there are instances where nothing has been done in the past, and little or no encouragement is held out for a better state of things in the future. There may possibly be reasons for such a course, but such indifference cannot but be detrimental to the interests of those Colonies. I have been told that to try to get the whole of the Colonies to comply with such a request is but the dream of an enthusiast, but this applies equally to other great questions which have been stated to be beyond the bounds of practical politics, but which have been taken up and carried into effect after considerable difficulty and opposition. So with the question of **Registration of titles of works published in the Colonies**. The time must come when those Colonies which at present have taken no steps towards publishing lists such as have been suggested, will give their support to a subject which requires very little outlay of either time or money, and which will be for the benefit not only of the Colonies themselves, but of the empire at large; for in the face of an ever-growing empire, an ever-multiplying mass of literature regarding it, it becomes more than ever important that every individual Colony should assist in the compilation of a bibliography of one of the greatest empires the world has ever seen.

J. R. BOOSE.

### List of Periodical State-Printed Registers of Literature issued in India, and certain of the Colonies.

The value of the greater number of these Registers would be greatly enhanced if they (according to the particular case)

- (1) Separated Official Literature from General Literature ;
- (2) Included Newspapers ;
- (3) Separated Periodicals from Non-Periodicals ;
- (4) Separated Continuations from Non-Continuations ;
- (5) Gave a running number to each item, commencing afresh each year ;
- (6) Printed the Registers on uniform-sized Paper.

#### Colonies.

##### Periodical State-Printed Registers of General Literature.

###### Canada.

[Monthly List of] Copyrights entered . . . at the Dept. of Agriculture. (Copyright Division, Ottawa).

*Printed in the "Canadian Patent Office Record."*

*Might this not be published separately as a Single-sheet List?*

###### Cape Colony.

Transcript (*Quarterly*) of the Entries Registered in the Registry Book, under Acts No. 2 of 1873, and 4 of 1888 . . . published in terms of Section VI. of the last-mentioned Act, &c.

###### Ceylon.

Statement (*Quarterly*) of Books printed in Ceylon, and Registered under Ordinance No. 1 of 1885, &c.

*A Quarterly Supplement to the Ceylon Government Gazette.*

###### Cyprus.

Memoranda (*Annual*) of Books Printed and Registered in Cyprus, &c.

###### Hong-Kong.

Return (*Quarterly*) of Books Registered under Section 6 of Ordinance 10 of 1888, &c.

###### Jamaica.

Return (*Quarterly*) of Books published in Jamaica, &c.

*Printed in the Government Gazette.*

###### Malta.

Return (*Quarterly*) of Books printed in the Island of Malta, and its Dependencies, and delivered at the Public Registry, &c.

**Mauritius.**

An Ordinance to provide for the Preservation of Books printed in Mauritius, and for the Registration of such Books (No. 11 of 1893).

**Newfoundland.**

An Act to provide for the Preservation of Copies of Books printed in Newfoundland, and for the Registration of such Books (50th Vict., Cap. 18).

**River Gambia Settlements.**

An Ordinance to provide for the Preservation of Copies of Books printed in the Settlement on the River Gambia, and for the Registration of such Books (No. 1 of 1888).

**Sierra Leone.**

[A Book Registration Ordinance] was passed on the 19th Jan., 1887.

**Straits Settlements.**

Memoranda (*Quarterly*) of Books registered in the Catalogue of Books Printed in the Straits Settlements, under the Provisions of Ordinance No. xv. of 1886, &c.

**Trinidad.**

A Catalogue of Books printed in Trinidad, and delivered to the Register General, &c.

## India.

### Periodical State-Printed Registers of General Literature.

**Ajmere—Merwara.**

Catalogue of Books and Periodicals Registered.

**Assam.**

Catalogue of Books registered, &c. (Assam Library.)

**Bengal.**

Bengal Library Catalogue of Books, &c.  
*Quarterly Appendix to the Calcutta Gazette.*

**Bombay and Sind.**

Catalogue of Books Printed in the Bombay Presidency [including Sind], &c.

**Burma.**

Catalogue of Books registered in Burma, &c.

**Central Provinces.**

Catalogue of Books registered in the Central Provinces . . . under Act XXV. of 1867, as amended by Act X. of 1890.

**Haidarabad Assigned Districts.**

Memorandum of Books issued in the Hyderabad Assigned Districts.

**Madras.**

A Catalogue of Books printed in the Madras Presidency, &c.  
*A Quarterly Supplement to the Fort St. George Gazette.*

**Mysore (Bangalore).**

Catalogue of Books printed in the Civil and Military Station of Bangalore, and registered, &c.

**Mysore.**

Catalogue of Books registered under the Government of Mysore, &c.



**North-Western Provinces and Oudh.**

Statement of Particulars Regarding Books and Periodicals published in the North-West Provinces and Oudh, &c.

**Oudh.**

Catalogue of Books printed in Oudh (—1877). For subsequent years, *see* North-Western Provinces and Oudh.

**Punjab.**

Catalogue of Books registered in the Punjab, &c.

**Sind.**

*See* Bombay and Sind.

**Periodical Printed Registers of Official Literature.**

**India.**

List of Official Publications (other than confidential) issued by Departments of the Government of India and Local Governments and Administrations . . . which are exempted from Registration.

**Bombay.**

List of Official Publications printed in the Bombay Presidency, &c

---

## Instances of State-Printed Registers of Literature issued by Foreign Governments.

### I.—General Literature.

The most noticeable approximate instances of State-Printed Registers of National Literature issued by Foreign Governments which have come to the notice of the writer are the following:—  
**United States of America.**

“Copyright. Catalogue of Title-entries of Books, and other articles entered in the Office of the Librarian of Congress, under the Copyright Law of 1895. (Issued by the Dept. of the Treasury.)”

**Chili.**

Anuario de la Prensa Chilena. Publicado por la Biblioteca Nacional.

**France.**

Bulletin mensuel des récentes publications françaises (Bibliothèque Nationale).

**Italy.**

Bollettino delle Pubblicazioni Italiane ricevute per diritto di stampa. (Biblioteca Nazionale Centrale di Firenze.)

**Spain.**

Boletín de la Propiedad Intelectual publicado por el Ministerio de Fomento. Tom I. Registro General. 1879, 1880-81 [ &c. ] Continued nearly up to date. Madrid, 1886, &c. 8°.

### II.—Official Documents.

**America (Official Documents).**

I have not time to record the few instances of State-Printed Registers of Official Documents, issued by Foreign Governments, that have come to my notice, but I know of none (Foreign) issued on the same scale as those now being issued by the Government of America, although these are capable of great improvement.

Comprehensive Index of the Publications of the United States Government, 1889-1893, by J. G. Ames, Superintendent

of Documents, &c. 52 Congr., Sess. 2. *House Misc. Doc.*  
No. 95. *Washington*, 1894. fol.

Catalogue (Monthly) of Publications issued by the Govern-  
ment of the United States during the month[s] of January  
[-March, 1895. (Nos. 1-3.)

*Continued as :*

Catalogue of United States Public Documents, issued  
monthly by the Superintendent of Documents, Government  
Printing Office. (April, 1895, &c.) No. 4, &c. *Government*  
*Printing Office, Washington*, 1895. 8°.

**Circular Letter addressed by the Committee of the Royal Society to various "Scientific Bodies" and "Scientific Men" relative to proposed International co-operation in the Record of Scientific Literature.**

The following is a copy of the text of the Royal Society's Circular of 1894 on the subject of the Record of Scientific Literature (reprinted by permission, with certain changes of type).

The circular is remarkable as showing how thoroughly the Committee grasped the essential points of importance from a bibliographer's point of view, viz. :—

- (1) That the compilation of the Catalogue should aim at *completeness*.
- (2) That it should take note of all Scientific Literature, irrespective of the *form* in which it is published.
- (3) That (recognising the insufficiency of titles) "the text of each paper, and not the title only" should be consulted.
- (4) That the work should be issued in rapid periodical instalments.
- (5) That while the Literature of Science is to be attacked as a *large group*, its parts shall be so sectionally dealt with that "the portion which pertains to any particular branch of Science might be obtained separately."
- (6) That there must be *International Co-operation*.

As to the feasibility of obtaining complete records, even with the best co-operation of Scientific Societies, the author's views are expressed in other parts of this work.

[COPY.]

THE ROYAL SOCIETY,  
BURLINGTON HOUSE,  
..... 1894.

SIR,

The Royal Society of London, as you are probably aware, has published nine quarto volumes of "The Catalogue of Scientific Papers," the first volume of the Decade 1874-83 having been issued last year.

This Catalogue is limited to *periodical scientific literature*, *i.e.*, to papers published in the Transactions, &c., of Societies, and in Journals; it takes no account whatever of monographs and independent books, however important. The titles, moreover, are arranged solely according to authors' names; and though the Society has long had under consideration the preparation of, and it is hoped may eventually issue, as a key to the volumes already published, a list in which the titles are arranged according to subject matter, the Catalogue is still being prepared according to authors' names. Further, though the Society has endeavoured to include the titles of all the scientific papers published in periodicals of acknowledged standing, the Catalogue is, even as regards periodical literature, confessedly incomplete, owing to the omission of the titles of papers published in periodicals of little importance, or not easy of access.

Owing to the great development of scientific literature the task of the Society in continuing the Catalogue, even in its present form, is rapidly increasing in difficulty. At the same time it is clear that the progress of science would be greatly helped by, indeed, almost demands, the compilation of a Catalogue which should aim at completeness, and should contain the titles of scientific publications, whether appearing in periodicals or independently. In such a Catalogue the titles should be arranged not only according to authors' names, but also according to subject matter, the text of each paper and not the title only being consulted for the latter purpose. And the value of the Catalogue would be greatly enhanced by a rapid periodical issue, and by publication in such a form that the portion which pertains to any particular branch of science might be obtained separately.

It is needless to say that the preparation and publication of such a complete Catalogue is far beyond the power and means of any single Society.

Led by the above considerations, the President and Council of the Royal Society have appointed a Committee to inquire into and report upon *the feasibility of such a Catalogue being compiled through International Co-operation*.

The Committee are not as yet in a position to formulate any distinct plan by which such international co-operation might be brought about; but it may be useful even at the outset to make the following preliminary suggestions:—

The Catalogue should commence with papers published on or after January 1, 1900.

A central office or bureau should be established in some place to be hereafter chosen, and should be maintained by international contributions, either directly, that is by annual or other subsidies, or indirectly, that is by the guarantee to purchase a certain number of copies of the Catalogue.

This office should be regularly supplied with all the information necessary for the construction of the Catalogue. This might be done either by all periodicals, monographs, &c., being sent direct to the office to be catalogued there, or by various institutions undertaking to send in portions of the Catalogue already prepared, or by both methods combined.

At such an office arrangements might be made by which, in addition to preparing the Catalogue, scientific data might be tabulated as they came to hand in the papers supplied.

The first step, however, is to ascertain whether any scheme of international co-operation is feasible and desirable. The Committee accordingly is desirous of learning the views upon this subject of scientific bodies and of scientific men.

We therefore venture to express the hope that you will be so good as, at some early opportunity, to make known to us, for the use of the Committee, your own views on the matter.

Should the decision you report be in any way favourable to the scheme, may we further ask you to communicate to us, for the use of the Committee, any suggestions which you may think it desirable to make, as to the best methods of inaugurating such a scheme, as to the constitution and means of maintenance of the Central Office, as to the exact character of the work to be carried on there, as to the language or languages in which the Catalogue should be published, and the like?

We are,

Your obedient Servants,

M. FOSTER, *Secretary R. S.*

RAYLEIGH, *Secretary R. S.*

J. LISTER, *Foreign Sec. R. S.*

---

### “L’Institut International de Bibliographie.”<sup>1</sup>

THE month of September, 1895, marks the commencement of a new era in the history of Bibliography, as having witnessed the first **International Conference of Librarians**, met together to discuss the promotion of international co-operation, in the introduction of order into the whole world of literature.

In one sense, the Conference was not altogether “international,” for there were many who either did not hear of it at all, or who heard of it too late to be able to attend.

In spite of this, however, the meeting, held under the auspices of the Belgian Government, and under the presidency of M. le Chev. Ed. Deschamps, Sénateur, was a decided success, as is testified by the account of it published in the official *Bulletin*, No. 1.

The holding of the Conference was due to the initiative of MM. La Fontaine and Otlet. It appears that these gentlemen, having devoted themselves during the last six years to the classification of works on Sociology and other subjects, were so impressed by the remarkable facilities of the Dewey system of classification, that they resolved, as impartial advocates, to do their utmost to popularise the system in Europe, and, further still, sought opportunity of bringing the advantages of the system to the notice of the nations in general, with a view, if possible, of arriving at some common basis of operations in regard to the record of the literature both of the past and future.

But while the advocacy of the Dewey system appears to have been the original motive power at the Conference, the chief significance of the Conference lies in the fact that it wisely constituted itself an association for the *scientific* investigation and promotion of *all* matters and measures calculated to facilitate future literary research.

In fact, so resolute was the conference on this point that its leading statute clears the air with the almost fierce announce-

<sup>1</sup> An Article contributed to “The Library,” No. 83 (Vol. vii.), November, 1895.

ment that it is "une association exclusivement scientifique." And, indeed, it is high time for the institution of such an association, for the present moment is a most critical one in the history of Bibliography. The civilised world has grown tired of confusion. Confusion of tongues is bad enough, but confusion of books is worse; and thus we see, on all sides, learned societies of different character, combining, with the determination of doing their best to remedy the present state of affairs. Their very zeal and energy is the chief danger against which we have to contend. Matters have drifted for so long that we are now confronted by the danger of rushed remedies and the stereotyping of hastily considered measures, which might easily, in the end, involve fresh complications, for when once systems are laid down on false or imperfect lines, it is not easy to change them.

It is not impatience alone, however, which characterises the hour; it is the existence of a number of isolated efforts on the part of different bodies and individuals which are certain not only to clash with one another, but which may even hinder one another most seriously. The intricacies of literature are such that our interests are all identical. We must attack literature as a *whole*, on one well-ordered, scientific plan, carefully studied beforehand, which shall take cognisance of the wants of ALL, and thus prevent the few from selfishly spoiling the chances of the many.

For these reasons librarians should hail the advent of the "Institut International de Bibliographie" with joy, should wish it all success, and should be eager to help forward that success. And the augury of the future is all the more propitious because the organisers of the Conference went to the root of the matter in definitely recognising the fact that the future of Bibliography depends not only upon the general co-operation of Governments, but also on their actual intervention in the control and direction of National Bibliography. While giving utterance, however, to such congratulations, it may not be out of place to add one word of warning on the subject.

It is true that the Dewey system has very many and great advantages. Its adaptability for the arrangement of books in a library; its comprehensiveness; its perspicuity; its consistency; its certainty; its powers of expansion; its detachment of subsections; and many other qualities, all elicit our highest admiration; and since any system is better than none, and no system can be perfect, and the Dewey system approaches a very high standard of perfection, has stood the severest test of long use in



many hundred libraries, and is not likely to be paralleled, there is every reason for wishing to see it introduced as a standard system of classification throughout the world.

But whether it be a sound principle that "*la classification bibliographique*" may in the division of *science* exist independently of "*la classification scientifique*" for all ages, and at the same time continue to be practically useful, is a question which is open to criticism. And on this head it would be interesting to know how far the Dewey system can be made to adapt itself in detail to future changes in the natural classification of sciences.

The point, however, which it is necessary to emphasise, is that there are many other preliminaries relative to International Bibliography, which, while being of vital importance for laying the foundations of subsequent work, are open to no sort of criticism, and which might therefore be referred to the several Governments with a far greater chance of their being immediately acted upon. Thus it is, in the first instance, absolutely essential that each Government should issue proper periodical catalogues of its official documents. Again, it is of the highest importance that each Government should issue complete quarterly (if not monthly) lists of its own particular modern literature. There is also reason to suppose that the final acceptance of the Dewey system of classification would be a more probable event if the Institute confined itself at first to the request that each Government should, dealing with the present, issue Periodical Class Lists of Literature grouped under the *ten main* divisions only. That this might fairly be asked, and as easily granted, is the more probable, because with a few minor exceptions, these are the divisions already practically recognised throughout the literary world. And it must be remembered that to press the claims of the Dewey system is practically to ask the several Governments to issue duplicate records of their several literatures (a request in no way unreasonable but not so easily sanctioned). For while official lists must generally coincide with the systems pursued at the National Libraries, the arrangement of these libraries is not based on the Dewey system, and could scarcely be changed. It is one thing to adapt a few thousand books to a new system and another to adapt the millions. Furthermore, it must be pointed out, that great as are the advantages of the Dewey system, although it can greatly aid, it can never entirely obviate the necessity for the additional compilation of special bibliographies. For these reasons it would

be unwise if the Institut attempted to pledge the several Governments to the *details* of the Dewey system at too early an hour.

It should be mentioned that one of the special advantages to be derived from the Institut is the proposed co-operative issue of titles (on supple uniform slips) of all literature, with the Dewey book-marks affixed, so that those who are interested in a particular subject may easily obtain the required titles by quoting the numbers of the sections desired.

These are the chief reflections which naturally occur on a perusal of the first number of the *Bulletin* of the Institut. It is obvious that the present effort cannot compare for one moment with the importance of the Conference to be convened by the Royal Society, in London in 1896. The Institut International has but commenced: the all-powerful Royal Society is bringing to a ripe conclusion the investigations of several years. But it should be borne in mind that, while the latter society concerns itself with the one section of "*scientific*" literature, however important, the other will deal with the *whole* area of literature. For this reason the value of the Institut International must be viewed in regard to its wider sphere of work, and if its operations are wisely conducted, and it is made truly representative of international opinion, there is little doubt but that it is destined to rank as the highest factor in the future of Bibliography. It is to be hoped that the Institut will place itself in communication with the Royal Society, with a view to a mutual understanding.

It remains only to say that the Institut will hold an annual session, that the present subscription is ten francs, that the headquarters as at present determined are at Brussels (Hotel Ravenstein, Rue Ravenstein, 11), from whence all information will be supplied.

Otherwise the character of the Institut may best be gathered from the appended Memorandum of Statute No. 1, and of the ten resolutions passed at the Conference.

The reader will probably agree in the conclusion that, if ever the ideas sketched in the *Athenæum* of the year 1850 are in any way to be realised, it will be through the agency of the "Institut International de Bibliographie."

FRANK CAMPBELL.

### Resolutions.

1.—The Conference is of opinion that the results of the Decimal system of classification are fully satisfactory, not only

from a general practical point of view, but also for purposes of international co-operation.

2.—The Conference invites attention to the results already obtained from the use of the Dewey system of classification, and recommends its entire adoption with a view to promoting a basis of international agreement as soon as possible.

3.—The Conference expresses the desire that all Governments should form a Universal Bibliographical Union, with a view to the creation of an International Bibliographical Office. It instructs its bureau to respectfully convey this resolution to the Belgian Government in the hope that it will initiate the necessary measures for furthering the project under consideration.

4.—The Conference resolves on the creation of an Institute of International Bibliography.

5.—The Conference, being of opinion that all systematic classification presupposes the existence of complete and accurate National Bibliographies, desires to draw the attention of the several Governments to the importance of uniformity of legislation in regard to the registration of printed works.

6.—The Conference expresses the desire that Governments directing the compilation of National Bibliographies, should insist on the adoption of the Decimal system of classification.

7.—The Conference expresses the desire that privately printed catalogues, and most particularly booksellers' general catalogues, should similarly adopt the decimal classification.

8.—The conference expresses the desire that the resolutions adopted by the "Association française pour l'Avancement des Sciences," at Bordeaux, August, 1895, relative to the supply of titles of scientific works by the authors, be generally accepted.

9.—The Conference acknowledges the announcement, made by MM. La Fontaine and Otlet, concerning the proposed gift of their index of 400,000 slips, for the use of the future International Bibliographical Bureau, and returns thanks to those gentlemen for their energetic efforts and for their generous donation.

10.—Pending the final settlement of the constitution of the Bureau, the Conference suggests that the existing Bureau at Brussels should continue its labours on the principles of International scientific co-operation.

The Conference also expresses the special hope that the Dewey Classification Tables be immediately translated into German, French, and Italian.

**Statutes.**

In the case of Statute I. (which alone is here quoted), it may be better to give it in the original :—

I.—L'Institut International de Bibliographie est une association exclusivement scientifique.

Il a pour but :

- (1°) De favoriser les progrès de l'inventaire, du classement, et de la description des productions de l'esprit humain ;
  - (2°) De déterminer les unités bibliographiques en vue de faciliter, d'internationaliser, et de perfectionner le caractère scientifique de ce classement ;
  - (3°) De donner son concours à toute tentative sérieuse de classement international ;
  - (4°) D'examiner les difficultés qui viendraient à se produire dans l'application de ce classement ;
  - (5°) De contribuer, par les publications et par tous autres moyens, à faire adopter par ceux qui publient, collectionnent, consultent, ou analysent des livres ou des productions de l'esprit humain, un système de classement uniforme et international.
-

## Institut International de Bibliographie.<sup>1</sup>

### Statuts.

I.—L'Institut international de Bibliographie est une association exclusivement scientifique.

Il a pour but :

1° De favoriser les progrès de l'inventaire, du classement et de la description des productions de l'esprit humain ;

2° De déterminer les unités bibliographiques en vue de faciliter, d'internationaliser et de perfectionner le caractère scientifique de ce classement ;

3° De donner son concours à toute tentative sérieuse de classement international ;

4° D'examiner les difficultés qui viendraient à se produire dans l'application de ce classement ;

5° De contribuer, par des publications et par tous autres moyens, à faire adopter par ceux qui publient, collectionnent, consultent ou analysent des livres ou des productions de l'esprit humain, un système de classement uniforme et international ;

II.—L'Institut tient, en règle générale, une session par an. Dans chacune de ses sessions l'Institut désigne le lieu et l'époque de la session suivante.

III.—L'Institut se compose de membres effectifs, de membres associés et de membres honoraires.

IV.—L'Institut choisit ses membres effectifs parmi les personnes, institutions et associations qui s'occupent effectivement de bibliographie et de bibliothéconomie. Chaque institution ou association est représentée par son délégué. Les membres effectifs ont voix délibérative.

V.—Sont membres associés, toutes les personnes qui s'intéressent à l'œuvre poursuivie par l'Institut et qui désirent assister à ses délibérations. Ils ont voix consultative.

VI.—Le titre de membre honoraire est conféré aux personnes qui auront rendu à l'Institut des services signalés.

---

<sup>1</sup> Reprinted with permission from the Bulletin of the "Institut International de Bibliographie."

VII.—Nul ne peut devenir membre de l'Institut s'il n'a été admis au scrutin secret, en assemblée générale, sur la présentation de deux membres.

VIII.—Les membres effectifs payent une cotisation annuelle de dix francs, les membres associés payent une cotisation annuelle de cinq francs, les membres honoraires ne payent aucune cotisation. Ils ont tous droit à recevoir les publications de l'Institut.

IX.—Le nombre des membres est illimité. Toutefois, dans les délibérations, les membres appartenant à une nation ne pourront disposer d'un nombre de voix supérieur au quart des voix dont disposent ensemble les membres appartenant à d'autres nations.

X.—L'Institut procède, lors de l'ouverture de chaque session, à l'élection de son président.

XI.—L'Institut choisit, parmi ses membres effectifs, un Bureau permanent composé d'un président, d'un secrétaire général et d'un trésorier. Ces membres sont élus pour le terme de six ans. Le Bureau permanent exerce le pouvoir exécutif, il pourvoit aux mesures urgentes et aux cas imprévus, il prépare et convoque les sessions. Le secrétaire est spécialement chargé de la rédaction des procès verbaux des séances et de la correspondance. Il a la garde des archives et il rédige, lors de chaque session, un résumé des travaux de l'Institut.

XII.—L'assemblée générale fixe le siège de l'Institut.

XIII.—Les décisions prises par l'assemblée générale, dans sa session annuelle, le seront à la majorité des suffrages.

XIV.—Les présents statuts peuvent être révisés à la demande de vingt membres effectifs et après que les modifications proposées auront été communiquées à tous les membres de l'Institut. La revision sera votée à la majorité des 2/3 des membres présents.

XV.—L'Institut publie un bulletin périodique où sont discutées toutes les questions relatives au but de l'association.

Le bulletin publie les noms de tous les groupes, institutions et personnes qui adhèrent à l'Institut et à ses décisions.

#### **Dispositions Transitoires.**

I.—Par dérogation spéciale à l'art. 7, jusqu'à la prochaine réunion de l'Institut, les pouvoirs de l'assemblée générale sont délégués au Bureau permanent en ce qui concerne l'admission de membres adhérents et les mesures urgentes pour le développement de l'Institut et la réalisation de son but.

II.—Appartiennent de droit à l'Institut, les personnes qui ont assisté ou adhéré à la Conférence de Bruxelles et qui notifieront leur intention au Bureau permanent.

## Conférence bibliographique Internationale.

### Décisions et Vœux.

I.—La Conférence considère la classification décimale comme donnant des résultats pleinement satisfaisants au point de vue pratique et international.

II.—La Conférence constate les applications considérables déjà faites de la classification de Dewey et recommande son adoption intégrale en vue de faciliter à bref délai une entente entre tous les pays.

III.—La Conférence émet le vœu de voir les Gouvernements former une Union bibliographique universelle en vue de la création d'un Office international de Bibliographie. Elle charge son bureau de transmettre ce vœu au Gouvernement belge et de le prier respectueusement de prendre à cet effet toutes les initiatives qu'il jugerait utiles.

IV.—La Conférence décide la création d'un Institut international de Bibliographie.

V.—La Conférence, considérant que tout classement systématique suppose l'existence de bibliographies nationales complètes et exactes, signale aux gouvernements l'importance d'une législation uniforme concernant le dépôt légal.

VI.—La Conférence émet le vœu que lorsque les gouvernements interviennent officiellement pour soutenir des bibliographies nationales, ils insistent sur l'adoption de la classification décimale.

VII.—La Conférence émet le vœu que les publications dues à l'initiative privée et plus particulièrement les catalogues collectifs, édités par des cercles de librairie, adoptent également la classification décimale.

VIII.—La Conférence émet le vœu que les propositions adoptées par l'Association française pour l'avancement des sciences, réunie à Bordeaux en août 1895, et relatives aux indications à fournir par les auteurs pour les titres des travaux scientifiques, soient acceptées d'une manière générale.

IX.—La Conférence prend acte de la déclaration fait en leur nom personnel et au nom de leurs collaborateurs par MM. La Fontaine et Otlet, concernant l'apport gratuit qu'ils se proposent de faire à l'Office international de bibliographie à créer par les Etats, du répertoire de 400,000 fiches qu'ils ont collationné.

Elle vote des remerciements à MM. La Fontaine et Otlet, pour leur initiative et pour leur don généreux.

X.—En attendant la constitution définitive de cet Office, la Conférence invite l'Office, fonctionnant actuellement à Bruxelles, à poursuivre ses travaux sur la base d'une large collaboration scientifique internationale.

Elle émet spécialement le vœu de voir traduire immédiatement en allemand, en français et en italien les tables de la classification décimale Dewey.

---





**SECTION III.**

---

**Monographs relating to the Bibliography of Official  
Literature.**



**The Official Documents of the British Empire:  
How to make them accessible. A Dialogue.**

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

A vague inquiry.	Why are Governments so dilatory?
English Home Official Documents.	An Imperial Series of Catalogues
On the difference between a Register	relating to the Colonial Empire.
and a Catalogue (in special	The Need for Trained Librarians.
reference to the British Empire).	The Possibilities of the Future.
Notes of Foreign Countries.	

**A Vague Enquiry.**

*Enter Reader.*—I am anxious to obtain information concerning Education in the British Colonies: perhaps you can help me?"

*(The Librarian replies with a smile).*—Well, it is rather a large order; however, I will try my best to help you. Tell me first, what special *period of time* you have in mind; perhaps you wish to study the question in regard to one particular year?

*R.*—Oh! well, I had not thought of that; I thought I would like to study the subject generally. Does not your Library issue an Index which would tell me what I want to know?

*L.*—*(More smiles).*—I am afraid *not!* You mean you would like to be able to sit down at a table, and open *one* book and find all the answers to your questions on *one* page?

*R.*—Well, no, not exactly that; that would be too unreasonable,—but still I thought I should be able to find something—some sort of a guide—but, perhaps, if I cannot succeed in that, perhaps I can at least see the Colonial Blue Books. I suppose they will tell me what I want, or, perhaps, could you tell me what Documents the Colonies *do* publish? Perhaps I might be allowed to look at them?<sup>1</sup>

*L.*—Well, again, I am afraid I cannot give you a very satisfactory answer.

---

(<sup>1</sup> There are several tons of "them!")

In the first place, it is impossible to say what the Colonies publish. (I doubt whether they even know themselves).

*R.*—What! do you mean to tell me that they do not issue Lists of their official publications? Why, surely all Publishers, even numbers of the very poorest Second-hand Booksellers, issue lists of the books they wish to sell, and surely the Colonial Governments—Governments being some of the largest Publishers—must do so if it be only for their own official use?

*L.*—I do not think they do wish to sell their publications—at least, so it would appear, judging from my own experience; otherwise they would take more trouble to issue printed Lists and advertise the existence of their Documents. At any rate, if they do print lists, they do not circulate them—not in this country, at least; but, judging from long experience, I have very good reason to suppose that they do not issue such lists, and apparently have little intention of so doing, just at present.

*R.*—But is it not a very short-sighted policy? Why, when one thinks of all the hundreds of thousands of pounds which have been spent by the various Colonies on Commissions of Inquiry, and on engaging the services of the best experts in order to elucidate social and other problems, and on printing all these voluminous reports, and then—to think of the reports buried in official dungeons, when they might be distributed throughout the world; it seems too absurd. Why, only the other day, a friend of mine was remarking that he would give anything to obtain certain reports on a subject in which he was specially interested. He knew the reports existed, but he could not find where, and it was of great national importance that he should obtain them at once, as it might affect an important debate in the House of Commons, if he could prove his assertions by actual recorded experience.

*L.*—And—he couldn't?

*R.*—No; he was obliged to witness the passing of a measure which he knew to be wrong, but he could not get his information in time to draw out his statistics or submit proofs of his assertions, which might easily have turned the course of the Debate.

*L.*—I am afraid his is a common case. Doubtless the reports he wanted were close at hand, probably in more than one library; but, you see, it is of little use distributing Documents unless you provide a key to their contents.

*R.*—Why, do you mean to say that if I had the Official

Reports before me now, that I should have any difficulty in quickly skimming their contents?

*L.*—I am afraid so—in more ways than one.

In the first place, the several collections of Colonial Documents form—many of them—little, or often, large libraries in themselves, and you would probably find the documents excessively heavy and unwieldy to consult.

You would next find that every other Colony arranged and bound its Official Documents in a different order and called Series which are really identical, by different names; and in some instances you would have to turn through the pages of the greater part of each volume, of some 500 pages, before you would find the report you wanted; and you would probably find hundreds of single-sheet Official returns dovetailed, in among long and perhaps valuable *bonâ-fide* reports and, withal, even if there be a rough Index of Contents, no continuous pagination answering to the Index to guide you through the labyrinth.

*R.*—Is it possible? But do you mean to tell me that there has never been any attempt to deal with a matter of such obvious importance?

*L.*—It would not be fair to make quite such a sweeping assertion.

Canada has made considerable efforts; indeed the system pursued by the Canadians is most creditable to them, although it is very far from perfect.

New Zealand and Queensland have also made fair attempts, the system of group arrangement of the former Colony being specially clever.

*R.*—And which do you consider the worst?

*L.*—Well, I do not wish to make invidious comparisons, but I will say that, so far as the *general* system of grouping reports together in volumes goes, the system pursued by the Colonies<sup>1</sup> of Victoria and South Australia is as bad as one can wish—from a Librarian's point of view—and that is, after all, the *practical* view which men do ill to disregard.

### English Home Official Documents.

*R.*—And what have you to say about our own Official Documents of the United Kingdom?

*L.*—Ah, well! we can afford to be proud; that is to say, we

<sup>1</sup> *Vide* App. ii.

have, above all nations, and considering their bulk, made the best efforts—and that from a very early period—to make them accessible.

*R.*—Well, that is something; but your use of the word “efforts” seems to imply that you are not altogether satisfied with our own system.

*L.*—True, I am not. It falls very far short of what it should be, and of what it could be.

*R.*—Then what would you propose? Surely the Annual Index is as good as you can wish.

*L.*—As far as it goes, but it is too much overloaded with *details of the contents* of reports, the nature of which is obvious from the very titles. This increases its size unnecessarily, and detracts from the perspicuity. I should mention also that it does not include a large number of *Departmental* Official Publications issued during the year.

*R.*—Really? But how am I to know, then, where to find out about the others?

*L.*—Oh! well, your instinct will tell you that there must be some more somewhere.

*R.*—My instinct! But suppose I have none? Ah! I see you are making fun of me. Then what you suggest is that there should be *one* Index to contain separate entries of every single document published during the year, whether it be Parliamentary or purely Departmental Report.

*L.*—Precisely so; at least there should be one *Register* of Official Documents published *during* the year, and one *Catalogue* of Documents relating *to* a given year.

#### On the Difference between a Register and a Catalogue.

*R.*—But why a “Register”? What is the difference between a Register and a Catalogue? I was talking of “Indexes,” and now you talk of “Registers” and “Catalogues.”

*L.*—The difference is this: The object of a Register is to show you what Documents were issued during a particular period by a particular Department. The object of a Catalogue (i.e., a Subject-Catalogue) is to show you what Documents exist on a particular Subject for a given period (month, year, &c.). It is important to remember that Departments do not always exactly correspond with the Subject-matter of the Reports which they issue, and in some countries, owing to administrative changes, the same Annual

Report may be issued by three different Departments in as many years.

For these reasons (and for the additional reason that a *proper* Subject-Catalogue requires a particular grouping of Reports and arrangement of headings not possible in a Departmental Catalogue) a *Subject-Catalogue* is an additional necessity, in order to enable men to find the Documents they require. But *it is impossible to compile a proper Subject-Catalogue without a knowledge of a number of details concerning the issue of each Report*. These details can only be supplied by the Departments who issue the reports, and for this reason should appear in the Annual Lists (collected together) of Departmental Documents, which thus fulfil the proper function of a Departmental Register, or for shortness—a “*Register*” of Official Documents.

But in regard to countries with “Parliaments” or “Congresses” an unthought-of difficulty arises. To take our own case:

Parliament (which, as regards its own debates and committees, &c., is technically a Department) elects to print a large number of the regular Departmental Reports each year as if they were the property of Parliament—in addition to the numerous “occasional” Returns called for. The result is that the *Departmental Series proper* is split up, some of the Reports being annually incorporated into the Parliamentary Series as “Sessional Papers,” and others being issued independently by their respective Departments.

This being so, how are we to constitute our Departmental Catalogue? so as to collect all the following kindred reports:

#### *I. Those issued as Parliamentary Reports.*

- (1) The Annual Selection of the regular Departmental Reports.
- (2) The collection of specially-called-for Departmental Returns.

#### *II. Those issued Independently.*

- (3) The remnant of Departmental Documents, issued independently of Parliament.

The problem would best be solved by the liberal policy of reprinting a complete Register of *all* Departmental Reports (irrespective of the fact of perhaps two-thirds of them being, for obvious purposes, already included in the Index-Catalogues of Sessional Papers), such a List to include the heading “**Parliament**,” but only as a heading for the insertion of those Documents which solely and directly are connected with the *ordinary* business of Parlia-



ment. This is all the more necessary, because it is not easy in the ordinary Index to the Sessional Papers to give all the details required uniformly with the requirements of the Register, without somewhat interfering with the particular object of the Index.

If then such a Register were compiled annually, we should obtain a sound foundation from which to work, and thus be able to compile annually a proper Subject-Catalogue, including *all* the Documents of each year.

This is the best way I can think of for showing you the difference between the two kinds of works of reference we are discussing. It is true there are other points of difference I could mention.

In a "Catalogue" the titles are revised and arranged according to very strict rules, and the headings are arranged in a very particular order, by which it is possible to find any individual report or collection of reports on any subject with certainty and speed. A "Catalogue" proper differs from "Indexes," as generally understood, in respect of the stricter rules of uniformity which govern its compilation, a difference which can only be understood by actual illustration.

*R.*—I begin to see. You first want a "Register," and then a "Subject Catalogue," containing reference to every single Official Document relating to one year. But would not the odd periods of the different Sessions upset your calculations?

*L.*—No, not beyond giving much extra trouble.

*R.*—Then with these two Works of Reference you are content?

*L.*—No, I did not mean to imply that I was.

*R.*—But are you not very unreasonable? Why, what more *can* you want? Is there not a danger of excess of system?

*L.*—Not in *this* century. But you fail to grasp the situation. Why should you be afraid of an excessive supply of Works of Reference? There are many wants, and there must be a corresponding number of instruments of supply. Think of the thousands of Directories, Time Tables, Price Lists and Trade Catalogues which appear every year, issued by many who have far less money at their disposal than Governments have. They serve their purpose, for a year only, and are destroyed. You do not complain of them. Why should you complain in the present instance? You need not use these Works of Reference unless you like. But when Librarians of many years' experience tell you positively that they are not in a position to supply you, or any one, with the information you require without the previous supply of certain Works of Reference, and are able to give good reasons for their assertions,

you should believe them, and furthermore endeavour to support them in their attempts to obtain the required works. It is not a question of *my* individual wants or of *yours* only. The point at issue is that there are the wants of a thousand other individuals, which can only be supplied by the institution of particular series of Works of Reference, compiled in reference to the particular requirements. And if these works are not compiled and printed, not only does public progress suffer, but the work of a Library Staff is doubled through the necessity for making long, exhaustive, and frequently fruitless researches, which would be rendered unnecessary if the proper Works of Reference existed.

In the instance of the Official Documents of the British Empire, it is not a case of *one* Series of Documents only, it is a case of *several* distinct Series; and thus there should be a corresponding number of separate Indexes or Catalogues, *in addition* to a General Catalogue of the whole Series, dating from the very earliest document of the period included, and kept up annually.

R.—Excuse me, I am afraid I am very stupid, but I do not yet understand. You puzzle me.

L.—(*Impatiently*)—Well, it is simply this. Men ask to be supplied with Colonial Documents, imagining that the only documents in existence are those which have been published by Colonial Governments, and issued in the Colonies; but a moment's consideration will show you that there are *two* large series, *i.e.*, there must also be a large number of documents relating to the Colonies and India which have been issued as *English Sessional Papers* (perhaps "Presented to Parliament") from a very early date, printed in London, and if these had been more fully catalogued, I would have been able to have promptly placed in your hands a complete Catalogue of the titles of all such Colonial Documents from the very earliest date, arranged in chronological order under the particular subject, each series being found *under the name of the Colony* related.

Or, better still, if such a work of reference existed, you would have heard of it, and taken pains to purchase it, before you troubled yourself to consult—me.

And similarly, if you were interested in India, Scotland, or Ireland, or were wishing to study English Official Documents relating to Agriculture, Labour, Commerce, &c., it should have been possible for you to purchase separate Catalogues of English Official Documents relating to any of these subjects, and thus you would have been independent of the Librarian (and he of you).

### Criticism of other Countries.

*R.*—Ah, that is very interesting—now I understand. And so none of these facilities for reference exist. It seems extraordinary, now that one thinks of it. But that is just like us English people. We always were asleep. I suppose now the Foreigners beat us into a cocked-hat at this sort of thing? They always do.

*L.*—On the contrary, the Foreigners are far behind us. I have been for years trying to get a List of French Official Documents corresponding to ours, but it does not exist. I have heard of an Austrian Catalogue which I have never been able to obtain. I believe the Hungarians have done good work in regard to their Documents. But, so far as I know, the Germans have not distinguished themselves in the matter, and certainly the Italians have never issued any List of their Documents, except what has resulted from Sign. Chilovi's praiseworthy efforts at the Florence Library.

Until recently the Americans have been dreadfully behindhand in the same respect, but now they have awoken to the importance of the matter, and have set themselves resolutely to the task of reform in a manner which reflects the greatest credit on those concerned.

### Why are Governments so Dilatory?

*R.*—Well, one lives and learns. But tell me, why are Governments so lax in the matter?

*L.*—The reasons are many. In the first place, tradition and red-tape are not a little responsible. Each Government has its own officials in their several Departments, who, through the perpetual handling of various documents, are probably able, with the aid of memory and rough Card-Indexes, to find the *individual* reports *asked* for by their superiors, who are thus satisfied: and, apart from official uses, it does not occur to the officials concerned that the outside world can possibly wish to peruse the reports for which, through familiarity, they have often a contempt.

Moreover, if an outsider suggests a Catalogue of the official Documents with which they are concerned, they are apt to consider such suggestions as an intrusion in their own domains, and a reflection on their *régime*; and they very quickly ask: "What is the use of a Catalogue? We have always got on very well before, and no change is required"; and, as a friendly Colonial Librarian once remarked to me: "What can you say to a man like that?" I am glad to say, however, that I have met

more than one pleasing exception to the above criticism, which confirms my belief that if there are red-taped officials in the Colonies, there will always be found enlightened and liberal-minded officials also, on whose aid and generous co-operation we can rely.

A lack of Centralisation is another cause of evil. The Departments which have the greatest interests at stake have the least control.

*R.*—Then, I suppose, if one of the officials you refer to dies, his knowledge dies with him?

*L.*—Unquestionably, or a very great part of it, as is very common throughout many a Department of many a Government.

*R.*—How do you mean?

*L.*—Why, simply that a certain type of official, when he finds himself useful in a Department, hugs his knowledge, and is not in a hurry to part with it.

*R.*—But, why? One would have thought that he would be only too glad to place it on record.

*L.*—If encouraged to do so, perhaps; but, even then, he knows that by so doing he is liable to expose his ignorance, as well as his knowledge; the air of mystery and importance in which he formerly revelled is dispersed; he is no longer an actual necessity in the Department, and his future services may easily be dispensed with; and any junior may, in an hour, master that which has taken him years to learn, and encroach upon his province or step into his shoes.

*R.*—Do you really impute such base motives?

*L.*—I do not “impute” them; I hazard them as possibly or partially explaining what otherwise seems hard to account for—and, at least, they are natural human weaknesses—under certain circumstances which are not altogether imaginary.

*R.*—Then you think no records are kept anywhere, even in manuscript?

*L.*—I did not say that. It is quite possible that Card Catalogues or MS. Registers are maintained here and there. But even then—

*R.*—Even what?

*L.*—Such Card Catalogues are very unsatisfactory. Manuscript Registers soon get overcrowded and illegible, and Card Catalogues easily fall into confusion, if each new comer has a different system; besides which, no Card Catalogue can ever be consulted with the same ease or rapidity, nor can it

ever atone for the absence of Printed Catalogues, which show you what you want at a glance, and which enable a thousand scattered individuals to consult the same Catalogue with equal facility.

*R.*—But what a hopeless look-out!

*L.*—It *has* been. But there are signs of more enlightenment in the future. And, in one sense, we ought to be grateful; for what has been the curse of the past is—or may be—the blessing of the future.

*R.*—How is that?

*L.*—Well, in this way.

### **An Imperial Series of Catalogues relating to the Colonial Empire.**

At the present moment, to all intents and purposes, the Official Documents of the British Colonial Empire are, as already stated, practically uncatalogued, and from one point of view this is the best thing that possibly could have happened, for if the Colonies had issued Catalogues of any pretensions whatever, it is certain, judging from the past history of the subject, that they would have all been compiled on different systems, and while the majority of those systems would probably have been unsatisfactory, it is improbable that the several Governments would have sanctioned any fresh expenditure, if once the work had been done—however badly.

*R.*—Excuse me for interrupting you, but what right have you to assume that these Catalogues would necessarily have been bad ones or worthless?

*L.*—I am afraid for reasons only too good. In the first place all the instances that I have ever seen have been—judging them by the highest standard—are either based on radically wrong principles, or have been of very inferior merit, showing that either the workman was incompetent, or that he had very hazy notions of the task on which he was embarked. And this is but natural, for, in years past, it was considered that any person was fit to be a Librarian, and that it was quite unnecessary to demand any special training, whereas just the opposite is the case.

*R.*—“I see; then what you wish to do is to institute the compilation of **one great Series of Catalogues of Colonial Documents** of each Colony, arranged on one plan, so that the man who understood any one Catalogue would be equally at home with the arrangement of all the others?”

*L.*—Yes, you have exactly divined my ideas.

R.—And you think that the only way to accomplish this would be for the work to be done by one staff under one director—in London, for instance?

L.—I am certain of it. No doubt the Colonies might easily contribute considerably to the work—for instance, each Colony might arrange for the first copying of the titles of its Official Publications, according to instructions, sending them to London for final editing on one Imperial system, though this would only be really necessary in the case of Documents not to be obtained in this country.

R.—But is that possible?

L.—In the main it is easily possible.

R.—But would not the Colonies be hurt or feel slighted, if it was suggested that they could not do the work as well as any other country?

L.—They *might* nourish such feelings. Personally, I have a higher opinion of them than to believe it of them; indeed, I feel convinced they would enter generously into the undertaking if they were once satisfied that it would be placed in the best hands, and realised that we in England, from our central point of view, must have advantages which can be secured nowhere else.

You see it is an *Imperial* concern, not a matter affecting each individual Colony separately. We are all concerned in being able to inform ourselves in the very best way concerning the public life of any part of our Colonial Empire, and the only way is for us all to agree to work together.

R.—But who would bear the expense?

L.—That is a matter of detail. Each Colony might be asked to contribute to the actual expense of the printing of the copies of its own Catalogue, and the mother country would pay the staff.

Thus the Colonies would secure perfect work at cost price, while the Mother Country would have the proud knowledge that she had forged another chain to bind the Empire together, and had been instrumental in the institution of a work of civilisation, the results of which would be incalculable.

Of course each Colony would be free to do as it pleased in the matter, and to prepare and print any other kind of Catalogues they might choose. But they would find it more economical, before embarking on any separate enterprise of any extent, to wait until they saw how an Imperial scheme worked out.

R.—And where would your work be done, and under what auspices?

*L.*—That is also a matter of detail. The Colonial Institute, as the oldest Colonial Society, is one to which one would turn as corresponding agent with the several Colonies ; also the Colonial Office. The Imperial Institute might equally lend all aid, and indeed it is at the Imperial Institute where there is the all-necessary element of unlimited space—in fact, I suggested a plan on the subject to the authorities, in a Memorandum, in June, 1893.

There must be room there both for a complete Library of the Official Documents of the whole Colonial and Indian Empire, as also room for the proper accommodation of the staff required. At the same time there are great arguments in favour of having a Colonial Documents' Library adjacent to a Library of *English* Home Official Documents, and, indeed, under the same roof, together with a similar collection of Foreign Official Documents.

*R.*—And would the Institute be able to pay for it?

*L.*—I do not propose that it should. Each Colonial Government would do its best to send a complete collection of its Documents, or to complete collections already existing in this country, and the English Government would pay the staff.

*R.*—And of what size the staff?

*L.*—Again, a matter of detail. Six assistants would be a fair number to start with.

*R.*—And when you had overtaken arrears, what would you do with the extra members of your staff?

*L.*—That would not be a difficulty. They would be most valuable to the Government in our large Departments as trained experts, or they might be engaged with advantage by the several Colonial Governments. They would soon be snapped up.

*R.*—Oh, of course they would be, if such a special training is required, and it be true that the work is technically difficult. But (I am afraid you must think me very stupid) I still cannot see why so much training is required—I mean, I do not understand why the difficulties should be so great as you appear to imagine, for it seems so simple. Surely you have nothing to do but just to copy the title of a report, and then arrange the titles according to their Departments, send them to the Printer, and the whole thing is done, without more ado? Can you enlighten me?

### **On the Need for Specially Trained Librarians.**

*L.*—I will try, but it is only possible to give you a very faint conception of the difficulties, inasmuch as circumstances vary so.

For this very reason, in dealing with the thousand variations of technicalities that occur, the need for special study makes itself felt, in order that the Librarian may be able to apply the same principles consistently throughout, and yet know how to modify them according to the particular instance without being a blind slave to his rules.

In the first place, when you refer to the apparently easy task of copying titles, let me tell you that a very large proportion of Official Documents have no titles at all, or if they have, they are so badly constructed that reports have frequently to be examined most carefully in order to make good the deficiency either in the body of the titles, or by means of "Notes."

Again, where the ordinary eye sees *one* report only, and plumps down *one* title, a practised eye sees a dozen reports, buried perhaps as Appendices, but nevertheless reports of value.

Next, there are intricate matters requiring delicate handling in connection with the grouping of reports according to their subjects. Then, as regards the belief that a Librarian has merely to arrange the several reports under their Departments, this is quite a fallacy.

In the first place, a large number of reports are published without any mention of the Departments by which they were issued.

In other instances, even when the reports have the name of the Departments specified on them, they have very often no connection with the Departments which issued them (simply as a matter of administrative financial convenience.) Thus the Annual Report on the Canadian Archives is issued by the Minister of Agriculture, though this is scarcely a difficulty, as the case is so obvious; but I could easily quote a hundred instances where real difficulties are thus raised.

Again the constitution and name of many a Department is perpetually being changed, as also the constitution and name of the reports issued.

The question of right or wrong nomenclature in regard to the headings adopted is also of the greatest importance, and yet it has invariably been misunderstood by almost everyone who has attempted it.

Finally, the best MS. Catalogue ever compiled, can easily be practically ruined or reduced by half its value through neglect of the particular type and type-arrangement required. This also is a point on which the past augurs ill for the future, unless exceptional measures are taken.



*R.*—Ah! Now I begin to see that the matter is not so easy as I first imagined. But tell me, all this must add considerably to the expense of the work? *L.*—In many ways no doubt, but it is the old story, “Parsimony is not Economy.” You *must* pay for good work, and if you do not pay for good work cheerfully to-day, you will have to pay for bad work unwillingly to-morrow, and for all time. As a matter of fact, however, it is in the long run, not only far easier, but also more economical to do work well rather than badly. You escape having to go over the old ground again, and you are saved endless unnecessary queries, and you have something tangible to show as the results of your labours. Nor should it be forgotten that Catalogues such as the ones under discussion, if properly compiled, would be largely purchased, and are the very best advertisements for the sale of Government Publications that can be devised, apart from the benefit accruing to the race from increased facilities for the transmission and circulation of knowledge.

This should seem self-evident, but Governments were ever the worst advertisers in the world, considering their opportunities.

These are a few of the difficulties Librarians have to encounter. If you doubt my word, after an experience of many years, I will quote you the same evidence from the first annual Report of the “Superintendent of [Public] Documents” in the United States.

“Correct Cataloguing of [Official] Publications is a work requiring a high degree of skill and accuracy, and the cataloguing of Public Documents is the toughest problem that cataloguers have to encounter. Many have tackled it, some more successfully than others, but it is an open question whether an absolutely successful effort at a General Catalogue of Public Documents has yet been made, even on a small scale.”

As long ago as 1836, we find Messrs. James and Luke G. Hansard and Sons, alluding (in the Preface to the “Catalogue of [English] Parliamentary Reports . . . 1696-1834”) to the difficulties of the subject, in the following terms:—“The difficulties felt in classing Subjects under heads characterising their nature, can be appreciated by those who have made similar attempts. Many Reports have Titles which do not directly indicate their subjects, and many contain a great diversity of subjects, which render it difficult to determine the class under which they should be placed: thus *Plague* and *Contagion* are treated on in Reports specifically bearing those titles, and are placed under Scientific Subjects, with the sub-head *Medical*; they are likewise treated on

in one of the series of Reports on *Foreign Trade*. *Steam-boats* and *Steam Navigation* bear titles distinctive of those subjects, but no inquirer would expect to find a discussion on the construction of Steam-boats and on the machinery for propelling them in a Report on *Holyhead Roads*."

R.—Well, I am extremely obliged to you for your explanations. Your scheme for an Imperial Series of Official Documents, Catalogues specially interests me.

### The Possibilities of the Future.

And you really think this is possible?

L.—Not only "possible," but "probable," if we only bend our minds to it. The Canadian Government has lately shown a very liberal disposition in regard to General Literature, and it is certain that a Colony which voted £20,000 to the Imperial Institute would not be behindhand if invited to co-operate. I had lately the pleasure of an interview with Mr. C. H. Gould, the able Librarian at McGill College University, and I feel sure, from the liberal views he exhibited on the subject, that Canada would do its share in the matter, in the same liberal spirit and large-mindedness which it has displayed in the supply of its Copyright Literature to our National Library.

Sir George Grey has expressed to me his very decided opinion that the Governments of Australia have only to be approached in a friendly manner in order to elicit a hearty response.

The representatives of Victoria and New Zealand at the Ottawa Conference, Mr. Robert Reid and Mr. Lee Smith, were equally sympathetic. The late Sir Charles Mills spoke in the same manner respecting the Cape, and Mr. John Noble, the Clerk to the Houses of Assembly, whose experience is great and whose opinion is of extreme value, has spoken in the same sense, although, of course, none of the above-named persons with whom I have discussed the subject, committed themselves to definite promises.

R.—What, then, is required to bring it about?

L.—The aid and influence of a Minister of State.

R.—And who would he be?

L.—The one man who is likely to appreciate the importance of such work, when once his attention is drawn to it, is Mr. Chamberlain. If he approves of the idea, the scheme would very soon be brought about. Otherwise—Good-bye!

1

**An Introduction to the Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue. By Frank Campbell. A Paper read at the Annual Meeting of the Library Association, Reading, Sept., 1890. With additional Appendix.**

### **Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue.**

"I certainly know of no better aid to good Administration than an Index ('Catalogue Raisonné') to the . . . Reports of those engaged in it."—(E. T. Atkinson, *N. W. Provinces Gazetteer*.)

In order to render the State-Papers of any country properly available to the student, there are three indispensable preliminaries, which it is well to mention here.

The first is an **Annual Register of State-Papers** arranged under the Departments by which they are issued.

The second is an **Annual Report on the State-Papers** entered in the Lists, dealing with the system of compilation, the relative use, and the contents of the more important Reports.

The third is a **State-Paper Catalogue**.

The first two subjects I shall hope to deal with on a future occasion, and the third is too large a subject to be quickly scrambled over. I shall confine myself, therefore, to-day to a few remarks introductory to the

### **Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue.**

I feel that no excuse is needed for my choice of subject, and that it is quite unnecessary, before such an audience, to dilate upon the intrinsic value of State-Papers. No one can have paid the slightest attention to the class of works in question and be ignorant of the existence of numberless reports of the greatest value, not only on such subjects as are obviously matters of Government Administration, but upon those branches of science, literature, and art, which are too commonly supposed to be matters of private enterprise alone. But if librarians have a knowledge of such matters, the same can scarcely be said of the outside public, for the ignorance which is generally displayed on the subject is truly deplorable, and must have been noticed by us on many occasions.

### Prevailing Ignorance.

In regard to **British State-Papers**, for instance ; there seems to be an idea generally prevalent that all English State-Papers consist of dry *statistics*—a strange fancy, but, I believe, in no way exaggerated. It would seem as if the average Englishman argued thus :—Statistics are issued as “Blue Books.” All English State-Papers appear in Blue Books ; therefore all State-Papers consist solely of dry statistics.

We find that similar prejudices exist in other countries, and the natural result is that reports worthy to be read of hundreds of thousands are read by tens of hundreds, and reports of world-wide interest and value have a circulation little wider than the shelves of connected departments.

Let us take the case of **America**. What *general* knowledge shall we find concerning the existence of the splendid publications of the Smithsonian Institution with its connected Departments, or concerning the Reports of the Bureau of Education, the Agricultural Department, the Census Reports, or those of the numerous Surveys ?

In regard to **India** : What *general* knowledge shall we find concerning the contents of the Indian Scientific Surveys, the Archæological Surveys, or the large body of interesting reports of an historical or geographical nature, apart from reports of numerous other departments, which testify to the wondrous administration of a wondrous empire ?

Or if we turn to **France** : What *general* knowledge shall we find concerning the vast store of valuable science and art documents which have been issued by the French Minister of Public Instruction and by other departments ? The answer must be, I fear, in every case, unsatisfactory.

The question which naturally suggests itself, then, to our minds is this :—What have Librarians done to dispel existing illusion and prejudice on the subject, and to enlighten the popular ignorance ?

And although I would willingly plead a defence of my own craft, I fear I can give no very satisfactory answer. It is true we cannot force an unwilling horse to drink, but, have we led him to the water ?

If we turn to the more prominent countries it is in vain that we seek for a comprehensive catalogue which fulfils the conditions requisite in a State-Paper Catalogue. And here let me

anticipate a shower of contradictions by shielding myself behind a definition, viz., by stating what are the conditions demanded in the compilation of such a work.

### **Essential characteristics of a Catalogue of State Papers.**

*Firstly* : a State-Paper Catalogue should consist exclusively of official State-Papers. This is the first condition, and yet the one which is most often violated. It is a wrong principle to mix known and unknown factors together, for the natural result is that the insertion of the one cancels the certainty of the other, and renders the whole imperfect. Now State-Papers are *known* factors. Anyone who has the slightest knowledge of the system of Administration obtaining in a country, can say with certainty that such and such reports should be found, even though he may never have seen them or heard mention of their existence. And if such State-Papers be kept separate by themselves, it is possible eventually to render them accessible to the public in a satisfactory manner.

Compared with State-Papers, however, all other works are practically uncertain factors.. You never know what proportion of works on a given subject you may expect to find in a catalogue. You probably are ignorant of the different views which dictate them, while the principles which govern the cataloguing of the one, clash with those which control the other, and confusion is the natural result.

*Secondly* : A State-Paper Catalogue should be a continuous<sup>1</sup> Catalogue, from the earliest date onwards. And this necessarily implies that the volumes shall not be bound up annually according to *Years*, but according to *Subjects*.

For some purposes it may be quite right to have State-Papers bound up according to the Year, but from the point of view in question it is absolutely wrong. Thus, in the case

<sup>1</sup> The use of this word "*continuous*" demands explanation. While (as in the case of the *Authors' Catalogue* in the British Museum Library), the principle has been sometimes conceded that in the region of General Literature, there should be at least *one* Catalogue in a country, in which all accessions, for all time, should appear, duly pasted in, in their proper place, in Catalogue Guard-Books, this same principle has never been conceded in the region of official literature. The *Authors' Catalogue* in the British Museum I call a Continuous Catalogue because it is kept posted up to date. And the contention in this paper is that there should be similar Catalogues for Official Documents, and that the titles contained in Monthly and Annual Catalogues should be framed (in regard to the supply of dates of publication), with due reference to their being afterwards incorporated as separate units in a Continuous Catalogue.

where you wish to consult reports on Public Instruction for the last twenty years, according to the *annual* system of binding you would have to consult twenty different indexes, and from *twenty* different shelves you would have *twenty* different volumes brought you, each containing in addition fifty or a hundred reports which you do not want (and where pagination is often absent we know it is no easy task to find one report out of a hundred others.)

In cases where Ten-Year indexes are published, you would of course only have to consult two indexes, but my subsequent remarks would still hold good. Contrast on the other hand the facilities afforded by the system of *Subject-binding*. You wish for the reports of twenty years. All you have to do is to look at *one* entry in *one* catalogue, and you have your reports brought to you in *one* moment, from *one* shelf, and contained probably in *one* volume (or certainly in not more than five volumes). These illustrations are sufficient to prove the merits of the one system and the defects of the other.

*Thirdly* : the Title should generally be entered in full, so far as is necessary adequately to express the contents of the volume, and to enable you to identify a report with ease. Here, again, we see the advantages of the system of binding by *subjects*, for the result of binding by *years* is to encourage *indexes* to the exclusion of CATALOGUES, and indexes will never present the same number of titles with the same fulness as catalogues would. In fine, a State-Paper Catalogue should be compiled in such a manner that a student can find any given report, or collection of connected reports (from the earliest date onwards), described under the department or subject concerned, subordinate to the country to which the report relates. These are the main essentials.

#### **"State-Paper" defined.**

But I find that my definition is imperfect, for I have omitted to define the term "*State-Paper*." And indeed it is not easy to define it in a moment; for although we know that State-Papers form a class distinct by themselves, it is not always easy to assign the limits, for at this point we have to take into consideration the different forms of Government in various countries, and judge each on its own merits.

This is not the time, however, to pursue such an inquiry, and, therefore, I shall confine myself to the general state-



ment that State-papers are those Reports which are published by the Supreme Government of a State or Collection of States, or by the direct Representatives of the Supreme Government.

India furnishes us with a good example of a Supreme Government, with separate subordinate Provincial Governments. The United States, of course, supply another similar example. But what about the new phenomena of Local Government in the form of County Councils or Municipal Bodies, if they publish Reports of Proceedings?

For answer, refer back to the definition of "*State-Papers*." Is the County Council the *direct* representative of the Supreme Government? In effect: is the Local Government a miniature Supreme Government, conducting all the ordinary branches of the Imperial administration only on a Provincial scale.

The answer is in the negative. The County Council is *a* representative, but not *the* representative of the Supreme Government. Equally so in the case of English Municipal Government.

For these reasons, therefore, it seems right to exclude this class of works from the general body of a State-Paper Catalogue, although there would be no harm if they were included as an Appendix, for both County Council Documents and Municipal Official Documents are subject to the same laws as "*State-Papers*" as regards their cataloguing.

Finally, in regard to Semi-official papers (as also in the case of a certain class of Official Reports relating to Science and Art), we have no option but to catalogue them in duplicate, that is to say, both in the State-Paper Catalogue, and also in the General Catalogue, the only possible alternative being in those cases where it may be found advisable to omit them as main-titles in the one, and make instead, copious general cross-references or notes to the other.

#### **No Catalogue Proper of State-Papers ever yet Compiled. Existing ones Criticised.**

Bearing in mind then our definition of State-Papers, and the conditions to be fulfilled by a State-Paper Catalogue, I am afraid that our search will be fruitless.

We most of us know that in 1885 the U.S.A. Government published a work which is a marvel of perseverance and industry, entitled: *A Descriptive Catalogue of the Government Publications of the United States . . . 1774 . . . 1881. Compiled*

[*under the directions of a Joint Committee on Printing*] . . . by B. P. Poore . 1885, *fol.* But apart from the descriptive matter, it is only a chronological *Register*, with an Index of Matters at the end, and would stand no comparison with a properly compiled Catalogue of the same papers arranged according to Departments and Subjects. Thus, if we wished to know what are the published works of the U.S. Geological and Geographical Surveys up to 1881, we should look in the Index of Matters, and be referred to fifty-five different pages. Now the catch-words, or catch-sentences, under which the separate titles are entered, are so unsatisfactory that one has frequently to scan the whole page, certainly once, if not more times, in order to find a required entry, and since the average number of title-entries on the first two and last two pages referred to is fifty a page, according to this estimate, in order to view fifty-five different entries desired, we might have to scan the greater part of  $55 \times 50$ , or 2,750 different entries in order to find the 55 required, and under extreme circumstances we might have to scan a couple of thousand entries in order to find one single work alone.

As a matter of fact, in the particular instance just noted, there are Departmental Lists of these identical publications mentioned. But a State Catalogue which has to rely upon Departmental catalogues which are often not forthcoming, is not worthy of the name of a catalogue, and a system which admits of such complications is assuredly no system to encourage.

Apart from the above criticism, the titles in this catalogue are not *always* full or literal, which is a fact also to be lamented.

Before I pass from America,\* however, I should mention that an enterprising publisher at Washington, Mr. Lowdermilk, is making meritorious efforts in connection with the cataloguing of U.S.A. State-Papers on a more practical basis, and we must wish him every success in his undertaking. (\*See ADDENDA.)

Mr. J. H. Hickcox, also of Washington, has published for some time a monthly catalogue of U.S. Official Publications.

If we turn to India, we shall come across certain Catalogues issued by the Government of India, and a "Catalogue of the Documents (Maps) . . . in the Marine Survey, Calcutta," by Mr. R. C. Carrington; also a Catalogue of the Library of the Indian Museum.

Next we shall find the Catalogue of the India Office Library, and the valuable Catalogues of the India Surveys Maps and

Charts which have been published. But these are all *Departmental* works.

I am told that the Austrian Government once published a very complete list or catalogue of Austrian State-Papers, but I have never been able to obtain a copy, so as to be able to judge of its character.

In England, it is true, we have, in the Official annual printed Indexes to the Parliamentary Papers, the next best substitutes for a continuous State-Paper catalogue, but, as before stated, such indexes are accompanied by great disadvantages. I should mention, however, that Mr. Dawson Eccles, while in charge of the Newspaper Reading Room at the British Museum, commenced an annual Card Index to the English Parliamentary Papers, the accessions of each year being afterwards incorporated with those of previous years, dating from 1885, and that the Index referred to has been most useful, both for reference while the official index is in progress of compilation, and also as a Supplementary Index.

In France, Hachette publishes Lists of French State-Papers, as Spottiswoode does in England, but from their very nature these lists must be of a periodical character. I think, therefore, I have reason when I say that there is a great want of continuous State-Paper Catalogues.

But supposing that we wished to compile such a catalogue, how should we set about it? On what principles should we compile it? And with this question we plunge into the theory of the subject.

### First Principles of Cataloguing Official Literature.

Given a country and a mass of State-Papers to catalogue. Now in order to appreciate the significance and the relative value of the numerous factors with which we have to deal, it will be necessary to commence from the very beginning.

We start, then, with two main factors: I. *The Life of a Country* (consisting of facts and groups of facts, mostly connected in greater or less degree), and II. *The Government which controls that Life* (as shown in the method of Government, in the method of compiling Records of that Government, and in the method of publishing those compiled Records).

We find, then, that the ideal Theory of Publication is dependent (*a*) on the actual occurrence of facts according as they are more or less intricate in their connection with one another,

(b) as also upon the mode of treating those facts pursued by the Government, as shown in the organisation and functions of departments, (c) as also upon the manner in which the Records of Government are compiled, (d) as also upon the manner in which the compiled Records are published.

Thus, if the facts in question exist in simple or well-defined connection with one another, or with the whole, and the mode of treatment, *i.e.*, the system of Administration, be logical and simple, and the manner of compiling the reports be logical with itself, or in harmony with the principles of Catalogue-Classification, and the subsequent stages of publishing the reports (including binding), be reasonable and logical, then the cataloguer's difficulties would be imaginary, and all the stores of official wisdom would be made accessible to the public as with a stroke of the magician's wand.

But—and here commence our difficulties—it is needless to say that such a convenient arrangement never exists. There are few countries which have not their share of tangled and intricate institutions—the growth of ages. Assuredly there can be no country in which we can find absolute and permanent harmony between the several Departments and the subjects entrusted to their charge. There is no country in which the system of Departmental Classification necessarily harmonizes with the system required to be adopted in the case of a State-Paper Catalogue; and there are no countries which we can hold up as examples in their adherence to correct principles of Compilation and Publication. In the case of India, for example, it is obvious that no system of departmental organisation and reporting could be very simple, where it has to evolve order out of so many varied systems of Law, with corresponding numbers of Law Courts. Similar and partly connected complications appear in connection with the numerous Land Revenue systems obtaining in different portions of India, while, as regards illogical connection of subject and department, and subsequent error in matters of compilation and publication, any general illustrations of any special country would be superfluous.

Realising then the nature of the difficulties which we may expect to encounter, it is most essential that we should get a clear idea of the particular principles which we should follow, in order that, when in cataloguing, we meet with other principles which are at variance with our special object, or encounter violations of the general principles of Classification, we shall be able to

detect where the divergences occur, and be in a position to counteract the bad effects so far as is possible.

### Subject-Grouping.—Classification.

First of all, then, it is most important to note (as we have hinted before) that the principles of subject-grouping, in regard to a State-Paper Catalogue are not necessarily the same (as is too commonly supposed) as those which affect the grouping of Subjects under a department, and consequently influence the compilation of departmental reports.

All classification naturally depends upon the particular object desired. Thus the *Department* will classify its facts in order to facilitate its own particular ends in view (often a matter of expediency rather than of desire).

In the *General Administration Report* of a Province, departments and subjects will be re-classified according to a method best calculated to meet the requirements of a Review of Provincial Administration. (See App. II. A.)

The *India Office* (in its report on the Moral and Material Progress of India) will re-classify subjects and departments on a broader basis as suffices for a bird's-eye view of the Administration of all India. (See App. II. B.)

And similarly the *Cataloguer of State-Papers* re-classifies subjects and groups in order to fulfil the special object which *he* has in view. (See App. II. C.) Now we have already defined that object, but it will be convenient to repeat it.

Given a country, our general object is so to group the subjects of our country as best to facilitate reference to reports written on those subjects; or, to put it more in detail (as before stated), so to arrange our groups that any student may be able speedily to ascertain what reports, from the earliest date onwards, have been published on any Subject-Group, or on any part of that Group, and find any such reports entered under the country to which they relate.

We say, then, that there are in our country a certain number of Groups of subjects (liable, of course, to increase) for which separate reports may reasonably be expected to be found. We therefore single out these most central subjects, with their parts in the Administration of the country, and endeavour so to manipulate them as to make each group exclusive of every other group. But this we find to be impossible, for we find that certain groups regarded as "*wholes*" are connected with one another, and

that even where the groups, as *groups*, are mainly unconnected, that there are often certain factors which are common to many groups, sometimes in *definite* relationship, at others in *indefinite* relationship to them.

Thus in India the groups of *Agriculture, Land Surveys (Trigonometrical, Topographical and Revenue)* and *Land Settlements* may generally be considered as separate groups, but they are very closely connected, and are, or have been, often reported upon in common.

As a further illustration of the manner in which a subject will enter into numerous groups in *definite* relationship we may mention *Meteorology*, which necessarily enters into the composition of India Administration as much as it does unnecessarily into English conversation. Thus, apart from standing as a group by itself in the light of a Meteorological Department, it enters subordinately into the composition of the following groups :—

*Agriculture.*

*Arboriculture.*

*Financial Administration.*

*Forestry.*

*Irrigation and Navigation.*

*Land Revenue Administration.*

*Land Revenue Settlement Dept.*

*Products.*

*Public Works Dept.*

*Post Office Dept.*

*Revenue Administration.*

*Sanitation (Military and Civil).*

*Telegraph Dept.*

*Trade.*

In fact it is obvious that the state of the weather may affect any group besides the ones especially mentioned.

Again, as regards a subject being common to many groups with *indefinite* relations to them, we have only to mention Indian History and Geography (taken together). Now if anyone wished to peruse all that has been written on the subject of the past history of the Indian people, including their manners and customs, legends and lore, and on the physical features of the country, he would at the very least have to peruse the reports on the following subject groups or their subdivisions.

*Firstly*, those reports which relate avowedly to the subject, *e.g.* :—

*Archæological Reports.*

*Gazetteers.*

*Geographical Travels and Expeditions Reports.*

*Historical, Geographical and Statistical Reports and the Records Commission Reports.*

Secondly, he would have to scan the pages of the *General Administration Reports*, as also of reports relating to such diverse subjects as—

*Censuses.*

*Language.*

*Military Expeditions.*

*Political Missions.*

*Routes.*

*Telegraph Administration.*

*Land Revenue.*

*Land Revenue Survey and Settlement or Land Records, Agriculture and Settlement Reports of each Province, and also the Reports on the Great Surveys of India, Revenue, Trigonometrical and Topographical.*

Every one of the above subject groups reports will often contain identically the same information in regard to this broad subject of history and geography. Since, therefore, we cannot arrive at absolute exclusiveness of all the groups, we have to content ourselves with the nearest approach to it, and we therefore arrange our groups in such a way that each group can assert *prior* claim if not *sole* claim to all its parts. And in illustration of this principle we cannot do better than quote Mr. Clements Markham's<sup>1</sup> words in regard to the sectional arrangement of the Moral and Material Progress Reports of India, where he says that each section treats "*of a special administrative subject or group of subjects, the aim being to include in each section those subjects which have more characteristics in common with one another [for the purpose in question] than any of them have in common with any other report not in that section.*"

Now although Mr. Markham enunciates this general principle in special reference to the object of an Annual Review of Indian Administration, the general principle applies equally to all species of classification, whatever the object may be, and thus to the grouping of subjects for the purpose of a State-Paper Catalogue.

---

<sup>1</sup> Now Sir Clements Markham, K.C.B.

We have now arranged our different Subject-groups, and have called them each by the name which is calculated most clearly and accurately and yet comprehensively, to designate the contents. But we do not bind ourselves to keep to these groups, for fresh principles now come into operation in connection with the extent and composition of each group and otherwise.

Thus, if our groups are large ones, and we find that there are series within series contained in them, we should proceed to subdivide them; but we must be cautious in so doing. For while Over-centralisation is an evil, so also is an excess of Decentralisation. If we omit to subdivide large groups which admit of clearly-defined groups being further extracted from them, the result will be an unsatisfactory vagueness, which renders it less easy to trace the several parts. If, on the other hand, we split up our groups too much, we are in danger of losing count of the numerous scattered fragments, and of having to scour the whole Catalogue in different directions in order to discover their existence.

Our golden rule then is this: *Avoid the two extremes of excessive Concentration or Separation, and be sure that your groups, even if they are not absolutely exclusive of one another, are at least clearly defined.*

In accordance with the above principles we shall hold ourselves at liberty, if necessary, to split up any one group into two or more sections, (a)<sup>1</sup> either retaining those sections under the group, or separating them, (b) and raising them to the rank of groups, each under its own designation. (We should take care, however, that there be connecting General cross-references between the separated parts, unless the connection be obvious.)

But even yet we have not finished enumerating the different possible modifications of our Group-arrangement. Instances occur where an important subject, which has a standing of its own, is found attached to a group which has direct claims upon it, but not *exclusive* claims. In such an instance (c) we should sever the attachment, and raise the part to the rank of a group—taking care, however, as in the previous instance, to show the connection between the two.

Furthermore, if any case (d) arose in which no group existed for a new part come to light, we should enter that single part separately as if it were a group. Geographical considerations

---

<sup>1</sup> For examples of (a)—(e) See Appendix.



(e) will often necessitate other modifications, when we have to deal with subjects which cross the provinces of a country, such as Railways, Rivers, Canals, or Mountains.

These are the more common cases, which may necessitate interference with our imaginary Group-arrangement. And they are sufficient to show that we must not expect to find any one relationship of group to group, but all three relationships of "*Sub-ordination, Super-ordination, and Co-ordination,*" and sometimes, as already hinted, *No-ordination*. And now to proceed with the theory.

### The Theory of Compilation and Publication.

Having settled our groups on a broad basis, and re-settled them according as subsequent circumstances demand, and having pointed out the possible relationships between them, it remains for us to base the compilation of our reports upon those groups as much as possible.

I have stated before that the theory of Departmental classification is not necessarily in harmony with the system of the Cataloguer. It follows naturally that the Record of those classified facts may be at variance with the Cataloguer's ideal system of Compilation.

Thus, in regard to Compilation, we may take it that, from a *departmental* view, so long as a report contains an accurate and logical record of facts in accordance with the main object of the record, other matter may be included (either for convenience or of necessity) which may have nothing directly to do with the real subject of the Report. While in regard to Publication, so far as the purposes of *Departmental* Administration are concerned, it is sufficient to affix a name which shall accurately express the main object or the general contents of a report, without immediate reference to other publications on the subject. Thus, in such instances Compilation is not necessarily carried out with any special regard to future Publication, Publication being perhaps only called in at the last moment to make the best of Compilation as it stands.

From the *cataloguer's* point of view, however, in regard to State-Papers, the *Theory of Compilation* pertains to the accurate and logical record of facts not only in reference to the immediate object of a special report or group of reports, but also in reference to the position which it shall afterwards occupy among

all other works, as determined by the manner in which it is subsequently published.

For the furtherance of these two objects it is necessary that all compilations shall be based upon a certain Subject-Group arrangement specially designed to forward the mutual interests of both objects, to the detriment of neither.

It naturally follows that the *Theory of Publication* is the logical outcome of that of *Compilation*. It is that by which the world is best enabled to benefit by each printed record, taken separately or collectively with other works, and thus relates primarily to the *manner* in which such printed records are issued.

Thus Publication is to Compilation as Compilation is to Facts, or, in other words, the object of Compilation is to make Facts accessible; the object of Publication is to make Records of Facts accessible.

A good illustration of the difference between the *Publication* systems of Departments and Cataloguers will be found in the case of reports relating to the annual Administration of Government Farms in India.

Thus in the North Western Provinces, we find the same reports styled in six different ways within a period of ten years, *e.g.*, as the Reports of the—

1. *Government Experimental Farm, [Cawnpore].*
2. ....*Experimental Farm, Cawnpore.*
3. *Cawnpore Experimental Farm.*
4. *Cawnpore.....Farm.*
5. *Cawnpore Experimental Station.*
6. *Cawnpore Agricultural Station.*

While in the case of other Provinces we find further four variations of title, *e.g.*,

7. *Government Farm.*
8. *[District] Government Farm.*
9. *Experimental Station.*
10. *Agricultural Station.*

Now it is apparent that each of the above title-phrases expresses accurately the contents of the report, and is, therefore, from a departmental view perfectly satisfactory. But from our point of view, ten different title-phrases for ten similar publications is unsatisfactory, because if there were ten separate Provincial Catalogues, each compiled separately, and we wished to peruse these ten kindred reports, we might have much difficulty in finding them, as they might very possibly be indexed under

ten different sub-headings instead of under one parallel sub-heading.

We want (before any title) two terms common to all the reports, which shall express accurately, simply and yet comprehensive (*firstly*), the Group to which they belong, and (*secondly*) the special section of that Group, with due reference to other publications on the subject; and these terms we find in the words, AGRICULTURE and FARMS.

In illustration of the difference between the two theories of Compilation we may again refer to the subject of Indian History and Geography, and we shall find that while archæological and statistical surveys have been organised and separate archæological, historical, geographical and statistical reports issued, it has been found convenient or necessary, from departmental points of view, that in the absence of purely historical and geographical Departments, any other Department whose duties permitted opportunities of observing the manners and customs of the people, of describing their history and noting geographical aspects of the country, should record that information, which should be entered in the report on the operations of that Department, whatever that Department be.

And thus it happens that we find a vast store of historical and geographical information in reports which were primarily written for other objects, and relating to such divers subjects as have been enumerated on page 368, commencing with the Census, and ending with the reports of the Three Great Indian Surveys.

That such a system of Compilation should render it difficult or impossible to trace the required information is not surprising. *Firstly*. Because such information exists in so many unlikely and different places. *Secondly*. Because even if a reader knows that he will find his information in a certain report which is written mainly on another subject, it is impossible for him to know to what extent or at what intervals the subject has been included, so that he may have to skim the contents of twenty volumes and perhaps find fifty pages on his subject in the twenty-first volume, or find no mention of it at all. *Thirdly*. He may find his one subject so closely worked into the other that at first sight it is indistinguishable from the other, and when recognised is very inextricable, and in all cases it is quite a chance whether he find any mention of the inclusion of his subject either in the table of contents or on the title-page.

The Cataloguer's theory of Compilation and Publication

shows us the cause of the evil and its possible remedy or counteraction. The germ of it lies in the statement that—

**Subject A shall be reported upon in Report A, and shall be called Report A, and shall be bound up with Reports A.**

It rests upon the truism that no information (which is supplied for the sake of future reference) should be entered in print except where we may most reasonably expect to find it, and the Theory of Publication further dictates the precise manner in which it should be published so as to enable us best to make use of it. This involves the details of separate issue, correct association in series, correct and comprehensive title and title-page, use of half-title-page to sectional reports, where necessary; use of appendices, proper tables of contents, the necessity of printing a report in the same year in which it is written, and the system of Binding according to Subjects.

We may make our meaning clearer, perhaps, by the following rule:—*Given our country, the subjects of which are divided into twenty-six divisions A—Z, the composition of any report A shall not be more (if it can be avoided) than is absolutely necessary to the special purpose which Division A should fulfil, if by such composition, matter is included under Division A which is wanting to complete the perfectness of another Division B, and that if it be necessary that the composition of Division A contain matter which is vital to the composition of another Division B, the arrangement of the composition of Division A shall be such as shall enable Division B to benefit by the matter referred to.*

The above, of course, holds good in reference to any subdivisions of the several divisions. More technically this last statement may be further explained.

*No Department A shall publish reports on Department B.*

*If it be necessary for Department A to publish matter relating to Department B, that information (if it have an exterior importance) shall be if possible conveyed in the form of a separate Appendix B, with separate half-title; being also noticed on the title-page to the whole report. Or, if it be absolutely necessary to work subject B into subject A throughout the report, subject B shall be if possible entered in separate chapters or paragraphs, and shall likewise be noted in the table of contents and on the title-page, so that in either case a cross-reference may be made from B to B under A, thus showing the existence of the one and the connection between the two, and where it is considered inadvisable to make a cross-reference, we may often find a "Note" of great assistance.*

Finally, as regards the *Binding* of our reports, the Theory of Publication demands that for a State-Paper Catalogue, no annual report A shall be bound up with any other reports except with reports A.

#### Summary of Paper.

To sum up the main points of this paper, I have endeavoured to show :—

(i.) That “State-Papers” form, as a whole, a class distinct from all other printed works, and should therefore be treated in a manner peculiar to themselves. This renders it necessary that they should appear in Catalogues reserved exclusively for them.

(ii.) That since we have to contend with Subjects and Departments intricate in themselves, and with systems of Classification, Compilation, and Publication, which are often at variance with the principles which pertain to a successful Catalogue, we can neither detect the causes of our difficulties, nor remedy them in any degree, except we first enunciate clearly our own standard of principles according to our special object, by which to measure other systems.

(iii.) That in regard to the actual compilation of a State-Paper Catalogue, in its main points, it should lead up to a *Continuous* Catalogue. It should possess *full* title-entries, entered under the countries to which the reports relate. (When this is done, countries may *afterwards* be sub-ordinated to subjects). And since *Subjects* are the only reliable factors with which we can deal, we take notice primarily of *Subjects* alone, only recognizing *Departments* when they tally with their Subjects, or when it is impossible to ignore them, and only grouping by *Authors* or *Place*, in very rare instances.

(iv.) Furthermore it has been pointed out, that having assigned our Subject-groups generally, and re-settled them in detail, showing the connection between them, we should endeavour to preserve the reports which relate to our Subject-groups, each under its respective group, and that when we find reports wholly or partly belonging to one group or more, inseparably attached to the reports of another group, we shall convey that information either by Cross-references, or by Notes entered under the groups where such reports might ordinarily be searched for.

(v.) Finally it has been shown to be essential that the binding of reports should correspond with the cataloguing of them.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Note on page 364.

This is the sum of what I have now to say in introduction to the Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue, and now I will only remark in reference to the spirit in which this paper is written, that it is not for Librarians to dictate to Governments or to Departments the manner in which they should compile their reports, but since Librarians are called upon to deal with such publications—to arrange and catalogue them for the benefit of the State, no one will censure them for pointing out what are the principles which affect the success or failure of their efforts, or for showing that the principles of *Departmental Publication of State-Papers* may in many instances be with advantage assimilated with those which pertain to the successful *cataloguing* of the same.

#### APPENDIX I.

##### EXAMPLES TO ILLUSTRATE SECTION ON SUBJECT-GROUPING (pages 373, 374).

(a) **Sanitation :**

Report, &c.

—**Diseases.**

Report, &c.

—**Military Branch.**

Report, &c.

—**Vital Statistics.**

Report, &c.

---

(b) **Public Instruction :**

*See also* **Schools and Colleges.**

*See also* **University.**

Report, &c.

**Schools and Colleges.**

Report, &c.

**University.**

Report, &c.

**(c) Light-Houses.**

Report, &amp;c.

**Public Works Dep.***See also* **Light-Houses.****(d) Windmills.**

Report, &amp;c.

**(e) BENGAL.****Public Works Dep.**

—Irrigation Br.

Report, &amp;c.

**SPECIAL RIVERS AND CANALS.**

Reports on the Rivers and Canals specified below will be found under **India**.—Rivers, &c.

**B. River.****C. River.****C. Canal.****D. Canal.**

&amp;c., &amp;c., &amp;c.

**Railway Dep.**

Report, &amp;c.

**SPECIAL RAILWAYS.**

Reports on the Railways specified below will be found under **India**.  
Railways.

**B. Railway.****C. Railway.**

&amp;c., &amp;c., &amp;c.

**INDIA.****Rivers and Canals.**

This Sub-heading includes all Reports relating to the Irrigation or Navigation of specified Rivers or Canals, whether published by the Supreme Government or by the Local Governments.

**B. River.**

Report, &amp;c.

**C. River.**

Report, &amp;c.

**C. Canal.**

Report, &amp;c.

**D. Canal.**

&amp;c., &amp;c., &amp;c.

**Railway Dep.***See also* **Railways.****Railways.**

This Sub-heading includes all Reports relating to specified Railways, whether published by the Supreme Government or by the Local Governments.

**B. Railway.**

Report, &amp;c.

**C. Railway.**

Report, &amp;c.

*Note.*—The character of the above type in the Appendix must not be accepted as final, but it is sufficient to illustrate the theory of Subject-Grouping.

**APPENDIX II.**  
**EXAMPLES TO ILLUSTRATE DIFFERENT SYSTEMS**  
**OF SUBJECT-GROUPING (page 370).**

*The following Appendices did not accompany the original paper (in "The Library"), but have been subsequently added for the sake of further illustration of the principles under discussion.*

**A.**

In the Report on the Administration of Bengal for 1887-88 (Part 2), we find the subjects classified in the following order :

<b>I. POLITICAL.</b>	<b>V. REVENUE AND FINANCE.</b>
Changes of Administration.	Imperial Revenue and Finance.
Relations with Tributary States and Frontier Affairs.	Provincial and Local Finance.
<b>II. ADMINISTRATION OF THE LAND.</b>	Land Revenue.
Survey.	Sources of Revenue other than Land :—
Settlement.	Customs.
Government Estates.	Opium.
Wards' Estates.	Salt.
<b>III. PROTECTION.</b>	Excise.
Course of Legislation.	Stamps.
Police.	Income Tax.
Criminal Justice.	<b>VI. VITAL STATISTICS AND MEDICAL SERVICE.</b>
Prisons.	Vital Statistics, Sanitation and Vaccination.
Civil Justice.	Emigration.
Registration.	Medical Relief.
Municipal Administration and Local Self-Government.	<b>VII. INSTRUCTION.</b>
Marine.	Education.
<b>IV. PRODUCTION AND DISTRIBUTION.</b>	Art, Literature and the Press.
Meteorology	<b>VIII. ARCHÆOLOGY.</b>
Weather, Crops and Prices and Material Condition of the People.	Archæology.
Land Records, Agriculture and Horticulture.	<b>IX. MISCELLANEOUS.</b>
Forests.	Ecclesiastical.
Manufactures, Mines, and other Industries.	Stationery and Printing.
Sea-borne Trade.	Zoological Gardens.
Internal Trade.	Economic and Art Museum.
Roads and Buildings.	
Irrigation.	
Railways.	
Telegraph and Post Offices.	

The grouping of the above subjects into nine divisions (however, necessary for the immediate purpose) is comparatively a fancy classification, and would be absolutely ignored by the Cataloguer, who would, e.g., place Legislation under *Legislation*, Police under *Police*, and *not* under *Protection*.



## B.

In the Moral and Material Progress Report of India for 1887—88, we find another illustration of the principles of classification. In this Report the subjects are dealt with in the following order :

## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

I. SUMMARY.	VII. SURVEYS AND SETTLEMENTS.
II. ADMINISTRATION AND LEGISLATION :	(II.)
(I., III.)	III. LAND REVENUE (INCLUDING FISHERIES, CAPITATION TAX, &c.) AND GOVERNMENT AND WARDS' ESTATES :
Administration.	(V., IV., II.)
Legislation.	Land Revenue.
III. MUNICIPALITIES, LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND SANITATION :	Government and Wards' Estates.
(III., VI.)	IX. FORESTS.
Municipalities and Local Boards.	(IV.)
Sanitation.	X. AGRICULTURE AND MINERAL RESOURCES :
IV. CRIME, POLICE, JAILS AND JUSTICE :	(IV.)
(III.)	Agriculture.
Crime and Police.	Crop Forecasts.
Criminal Justice.	Wheat.
Jails.	Cotton.
Civil Justice.	Sugar.
V. REGISTRATION :	Tea.
(III.)	Coffee.
Registration.	Chinchona.
Joint Stock Companies.	Agricultural Department.
VI. FINANCE :	Mineral Resources.
(V.)	XI. PUBLIC WORKS :
Finance.	(IV.)
Capital Outlay on Public Works.	Public Works.
Debt.	Railways.
Savings Bank and other Deposits.	Guaranteed Railways.
Cash Balances.	Irrigation.
Coinage and Paper Currency.	Buildings and Roads.
Opium.	Military Works.
Salt.	Civil Works.
Stamps.	XII. POST OFFICE AND TELEGRAPHS :
Excise.	(IV.)
Customs.	Post Office.
Provincial Rates.	Telegraphs.
Income Tax.	Indo-European Telegraph Department.

<p>XIII. EDUCATION AND LITERATURE :  (VII.)  Education.  Literature and the Press.</p> <p>XIV. EMIGRATION AND MIGRATION :  (VI.)  Emigration.  Migration.</p> <p>XV. TRADE AND MANUFACTURES :  (IV.)  Trade for 1887-88.  Trade for 1888-89.  Manufactures.</p>	<p>XVI. NATIVE STATES AND FRONTIER RELATIONS, ARMY AND MILITARY OPERATIONS :  (I.)  Native States.  Frontier Relations.  Army.  Military Operations.</p> <p>XVII. AFFAIRS IN UPPER BURMA.  (I.)</p>
---	---

*The numbers in parentheses signify the groups in Appendix II. A. with which the subjects really correspond, thus showing the difference between classification for "Provincial" or "Imperial" purposes.*

## C.

From the Cataloguer's point of view the subjects in Appendix II. B. would probably be reduced to a classification somewhat on the following lines :—

<p>Administration.  Agricultural Department.  Army.  Civil Justice Administration.  Criminal Justice Administration.  Customs Administration.  Emigration.  Estates.  Excise Administration.  Financial Administration.  Forest Administration.  [Geology and] Mineralogy.  Immigration.  Income Tax Administration.  Jail Administration.  Land Revenue Survey and Settlement.  Law Courts.  Legislation.  Literature and the Press.  Local Self-Government.  Mint  Municipal Administration.  Police Administration.</p>	<p>Post Office Administration.  Products and Industries :—  Cinchona.  Coffee.  Cotton.  Fisheries.  Opium.  Salt.  Sugar.  Tea.  Wheat.  Public Instruction.  Public Works Department.  Buildings and Roads Branch.  Civil Branch.  Irrigation Branch.  Military Branch.  Railway Department.  Railways.  Registration.  Stamp Administration.  Telegraph Administration.  Trade.  War, Rebellion, and Riot.</p>
--	---

The above classification will only be fully intelligible to those who are acquainted with the system on which the Indian official reports are compiled and published.



**A Plea for Annual Registers of State-Papers and Annual Reviews of State-Papers, as being essential preliminaries to State-Paper Catalogues. By Frank Campbell.**

*A Paper read at a Monthly Meeting of the Library Association, May 11, 1891.*

"Government Bibliography" "will never be satisfactory until the methods of Government Publication and Distribution are radically changed."  
(R. R. Bowker, Editor of the "*American Catalogue*," 1884-1890. 1891. 4to).

### Registers and Reviews of State-Papers.

PREFATORY NOTES. (i.) *As read, this paper originally included a general preface written with a view of emphasising the importance of making State-Papers more available for public use, and showing in a general manner that in no country had the treatment of State-Papers been anything but disappointing, if we compared the actual results with the standard of success which it is quite possible to attain to. I have decided, however, to omit this preface as being a branch of the subject which might more profitably form the subject matter of a separate paper.*

(ii.) *I find, after further experience and investigations, that the whole subject of State-Paper Registers, Reviews, and Catalogues is even more dependent for success on attention to prior steps of work than I had originally realised. For this reason, the matter cannot be comprehensively or satisfactorily dealt with, without first enunciating more fully than I have already done (in my previous paper) the Theories appertaining to those earlier stages, viz., the Theory of Compilation, and the Theory of Publication. It will be seen, therefore, that I have commenced the whole subject backwards, beginning with the last stage instead of with the first. I do not regret this, however, as I believe that the subject may perhaps be made more readily intelligible in this manner than by the alternative method. Having, then, already dealt with the final stage (A State-Paper Catalogue), I shall now try and show cause for my advocacy of Annual Registers and Annual Reviews of State-Papers.*  
—F. B. F. C., May, 1891.

In the summer of 1890, in a paper introductory to the Theory of a State-Paper Catalogue, I expressed my belief that in order to render the State-Papers of any nation properly accessible to the public, there were two essential preliminaries: (i.) An **Annual List or Register of State-Papers**; (ii.) An **Annual Review** of the more important publications appearing in that List, and I inferred that both publications were necessary, even if a Catalogue of the State-Papers of the same country were contemplated

or were already in existence ; and I further implied that none of the three publications necessarily encroached on one another's province, but that the List was a necessary preliminary to the Review, and both List and Review necessary to the proper compilation, continuance, and full use of the Catalogue.

### Past and Present Failure in the Record of Official Documents.

I start first with the assumption already greatly recognised in this country, that every man has a right to know of the existence of every single State-Paper published in the country of which he is a citizen, except there be some very special reason on grounds of political expediency for withholding that information. Furthermore, it will not be disputed that he has a right to know where any given State-Paper was published, by what Department or person, at what date, what it relates to, how it can be procured, and, in fact everything about it.

But how is he to secure this information ? " By a List," is the answer. " And what kind of List ? " " A full and comprehensive one," is the reply. " Exactly so ! But where is the country where a List is published according to your definition ? " And this is where the fault lies. There are many countries in which Lists of one sort and another are issued. But there is no country which publishes *one comprehensive* List or Register which you could consult with the certainty of finding a notice of every *bonâ fide* State-Report for the year, together with the series of statements necessary to the proper description of such Reports.

In some countries, the purely *Departmental* Reports are jumbled up together with the purely *Parliamentary* Papers, under the head of " Sessional Papers." Being thus associated together with Parliamentary Papers for the use of Houses of Parliament they are printed, arranged, and bound on principles solely adapted to that purpose. Thus, instead of being arranged and bound up according to clearly defined natural subject-groups, with well-chosen titles for the important reports, the minor reports being collected together under general titles, they are entered in the Lists (if at all), and bound up, according to dates of printing or " Command." So long as they have reference numbers and dates, it matters not that reports which are long and important should be placed on a level with those which are trifling in nature (such as

short tabulated returns) because an Alphabetical Index repairs the evil! But even then an Alphabetical Index is only a partial remedy, if the Lists are compiled upon false principles, and it would not be required at all for a List of *Departmental* Reports, provided these reports were kept separate from the ordinary *Parliamentary* Papers, and thus allowed to be entered in a List according to their own special requirements.

In other countries the Sessional Lists and Indexes are so meagre as almost to be worthless, and (worst of all crimes) are almost invariably bound up with the huge Sessional volumes, so as never to be obtainable separate at any price.

In some instances the deficiency is supposed to be remedied by the existence of Departmental Lists. But the majority of men never hear or know of their existence, and even then they are often very difficult to be obtained. Furthermore, if they are fortunate enough to procure them they will probably find that they only contain a limited number of the reports of the Department which happen to be in print, or a selection of undated reports, the titles of which are clumsily abbreviated and which, for any evidence to the contrary, may be one or ten years old.

Departmental Lists have their appointed ends, and are indeed necessary to the compilation of the one National List I advocate, but they must not be allowed to supplant it.

On other occasions the publications of a department are noted in the pages of the ordinary annual report, but in such cases they would not readily be looked for and easily escape the eye.

In other instances—and in some countries, I fear these swell the majority—the publications of the National Departments are noted *nowhere* at all.

It will readily be imagined from the foregoing that it is no easy matter for our simple citizen to secure the information he wants. “Well, but your ‘simple’ citizen can go to the Library where he will get what he asks for,” is the retort, “and besides what does he want with all this information? If he were a learned student in quest of deep knowledge by which to benefit his country there might be some reason for all this to-do.” “Very well,” we reply, “while we could easily quote numerous instances where the simple citizen whom you disdain and whose claims you would ignore has become the expert and master-statesman, we will ignore his claims on this occasion, because it is just as easy to show that the experienced librarian and the

learned student are each equally in need of this same information as the 'poor citizen.' And if it were not obvious we could show that the same difficulties which harass the librarian and the student, trouble the civil servant also throughout his whole career."

### **The value of details.**

A librarian who is cataloguing State Papers is bound to assure himself of numberless little and apparently insignificant points which to the ordinary eye might seem altogether trifling, but which, taken together, are in reality of the highest importance, and the elucidation of which is an absolute necessity if the librarian is to make a correct, explicit, consistent and useful catalogue.

For instance, in regard to reports which relate to such a country as India, it is an additional clue to the ranks and merits of a report to know whether it was published on behalf of the Imperial "Government of India," or was the work of a Provincial Government. And, apart from differences of Imperialism and Provincialism, since Indian State Papers have been published by many different Governing Bodies, it is not possible to catalogue them with absolute correctness so as to be easily found, unless we know which of the said bodies published each individual report. The full importance of this point will be realised when we consider that reports relating to the administration of India may have been published by at least six different governing bodies, i.e.:

1. *By the E. I. Company's Servants in India.*
2. *By the E. I. Company's Court of Directors in London (and even perhaps by the Board of Control).*
3. *As E. I. Company's Reports published as Parliamentary Papers.*
4. *By the British Government's Servants in India (i. The Imperial Government. ii. The Local Government).*
5. *By the India Office in London.*
6. *As India Office Reports published as English Parliamentary Papers.*

Again; it is necessary for the cataloguer to know by what Department a report was issued, and also the official title of the chief of the Department, for this also affects correct cataloguing. And this knowledge is just as necessary to the student also, for a report is sometimes valuable or valueless, according



as it is published by one Department or another. For, although written on the same subject and with similar title, it may be written from quite a different point of view, with quite a different object, and arranged on quite a different system.

Again; it is of no small value to know the name of the immediate compiler of a given report, since in many instances it makes all the difference, for the official and historian alike, to know that the opinions expressed in a certain report or series of reports were those of a man of eminence and reliability, or the contrary, thus enabling them to trace back the reports of the one and avoid those of the other.

Furthermore, inasmuch as the names of Departments are often so general as to afford little or no help to the cataloguer, and since Departments are so liable to constant reorganisation, with consequent changes in the reports, it is often necessary for the cataloguer to know the official description both of the officer who has compiled the report, as also of him to whom it is transmitted, as indicating what Branch of a Department it belongs to.

Next, since Departments and Subjects are not necessarily consistent or reciprocal, we wish to know something definite concerning the subject matter of the report. To what general subject does it relate? To what division of that subject? Next we shall wish to know to what territory the report relates—whether to a whole territory, or to certain parts of it; and if so, to which parts.

We shall then ask what period of Time the report covers. A year or a century?—and if it be an annual report, it is necessary to know whether it relates to a calendar, financial, or agricultural year, and when those years begin and end, since the two latter ones are always liable to change. Want of attention to such points may easily affect the accuracy of statistics which are based upon periods of time. And if a report be Biennial or Triennial, this also should be clearly stated in order to save fruitless labour in searching for annual reports which do not exist.

Next—the Edition and Date. Does the report supersede all previous ones? Is it the first of a series of "Occasional" reports or the first of a series of "Annual" reports; or, is it only an experimental report which happens to relate to a whole year, but will not be repeated again?

And then, of course, the number of pages, the place where published, the date of issue and price should be stated.

Finally (and it is here alone that the Register and the Review meet in danger of trespassing on one another's grounds) it might be advisable to append to the Register a column to include any "**Remarks**" calculated to supply useful information which could not very well be inserted in the existing columns.

Under "**Remarks**" it might often be stated with advantage what was the immediate object for which a report was compiled. This information is often necessary to the cataloguer before he can assign a report its proper place in a catalogue, while in showing the general lines of the report it would enable the student to judge at once whether he would find in it the information he desired.

Often we ask ourselves: Is this the only report on the subject, or is it published in conjunction with others? This question would be answered. At other times, we ask: Is the subject reported upon for the very first time, or, is it reported upon for the first time separately? If the latter, in what report was it originally included, and in what section of that report?

The "**Remarks**" column would also serve the purpose of drawing attention to neglect of necessary details of publication, thus enabling them to be rectified in the future (*e.g.*, "No title page." "Table of Contents wanted." "No Index," &c., &c., &c.).

The above is a general sketch of the many uses which an Annual Register might serve, and the case is in no way overstated nor the value of such a list exaggerated. But the Register refers mainly to the *exterior* of the reports. It remains now therefore to deal with their *interior* matter, and this brings me to my consideration of the second preliminary, an

### Annual Review of State Papers.

It is not necessary, or indeed possible, to sketch the shape of such an Annual Review in minute detail, inasmuch as this depends mainly upon the actual matter of the reports to hand. It is sufficient to state that it will draw attention to all that is most remarkable in the reports of the year, both as to matter included or omitted.

It has slowly dawned on mankind during the last ten years that men like to be informed *what* to read, and *where* to find it. At first this might appear to result from a spirit of indolence in an age in which men prefer to be done for rather than to do. But second thoughts will convince us rather that the tendency is

due to a genuine difficulty amounting to an impossibility for the generality of men to keep pace with the rush of life, and thus, in the matter of reading, to read what ought to be read. Consequently each year sees us more and more dependent on indexes and selected lists and other aids. As in the world of general literature, so in each particular section of it. And thus in the section of State-Papers. It becomes, therefore, more incumbent on us to do all that is possible to simplify research and to facilitate the final possession of knowledge. And in no section of literature is this simplification more needed than with State-Papers which so greatly affect the weal or woe of a country. And in no section is failure to do so to be more deplored, since in no other direction can such satisfactory results be obtained at so little cost of labour.

The need of a Review of State-Reports is thus primarily due to the enormous number of reports published in the course of each year in contrast with the small amount of time which can be bestowed upon them. But there is another cause which increases the necessity of such a remedy, viz., *the impossibility of accurately gauging what we may term the accidental contents of the average report*. Students of State Papers will have found that in their researches they may wade through years of annual reports, and find mere ordinary routine news, when, just as they are about to give up in despair, they may suddenly stumble across a nugget of gold. And so great is this uncertainty concerning the insertion or omission of extra-ordinary information, that even those most experienced in the search for it can never be sure of knowing where and when to look. Moreover, as we have pointed out before, it is impossible for cataloguers or catalogues to supply all the information necessary. Hence the need of a Review which shall note the occurrence in the pages of the yearly reports of matter of special importance, which might otherwise be forgotten and lie concealed for ages.

The special information to which we allude as so irregular in its occurrence may be generally expected to appear under the following circumstances :—

- (a) It may be entered in the first report issued by a department.
- (b) It may be given in any report which relates to a year in which any great change of departmental organisation (amalgamation, &c.), has taken place.
- (c) Individual appointments in a department may produce

the same effect. The changing of supreme officers or the appointing of a new compiler of an annual report will often be an occasion for introducing a special chapter or appendix on the work and history of the department.

(d) And again, if a department be abolished, a history of its work would naturally appear in the last report.

(e) Special matter may be expected in a report relating to a year in which some *external* fact has vitally affected a department, either temporarily or permanently. (e.g., *In connection with the Famine (Cyclone), the report on ——— contains an able memorandum on the history of past scourges (Cyclone-Storms), with a code of regulations to assist in forestalling and counteracting the evil in the future.*)

Special attention would be drawn to the commencement of new investigations and reports of Governments on such subjects as Agriculture, Archæology, Natural Products, and Industries. Special publicity would also be given to systems of official publication. Thus it is not every one who knows that the Annual General Administration reports of the several provinces of India (as also the Moral and Material Progress Reports), contain special reports every tenth year, when not only the events of the last decade are summarised but the whole past history of each subject is re-written up to date, so as to form a handy reference-volume for the next ten years.

Defects of compilation and publication (faulty titles, &c.) might also often be remedied in the proposed Review (e.g., *In the Report on the Revenue Administration of Bengal, the compiler practically narrates the history of the different Revenue systems throughout India. The work might, therefore, have well been entitled: "Review of the various Revenue systems throughout India, with special reference to the Province of Bengal."*)

And, finally, a great deal of general information could be given, which would be invaluable to the student. Thus, studying the history of any given subject, as, for instance, that of Education, we would naturally wish to know:—

At what period did the subject of Education first occupy the attention of the Government of ———

What officials have played a prominent part in the advocacy of its progress?

Were they all of the same school of thought? If not, what were their respective views, and where shall we find them contrasted?

Where can we find an epitome of the progress of Education in —, with an account of the causes of failure or success ?

### Conclusion.

The above notes are but the barest hints as to the nature of the information which might be sought for, but I hope they are sufficient to show the form which the Review might take, and the uses which it might fulfil.

The writer has merely to add that the Annual Register and Annual Review must not be regarded as original suggestions on his part, inasmuch as the idea is already carried out by the Indian Government in reference to the publications of the *Public Press* throughout India. He merely seeks, in dealing with *State-Papers*, to apply those principles (with necessary modification or expansion) which have already been considered necessary and found successful in the case of the non-official works of a whole Empire. And here, in regard both to Register and Review, the question may aptly be asked: Realising the existence of countless questions which are ever arising in connection with the *State-Papers* of the different Governments of the world, whose duty is it to answer them in order to save the waste of endless and often fruitless labour which must ensue, and in order to facilitate the proper cataloguing and use of the same? Is it the duty of the Government which issues those reports; which controls the compilation and publishing of them; which is on the spot, and which alone has the knowledge and power necessary to answer the questions satisfactorily? Or is it the duty of the struggling librarian, who has no necessary connection with the Government concerned, who is perhaps thousands of miles away, and who has neither the information, nor the power to obtain the information, which is so necessary to the interests of his work and his country?

There can surely be but *one* answer.

# **Specimen Schedule of a Register of Official Documents.**

[COUNTRY.]

## *Annual Register of State-Reports published during the Year*

Arranged in order of the Departments by which the Reports were issued.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Registered Number.	General Subject.	Special Branch of General Subject.	Title.	Transmitted from:	Transmitted to:	Number of Copies of Edition.	Date of Registering.	Remarks.	Registered Number.

' Including Names of Authors, Editors, Translators; Territory Report relates to; Period of Time Report covers; Pages; Edition; Place of Printing; Place of Publication; Date of Printing; Size; Price.

F. B. F. C.  
August, 1894.

### On the impossibility of Merging Official Documents in an Authors' Catalogue of General Literature.

In regard to matters Bibliographical, Literature falls into two great Divisions, each requiring different treatment :—

(I.) Official Documents.

(II.) Non-Official Literature or General Literature.

The main characteristics of the works included under the term **General Literature** are :—

(1) That the majority of them have authors' names attached, or, at least, designations which stand in place of authors, *e.g.*, the name of a Society or that of a Periodical.

(2) That they are issued, in the main, regardless of any particular series of connected subjects, and do not, as a class, relate to very definite areas, treated from one particular point of view.

The chief characteristics of **Official Documents**, as a class, are just the reverse :—

(1) The majority of them have no expressed authorship, and are practically anonymous.

(2) They relate to particular series of connected subjects, to definite areas of space and time, and are treated from one particular point of view, such that, while

(3) They possess a unique value, if kept together and registered as series by themselves, their value is instantly diminished if they are indiscriminately mixed together with General Literature; and, in addition, General Literature is also very greatly the loser by any attempted indiscriminate amalgamation of the two Divisions.

(4) The majority of Official Documents are issued *periodically*,

thus necessitating separate library space of their own.

#### A Common Fallacy.

In spite, however, of the above differences, the ordinary eye is not satisfied. Theoretically, all Official Documents are issued in

connection with certain Departments corresponding to the subjects of the Reports, and occupying positions analogous to the names of *Authors* in the world of General Literature.

Is it not, then, raising unnecessary distinctions and intricacies to keep the two classes separate? What should be easier than to dovetail the two classes together, and incorporate the Official Documents under the names of their Departments in among the works of Authors' Catalogues of General Literature. This is a very dangerous fallacy, and one which has created untold disaster in the world of Literature.

### The Answer.

The answer is, however, very simple.

While, *theoretically*, Official Documents are issued under the names of Departments, which, in one sense, stand as the authors of their connected publications, *practically*, this supposition is not borne out in actual experience.

(1) The names of Departments frequently do not appear at all on the Reports which they issue.

(2) Even when given, the names of Departments are perpetually liable to repeated changes, according to changes of organisation.

(3) The published name of a Department has frequently no obvious or even necessary connection with the subject of the Report which is issued in its name; or else the connection is so distant that it is either misleading or valueless.

This necessitates the frequent ignoring of the names of Departments in favour of the real *subject* of the Report.

(4) Even supposing that it were found possible to incorporate Official Documents in among other subject-headings in a Catalogue of General Literature, there is always great danger of the *bond fide* Official Documents getting mixed with *non-official* works issued relating to the Official Departments.

(5) While even if this unnecessary but likely evil is avoided, you cannot escape from the difficulty that the accessions of Official Documents under one heading increase with amazing rapidity compared with the normal increase of accessions in any one spot of an Authors' Catalogue, thus saddling an Authors' Catalogue with evils not its own.

(6) The main mass of Official Documents do not relate to subjects of what is called "*general interest*," and are, therefore, intruders in a Catalogue of General Literature, the readers of



which may justly consider it a grievance if they cannot purchase or consult the Catalogue of General Literature without being obliged to purchase or consult the records of a mass of Official Documents.

(7) But the chiefest objection is that, while it is possible to deal satisfactorily with General Literature and with Official Literature, provided each class be treated separately by itself, it is impossible to treat either class satisfactorily, if a real amalgamation of the two is attempted; for the rules which affect the one, clash with the rules which control the other, and confusion is the result. The rules which affect both classes are often so intricate, that even the most experienced will find themselves transferring entries of one class to another under one set of rules without considering it necessary to enter duplicate entries in pursuance of the demands of the other set of rules, and thus confusion is bound to result.

This is all the more a condition of affairs impossible to escape from, in consequence of the frequent necessity, in a Catalogue of Official Documents, for making very numerous cross-references, which are bound to clash with the ordinary headings in a Catalogue of General Literature.

### A Second Fallacy (Selection).

But when objectors are convinced of the futility and danger of attempts to mix the two classes of Official and Non-official works together in one Catalogue, they fall back upon another device.

"If, then, the mass of Official Documents raise such great difficulties," say they, "let us resort to the principle of *selection*. Let us select the ones which are of special value, and which are most likely to be asked for." "What?" says the Librarian, "You wish to select the reports which *you* consider of special value and interest from among the Official Documents, in order to insert them in the Catalogue of General Literature—in fact you wish to steal them from their belongings without leaving any acknowledgement of the fact?"

"Yes," say they, "Why not?"

### The Answer.

"Why not?" answers the Librarian: "Why, simply for the following reasons":

(1) It is impossible for you to determine which Reports possess special value and interest, and which do not;

(2) There is no possible standard of comparison ;

You can, it is true, determine that certain reports are of more *general value* ; but further than this, you cannot distinguish, and the result of your robbing one library to enrich another is—

(1) You greatly detract from the value, and spoil the completeness of the Series of Official Documents for ever ;

(2) You raise a host of Queries as a legacy, both for yourselves and your successors, for no one will ever afterwards be able to know with certainty in which of two Catalogues, or in which of two Library Collections he may expect to find the reports he requires ; and the presence of the selected entries in the General Catalogue will give rise to the false impression that they, and they alone, exist in the Library as representing the whole collection of Official Documents. In fine, all work will be doubled.

(1) The Librarian and Reader alike will always have to be considering in regard to accessions, "Is this a selected work or not?"

(2) The searching in Catalogues will be doubled. The uncertainty will be ten-fold, and incessant Queries will be the order of the day.

(3) The value of each Catalogue will be halved twice over.

### **A Third Fallacy. (The Separate Block-System).**

"But," cry the friends of amalgamation, "if it is impossible to incorporate Official Documents in among the general headings of a Catalogue of General Literature, we know a way out of the difficulty! Let us insert the Official Documents as *separate blocks* by themselves. Thus we shall unite the two classes, without the one interfering with the other."

### **The Answer.**

This, again, is a fallacy, and radically wrong, because experience will always show that, while *theoretically* it is possible to adopt the separate block system, *practically* it will never work. From the fact that the class of Official Documents touches that of General Literature at a certain point, librarians will always be tempted into cataloguing the border literature under the rules of an *Author* Catalogue once, rather than insert the works in question in duplicate—both under the blocks, and under the names of Authors and Institutions. Moreover, as said before, the number of Cross-References required in an Official Documents Catalogue are so numerous ; the need for liberty in re-framing bad titles so

imperative; the different characters of type so numerous; the details of special leading and indention so intricate, that the Separate Block System will be found to be equally inefficacious.

But even supposing that the Separate Block System *were* possible, and consistently carried out, what is the result?

You have, when your Catalogue is finished, accomplished the very design which you have shirked, and which it is the object of this paper to promote. You have compiled a Catalogue of Official Documents which is a *separate* Catalogue in every sense of the word, except that the blocks relating to each country have been unstitched and bound into a Catalogue of General Literature at intervals! But you have accomplished this achievement at the cost of the one chief advantage to be derived from such a process. You have chained the Sections of the Official Documents Catalogue to a General Literature Catalogue, so that no one can purchase the former as a whole, or even in part, without having to purchase the latter also!

Such a policy is amusingly illustrated by an experience of the writer a few hours ago. I wanted a small pocket engagement diary. I went into a stationer's shop, and saw the only one which was small enough, inserted in an elaborate leather case.

The identical diary I had formerly bought elsewhere for a few pennies; so I asked whether I could not again purchase it separately by itself. "Oh, no!" replied the man; "that would never do, for how could I sell the leather case?" I replied: "It is rather hard upon the diary, is it not?" and left the shop. I wanted the diary, I did not want the leather case.

But to continue: before quitting the subject, let me clearly point out the occasions when Official Documents may be entered, together with General Literature, in the same Catalogue.

(i.) Official Documents whose nature is common to both classes of Literature, may be entered, as *duplicate entries*, in an Authors' Catalogue of General Literature, *viz.*, those publications which, being of a more special nature, and relating to subjects of general interest rather than to the ordinary technical administrative routine, are more generally treated from a popular, rather than an official, point of view. Such works will generally be found to fall under the head of Science, Literature, or Art.

(ii.) Official Documents may be merged in any number and to any extent, with General Literature in a *Subject-Catalogue*, in order to supplement the collection of works appearing on a particular subject or group of subjects.

But this may only take place on the distinct understanding that such a course is not pursued as an alternative to first cataloguing Official Literature separately by itself.

In conclusion, the foregoing argument may be briefly summed up as follows :

Official Documents constitute a Series, mainly distinguished by the fact that Subject supersedes Authorship. For this reason, in dealing with them by the class, and in order to find Official Documents as Official Documents, they must not be merged in Author-Catalogues of General Literature, but must be catalogued as a class by themselves, according to Special Rules.

l  
s  
no  
is  
wa.

poi  
toge  
(  
class  
Auth.  
which  
genera  
trative  
than an  
to fall u  
(ii.)  
any exte  
order to  
ticular su

le Pages, Introductions, and Specimen  
es of two Annual Catalogues of Official  
uments. (CAPE of GOOD HOPE and  
IA), printed by the Author as studies.

IMPERIAL FEDERATION SERIES  
OF  
COLONIAL  
STATE-PAPER CATALOGUES

EDITED BY  
FRANK CAMPBELL  
*(Of The Library, British Museum).*

No. 1.

CAPE OF GOOD HOPE.

1892.

LONDON.

---

1893.

## INTRODUCTION.

IN issuing the first of a series of Annual Catalogues of the Colonial State-Papers of our larger Colonies, it may be remarked that this number does not pretend to fulfil all the conditions which might be desired.

The idea was conceived at too late an hour to allow of anything but the most hasty attention to details, if the Catalogue were to appear on the Opening Day of the Imperial Institute.

If Imperial Federation is to be something more than a name, we must know something more of our Colonies than we do at the present moment.

It is scarcely necessary to point out that, in an age of Investigation and Legislation, the life of each of our larger Colonies centres in its Parliament. If, then, the Papers and Proceedings of their Parliaments be issued without due provision for the supply of Catalogues, these Sessional Papers might just as well never have been printed, so far as the General Public is concerned.

It is hoped that the present Series will help to supply this long-felt want.

THE EDITOR.

The Cape Colony (for 1892) has been selected as No. 1 of the Series on technical reasons.



LIST  
OF  
STATE-PAPERS  
PUBLISHED  
BY THE GOVERNMENT  
OF THE  
CAPE OF GOOD HOPE  
DURING THE YEAR  
1892.

EDITED BY  
FRANK CAMPBELL  
*(Of The Library, British Museum).*

LONDON.

—  
1893.

**When bound, the "Sessional Papers" of the Cape Parliament for 1892 consist of five Volumes :—**

- (1) Votes and Proceedings of Parliament.
- (2) Appendix I., Vol. 1.
- (3) Do. Vol. 2.
- (4) Do. Vol. 3.
- (5) Appendix II. in one volume.

**In the absence of a continuous numbering of the volumes, reference is best made to the particular Appendix and volume of the Appendix in which a Report may be found.**

**Agriculture—**

See also **Schools, &c.—Agricultural Schools.**

Report of the Dept. of Agriculture for 1891-1892. APP. I.,  
VOL. iii. 1892. fol.

Reports of the Agricultural Assistants for 1891-2.

2 Pts. [1892.] See *supra*: Report of the Dept. of Agriculture for 1891-92. APP. IV. 1892. fol.

Report of the Select Committee on the Re-organisation of the Agricultural Dept. pp. xv., 82, iv. APP. II. 1892. 8°

**Drift Sands—**

Report of the Select Committee\* on Drift Sands. xi., 30, iv.  
APP. II. 1892. 8°

\* For dealing with and arresting the Drift Sands in all parts of the Colony.

**Fruit Culture—**

Report of the Select Committee\* on Fruit Culture and Fruit Export. pp. xxviii. (7) 76, xxvii. APP. II. 1892. 8°

\* To enquire into the best means for promoting the cultivation and export of Fruit.

**Locusts—**

Reports on Locusts and their Destruction.\* [Edited by A. Fischer, Secretary for Agriculture.] 2 Pts. APP. I.,  
VOL. i.

App. 2 = Report of the Advising Entomologist, L. Peringuey, under title, "The Life History of the Insect."

\* "The only way to destroy the eggs is to dig them up, and expose them to the sun."

"The only way to destroy eggs is to plough the ground very deeply . . . (overturning and burying the cells too low for the heat of the sun to effect incubation) . . . in order that the eggs may rot."

"Trample them (the Wingless Insect) with Sheep or Goats, or by a large sledge made of heavy boughs of trees dragged by Oxen."

"I have seen them (the Flying Locusts) settle so thickly as to completely put the fires out."

**Prickly Pear—**

Report\* on the Prickly Pear, by Dr. Marloth,† with Results of Experiments. 1892.

\* At the recommendation of the Select Committee on the subject.

† Of the Stellenbosch Agricultural School.

See *supra*: **Agriculture.** Report of the Dept. of Agriculture for 1891-92. pp.—17-20. 1892. fol.

- Report on the Results of Experiments with Chemical Scrub  
Exterminators for the Destruction of the Prickly Pear. By  
A. C. Macdonald. 1892.  
*See supra* : **Agriculture**. Report of the Dept. of Agriculture  
for 1891-92. pp.—21-23. 1892. fol.

**Tobacco—**

- Report of the Government Tobacco Experts for... 1891-92.  
pp. 5 [1892.]  
*See supra* : **Agriculture**. Report of the Dept. of Agriculture  
for 1891-92. 1892. fol.

**Veterinary Surgeons—**

- Report of the Colonial Veterinary Surgeons for... 1891-92.  
pp. 10. [1892.]  
*See supra* : **Agriculture**. Report of the Dept. of Agriculture  
for 1891-92. APP. I. 1892. fol.

**Viticulture—**

- Report of the Govt. Viticulturist for 1891-92. pp. 7. 1892.  
*See supra* : **Agriculture**. Report of the Dept. of Agriculture  
for 1891-92. APP. 2. 1892. fol.  
Memo [randum] on Re-planting the Vineyards at Stellen-  
bosch, and on [the need of a large supply of] American  
Vines. [By Baron C. von Babo.] 1892.  
*See* **Agriculture**. Report of the Select Committee, &c. APP. B.  
1892. 8°.

**Art Associations—**

- Report of the South African Fine Art Association for... 1891.  
(Art Gallery, Cape Town.) pp. 5, APP. I., VOL. iii.  
1892. fol.

**Banks—**

- Report of the Select Committee on the Cape Savings Bank,  
Winding-up Bill. pp. 13, 10, v. APP. II. 1892. 8°.

**Botanic Gardens—**

- See* **Parks and Gardens**.

**Cape Town —**

**Electric Lighting—**

- Report of the Select Committee on the Green and Sea Point  
Water and Electric Lighting Bill. pp. 14. APP. II.  
1892. 8°.

Off. Docs.]

410

[Sect. III., No. 5b.]

CATALOGUE  
OF  
OFFICIAL REPORTS

RELATING TO

INDIA

ISSUED AS

ENGLISH PARLIAMENTARY PAPERS

(AND, IN CONNECTION WITH THE INDIA OFFICE)

DURING THE YEAR

1892.

COMPILED BY

FRANK CAMPBELL

(Of the Library, British Museum).

LONDON  
1893.

6d.

## INTRODUCTION.

(1) The difficulty if not impossibility of ascertaining what publications exist in regard to 'Indian Affairs' is no new cry.

(2) There are many reasons to account for it. Among others, the Bibliography of Indian Official Reports is unusually involved, owing to the numerous possible sources of publication which necessitate research in a corresponding number of directions.

(3) In a former paper on State-Paper Bibliography ('*A Plea for Annual Lists [or Catalogues] of State-Papers,*' &c.), I specified the main sources of publication in regard to Indian State-Papers, past and present, as being six in number. Thus such reports may have been published :

- (1) *By the E. I. Company's Servants in India.*
- (2) *By the E. I. Company's Court of Directors in London (and even perhaps by the Board of Control).*
- (3) *As E. I. Company's Reports, published as 'Parliamentary Papers.'*
- (4) *By the British Government's Servants in India (i. The Supreme Government. ii. The Local Governments).*
- (5) *By the India Office in London.*
- (6) *As India Office Reports, published as English 'Parliamentary Papers.'*

(4) Such being the case, if we wish to master the situation, it is essential that there should be six separate Catalogues. (Whether they be partly merged together, or finally incorporated in one great Catalogue, is a matter for after consideration). To this end, from the time of the commencement of the History of *British India* there should have been issued *Annual Catalogues* of the publications issued from every existing source, relating exclusively to India.

(5) In the case of English Parliamentary Papers, Annual Indexes have been issued for a long series of years, so that those

Indian Official Reports which are included among the English Sessional Papers have at least been *indexed* periodically. But there is a radical difference between an Index and a Catalogue, and since there exists no *Catalogues* (nor *separate* Indexes) of these reports, and the reports themselves are buried in with the mass of other English Sessional Papers, the practical result is that the long and important reports relating to India are un-get-at-able.

(6) The accompanying Catalogue is intended to supply the deficiency for that section of Indian Official Reports which are issued as English Parliamentary Papers, and published in connection with the India Office, for the year 1892, and it is hoped that it may be found practicable to continue it for future years also, in which case it will always appear as soon after the New Year as possible.

(7) Special attention has been bestowed on the type and type arrangement, in order to secure the greatest amount of perspicuity, and I wish to thank Mr. Truslove for the trouble he has kindly taken in carrying out my wishes.

In regard to this all important question of perspicuity, it is probable that modifications may be yet introduced into my future works, as the result of further experiments. I need only add that any suggestions from those who are interested in the subject will be cordially welcomed.

F. B. F. C. (1893.)

#### POSTSCRIPT.

Apart from purposes of practical use, this little Catalogue is intended to illustrate a Bibliographical Theory already alluded to in a former paper ("Bibliography Backwards"), where special stress was laid upon the existence of *Books within Books and Series within Series*, and the need for unravelling the tangle, and obviating the evil in future.

Thus, without wandering far afield, it is obvious that the huge and unwieldy set of Documents known as "English Parliamentary Papers" contains a number of distinct series all mixed up together, corresponding with an equal number of Catalogues as yet uncompiled.

And before these documents can be made really accessible for reference, past, present, and future, it will be necessary to initiate

and complete the compilation up to date, with future annual accessions, of the following Catalogues—say from 1800.

- (1) Catalogue of English Official Reports relating generally to Great Britain and Ireland.
- (2) Catalogue of English Official Reports relating to England and Wales.
- (3) Catalogue of English Official Reports relating to Scotland.
- (4) Catalogue of English Official Reports relating to Ireland.
- (5) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to the Colonies.
- (6) [Smaller Catalogues of English Parliamentary Papers relating to each of the larger Colonies (*i.e.*, the Sections of No. 5 issued separately)]
- (7) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to India.
- (8) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to Foreign Countries.
- (9) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to the Army.
- (10) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to the Navy.
- (11) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to Agriculture.
- (12) Catalogue of English Parliamentary Papers relating to the Manufacturing Industries.

&c., &c., &c.



### ABBREVIATIONS.

---

From a Librarian's point of view, the traditional distinctions in regard to the published arrangement, technical designations, and hieroglyphical numeration of English 'Parliamentary Papers' are peculiarly unfortunate.

What may be the difference between a '*Report*' and a '*Paper*'; why the House of Lords Bills are numbered '*Papers*,' and the House of Commons Bills treated differently, are questions which must have puzzled many a brain.

In the present Catalogue the following abbreviations<sup>1</sup> will be used:—

- L (1, &c.) = House of Lords Publication, No. 1, &c.  
 C 1, &c. = "House of Commons Reports and Papers,"  
                     No. 1, &c.  
 C (B) 1, &c. = House of Commons Bill, No. 1, &c.  
 [1, &c.] = Papers by Command, No. 1, &c.
- 

It may be mentioned that English Parliamentary Papers can be purchased at the following Agencies:—

#### ENGLAND AND WALES.

Messrs. Eyre & Spottiswoode,  
 East Harding Street, Fetter Lane, London, E.C.  
 32, Abingdon Street, Westminster, S.W.

#### IRELAND.

Messrs. Hodges, Figgis, & Co., 104, Grafton Street, Dublin.

#### SCOTLAND.

Messrs. John Menzies & Co., 12, Hanover Street, Edinburgh.  
 "And of all Booksellers."

---

<sup>1</sup> As a matter of fact, it is probably now too late to alter the system of Abbreviations which have been used in the past, even though it is so bad.

## LIST OF HEADINGS.

**INDIA.****Administration.**

*See also* Statistics (Miscellaneous).

**Acts.**

*See* Statutes.

**Agriculture.**

*See also* Famine.

**Army.**

*See also* War, &c.

**Bills.**

*See also* Statutes.

—House of Lords.

—House of Commons.

**Calcutta Chamber of Commerce.****Calcutta Health Dept.****Cholera.****Civil Service.****Currency.****Disease.**

*See also* Cholera.

**Excise.****Famine.****Finance.**

*See also* Currency.

*See also* Loans.

**Frontiers.**

*See also* North-West Frontier.

**Legislation.**

*See* Bills.

*See* Legislative Councils.

*See* Statutes.

**Legislative Councils (India).****Loans.****Military Adm.****Military Operations.**

*See* War, &c.

**North-West Frontier.****Opium.**

*See* Excise.

**Pilgrimages.****Public Works Dept.****Railways.****Revenue.**

*See* Finance.

**Sanitation.****Silver Question.**

*See* Currency.

**Statistics (Miscellaneous).****Statutes (relating to India).****Superannuation.**

*See under* Civil Service.

**Surveys (Bengal).**

*See* BENGAL—Surveys.

**Telegraph Adm.****Trade.**

*See also* Calcutta Chamber of Commerce.

**Treaties.****War, Rebellion and Riot.****BENGAL.****Surveys.**

**INDIA.****Trade** (*contd.*).

Statement of the Trade of British India with British Possessions and Foreign Countries for the five years 1886-87 to 1890-91. pp. 112.

[6646.] [11d.] *London, 1892.* fol.

The "Introduction" (pp. 3-16) "is, especially in the remarks under the various heads of Trade, to a large extent based on the Review of the Trade of India, by Mr. J. E. O'Connor."

**Treaties.**

Agreements between the British and Persian Governments prolonging existing Conventions between Her Majesty and the Shah of Persia relative to Telegraphic Communication between Europe and India, &c. [6631.] [1½d.] *London, 1892.* 8°.

Being No. 6, 1892, of the "Treaty Series"  
(English Parliamentary Papers).

**Rebellion, and Riot.**

Correspondence (29th Nov., 1891—12th Feb., 1892) relating to the Operations in Hunza-Nagar. pp. 12. [6621.] [1½d.] *London, 1892.* fol.

[Being 17 short Telegrams descriptive of the Operations, &c., together with a Despatch from the Govt. of India reporting fully on the whole proceedings.]

"Thus on the first occasion, since the inauguration of the Imperial Service Scheme, upon which the troops of a Native State have been called upon to take the field, they have shown themselves capable of gaining a very notable success."

"Detailed information regarding the military aspect of these operations will be submitted hereafter."

**BENGAL.****Surveys.**

Correspondence (1888-1891) between the India Office and the District and Local Officers of the Province of Behar, Bengal [or rather: between (i.) the Govt. of Bengal and the Govt. of India, and (ii.) the Govt. of India and the India Office] as to the advisability of carrying out the proposed Cadastral Survey in that Province. pp. 192.

C. 188 [1s. 7d.] London, 1892. fol.

The Correspondence concludes with a Despatch to the Govt. of India from the Secretary of State for India (dated 24 Dec., 1891), briefly summing up the arguments for and against the Survey.

"After a careful consideration of the whole subject, I cordially concur with your Government in accepting the decision of the Bengal Government that a Survey should be made and a Record-of-Rights should be prepared in North Behar."—*Secretary of State*.

Report on the Experimental Survey, and Record-of-Rights, in Mozzufferpore, by Mr. E. W. Collin [1885-1887], and remarks by Govt. of India, &c. pp. 3-54. [1892.] fol.

*See supra* Correspondence, &c. 1892. fol.

**A List of Headings more commonly required  
in a Catalogue of Colonial Official Documents.**

<b>Bibliography.</b>	Emigration.
	Exhibitions.
Agriculture.	Factories.
Arboriculture.	Famine.
Archæology.	Farming.
Architecture.	Federation.
Art Galleries.	Finance.
Assurance.	Fish and Fisheries.
Astronomy.	Foreign Relations.
	Forests.
Banks.	Franchise.
Botanical Gardens.	Friendly Societies.
Botany.	Frontiers.
Boundary Commissions.	
Capital City [ <i>with its own Subheadings.</i> ]	Gazetteers.
Census.	Gazettes (Official).
Charities.	Geological Survey.
Chemical Analyser.	Government :—
Chronology.	House of Assembly.
Civil Justice.	Legislative Council.
Civil Service.	Governors' Addresses.
Companies.	
Conferences.	Historical and Geographical Reports.
Criminal Justice.	Home Government (Colonial Office, etc.).
Crown Lands.	Hospitals and Dispensaries.
Customs.	
Diseases. <i>See</i> Medical Re- ports.	Immigration.
	Income Tax.
Education.	Irrigation.
Elections.	Labour Bureaus.

Labour Question.	Products and Industries.
Language, Literature, and the Press.	Proverbs.
Law Courts.	Public Works.
Legislation.	Railway adm.
Libraries.	Railways.
Lighthouses.	Records.
Local Self-Government.	Registration.
Lunatic Asylums.	Religions.
	Rivers and Canals.
Manuals.	Roads.
Marine.	
Marriage Laws.	Sanitation.
Medical Reports (not con- tained in Sanitary Re- ports).	Schools and Colleges.
Meteorology.	Statistics (Miscellaneous).
Military adm.	Surveys.
Mines and Mineralogy.	Telegraph. ( <i>See</i> Post and Telegraphs).
Mountains.	Trade and Commerce.
Municipal adm.	Trade Unions.
Museums.	Trials.
Native affairs.	Universities.
Naval adm.	
Navigation (Inland).	Vagrancy.
	Veterinary Surgeon.
Observatories.	Vital Statistics.
	Volunteers.
Patents.	
Pensions.	Wards.
Petitions.	War, Rebellion, and Riot.
Police.	Weights and Measures.
Poor Law.	
Post and Telegraphs.	Zoological Gardens.
Prisons.	Zoology.

### On the Bibliography of Military Official Works.

While, in several countries (notably England and America) Separate Catalogues of the Publications of the larger Government Departments have been issued, this has been rather the exception than the rule, and I know of no instance where such Catalogues fulfil all the conditions required of them.

In 1894, however, **Mr. Basil Soulsby**, of the British Museum, applied himself with creditable energy to compile a "*Catalogue of English Official Military Works published by the British Government on Sale, 16th January, 1893*, (p. 63), and as this Catalogue was, except in trifling details, compiled strictly according to the rules and principles of my Specimen Catalogues of Cape Colony and Indian Documents, I have, with Mr. Soulsby's kind permission, reprinted the list of headings, in order to show the operation of the principles alluded to, in the sphere of military publications.

I should add that the Catalogue in question was supplied with an Index to the names of "Authors, Editors, and Translators."

F. C.

---

## Military Official Works.

### LIST OF HEADINGS.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>Administration.</b></p> <p><b>Abyssinia.</b><br/>See Campaigns — Abyssinian War, 1868.</p> <p><b>Accounts.</b></p> <p><b>Afghanistan.</b><br/>See Campaigns—Afghan War, 1879-80.</p> <p><b>Allowances.</b></p> <p><b>Ammunition.</b><br/>See Explosives, Projectiles, and Ammunition.<br/>See also Arms.</p> <p><b>Arms.</b><br/>— Carbine.<br/>— Rifle.<br/>See also Musketry Instruction.</p> <p><b>Army.</b></p> <p><b>Army Lists.</b></p> <p><b>Army Orders.</b><br/>See Orders and Regulations.</p> <p><b>Army Service Corps.</b></p> <p><b>Artificers, Corps of.</b></p> <p><b>Artillery.</b><br/>See also Honourable Artillery Company.<br/>See also Range Finders.<br/>See also Ranges.<br/>See also Schools and Colleges.<br/>— Artillery College, Woolwich.<br/>— Field Artillery.<br/>— Garrison Artillery.<br/>— Mountain Artillery.<br/>— Siege Artillery.</p> <p><b>Artillery College, Woolwich.</b><br/>See Schools and Colleges—Artillery College, Woolwich.</p> <p><b>Artillery Company, Honourable.</b><br/>See Honourable Artillery Company.</p> <p><b>Austria.</b><br/>See also Campaigns.—Austro-Prussian War, 1866.</p> <p><b>Bands.</b><br/>See Music.</p> <p><b>Bashforth Chronograph.</b><br/>See Chronograph.</p> | <p><b>Belgium.</b></p> <p><b>Buglers.</b><br/>See Signalling.</p> <p><b>Bulgaria.</b></p> <p><b>Camel Corps.</b></p> <p><b>Camels.</b></p> <p><b>Campaigns.</b><br/>— Abyssinian War, 1868.<br/>— Afghan War, 1879-80.<br/>— Austro-Prussian War, 1866.<br/>— British Minor Expeditions, 1746-1814.<br/>— Caucasian Campaign, 1881.<br/>— Chilian Wars, 1891.<br/>— Crimean War, 1854-55.<br/>— Egyptian War, 1882.<br/>— Egyptian War, 1884-85.<br/>— Franco-German War, 1870-71.<br/>— Russian Steppe Campaigns.<br/>— Zulu War, 1879.</p> <p><b>Carriage Dept.</b></p> <p><b>Carriages.</b><br/>See Carriage Dept.</p> <p><b>Cavalry.</b></p> <p><b>Cavalry, Yeomanry.</b><br/>See Yeomanry Cavalry.</p> <p><b>Chili.</b><br/>See Campaigns—Chilian Wars, 1891.</p> <p><b>Chronograph.</b></p> <p><b>Clothing.</b></p> <p><b>Colleges.</b><br/>See Schools and Colleges.</p> <p><b>Colonies, British.</b></p> <p><b>Congresses.</b></p> <p><b>Construction.</b><br/>See Engineering.</p> <p><b>Cookery.</b></p> <p><b>Cyprus.</b></p> <p><b>Denghil Tepe.</b><br/>See Campaigns — Caucasian Campaign, 1881.</p> <p><b>Drawing Plates.</b><br/>See Maps.</p> <p><b>Egypt.</b><br/>See also Campaigns—Egyptian War 1882.<br/>See also Campaigns—Egyptian War, 1884-85.</p> |
|---|---|



**Electrical Appliances.**

**Encampments.**

**Engineering.**

*See also* Schools and Colleges—  
School of Military Engineer-  
ing, Chatham.

**Engineers.**

**Equipment.**

**Examinations.**

- Army Preliminary.
- Interpreters.
- Militia.
- Regular Forces, Militia, and  
Volunteers.
- Sandhurst.
- Staff College.
- Volunteers,  
Woolwich.

**Explosives, Projectiles, and Am-  
munition.**

**Farriers.**

**Fencing.**

*See also* Single Stick Drill.

**Finance.**

*See also* Accounts.  
*See also* Allowances.

**Fortification.**

**France.**

*See also* Campaigns—Crimean  
War, 1854-55.

*See also* Campaigns—Franco-  
German War, 1870-71.

**Germany.**

- Cavalry.
- Infantry.

*See also* Campaigns—Austro-  
Prussian War, 1866.

*See also* Campaigns—Franco-  
German War, 1870-71.

**Great Britain and Ireland.**

- Home Defence.

**Greece.**

**Gun Factory.**

**Gunnery.**

**Guns.**

**Gymnasia.**

**Historical Records.**

**Honourable Artillery Company.**

**Horses.**

**Hospitals.**

**Hungary.**

*See* Austria.

**Infantry.**

- Mounted Infantry.

**Intelligence Division.**

**International Congresses.**

*See* Congresses.

**International Law.**

**Ireland.**

- Railways.

**Italy.**

**Japan.**

**Kriegs-Spiel.**

*See* War Game.

**Languages.**

**Law.**

- Statutes.

**Maps.**

**Marines.**

*See also* Historical Records—  
Marines.

**Medical Dept.**

**Medical Reports.**

**Mess Regulations.**

**Militia.**

**Mobilization.**

**Montenegro.**

**Mules.**

**Museums.**

**Music.**

**Musketry Instruction.**

*See also* Schools and Colleges  
—School of Musketry,  
Hythe.

**Navy.**

**Necessaries.**

*See* Clothing.

**Netherlands.**

**Norway.**

*See* Sweden and Norway.

**Orders and Regulations.**

**Ordnance Store Department.**

**Ordnance Surveys.**

*See* Surveys, Ordnance.

**Pay and Promotion.**

**Portugal.**

**Projectiles.**

*See* Explosives, Projectiles, and  
Ammunition.

**Promotion.**

*See* Pay and Promotion.

**Prussia.**

*See* Campaigns—Austro-Prussian War, 1866.

**Railways.**

**Range Finders.**

**Ranges.**

*See also* Range Finders.

**Reconnaissance.**

**Recruiting.**

**Regimental Histories.**

*See* Historical Records.

**Regulations.**

*See* Orders and Regulations.

**Roumania.**

**Royal Artillery.**

*See* Artillery.

**Royal Carriage Dept.**

*See* Carriage Dept.

**Royal Engineers.**

*See* Engineers.

**Royal Gun Factory.**

*See* Gun Factory.

**Royal Marines.**

*See* Marines.

**Royal Military Academy, Woolwich.**

*See* Schools and Colleges—Royal Military Academy, Woolwich.

**Royal Military College, Sandhurst.**

*See* Schools and Colleges—Royal Military College, Sandhurst.

**Russia.**

*See also* Campaigns—Caucasian Campaign, 1881.

*See also* Campaigns—Crimean War, 1854-55.

*See also* Campaigns—Russian Steppe Campaigns.

**Saddles.**

**School of Military Engineering, Chatham.**

*See* Schools and Colleges—School of Military Engineering, Chatham.

**School of Musketry, Hythe.**

*See* Schools and Colleges—School of Musketry, Hythe.

**Schools and Colleges.**

**Servia.**

**Signalling.**

**Single Stick Drill.**

**Spain.**

**Staff.**

**Staff College, Sandhurst.**

*See* Schools and Colleges—Staff College, Sandhurst.

**Statutes.**

*See* Law—Statutes.

**Stores.**

**Sudan.**

*See* Egypt.

**Surgical Reports.**

*See* Medical Reports.

**Surveys, Ordnance.**

**Sweden and Norway.**

**Switzerland.**

**Tactics.**

*See also* War Game.

**Telegraphs.**

**Topography.**

**Transport.**

— Regimental Transport.

**Turkey.**

**Uniforms.**

— Artillery.

— Cavalry.

— Engineers.

— Infantry.

**Valparaiso.**

*See* Campaigns—Chilian Wars, 1891.

**Veterinary Dept.**

**Vocabularies.**

*See* Languages.

**Volunteers.**

*See also* Examinations—Volunteers.

**War Game.**

**Yeomanry.**

**Zululand.**

### **Veterinary Dept.**

Regulations for the Veterinary Department of Her Majesty's Army. (Army Regulations, vol. 12.) pp. iv. 63. [1s. 3d.] *London*, **1882**. 8°.

A Manual of Saddles and Sore Backs. By Fred. Smith. [With 13 plates.] pp. 50. [1s.] *London*, **1891**. 8°.

### **Vocabularies.**

*See* **Languages.**

### **Volunteers.**

*See also* **Examinations.**—VOLUNTEERS.

Orders and Regulations for Volunteers in Brigade and Regimental Camps, or when encamped with the Regular Forces. Revised 1892. pp. 24.

[1d.] *London*, **1892**. 16°.

Regulations for the Volunteer Force. 1892. pp. 488.

[1s. 6d.] *London*, **1892**. 8°.

### **War Game.**

Rules for the conduct of the War Game. 1884. Reprinted 1889. [With a plate.] pp. 33.

[1s.] *London*, **1889**. 8°.

### **Yeomanry Cavalry.**

Regulations for the Yeomanry Cavalry. War Office. 1892. pp. 156. [1s. 6d.] *London*, **1889**. 8°.

### **Zululand.**

*See also* **Campaigns.**—ZULU WAR, 1879.

Précis of Information concerning Zululand . . .  
Corrected to October, 1885. **1886**. 8°.

*See* **Intelligence Division.**

SECTION IV.

---

**Miscellaneous Papers Relating to Bibliography.**

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

2. The second part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

3. The third part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

4. The fourth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

5. The fifth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

6. The sixth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

7. The seventh part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

8. The eighth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

9. The ninth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

10. The tenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

11. The eleventh part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

12. The twelfth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

13. The thirteenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

14. The fourteenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

15. The fifteenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

16. The sixteenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

17. The seventeenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

18. The eighteenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

19. The nineteenth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

20. The twentieth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

21. The twenty-first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

22. The twenty-second part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

23. The twenty-third part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

24. The twenty-fourth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

25. The twenty-fifth part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

Occasional Letters, Illustrative  
of  
Certain Theories of Bibliography

Addressed to the Daily Press

(1892-1894.)

FRANK CAMPBELL.

*With Notes and Explanations.*

## PREFATORY NOTE.

-----

The following Letters are reprinted in a form convenient for reference.

They refer to matters of vital interest to Librarians at the present moment, when all past systems of Bibliography are being examined, and Reform is in the air.

F. B. F. C.

## CONTENTS.

-----

1892. July 21.—“ The Bibliographical Society.”  
1894. Sept. 18.—“ The Classification of Literature.”  
,, Nov. 9.—“ The Record of Comparative Legislation.”

## Letters to the Press.

### THE BIBLIOGRAPHICAL SOCIETY.

The following letter written in 1892<sup>1</sup> and now reprinted in part, reviewed the chief evils which impede the progress of Modern Bibliography, and stated my belief regarding the true functions of a National Bibliographical Society at the present day.

*To the Editor of the Times.*

\* \* \*

—The evils which afflict the Bibliographical world are not far to seek. They are summed up in the wide-spread ignorance which exists as to the theory of Bibliography regarded as a Science.

This is evident from the general silence concerning the bibliographical importance of the early stages in the history of the book—viz., the theories of *Compilation* and *Publication*, and especially as regards the subject of compulsory Government Registration, and Printed Registers, a matter on which the whole science of Bibliography is based.

It is seen also in the general absence of appreciation of the relative value and comparative use of "Tables of Contents," "Indexes," "Lists," "Catalogues," and "Bibliographies," each of which is alternately made to do service for the other.

The very fact of our having contentedly existed so long without a Bibliographical Society is another proof.

It is seen in the general absence of proper Departmental Lists, of Annual General Lists, Reviews and Continuous Catalogues of the State Papers of every country in the world, and in the glaring defects of such works wherever they exist.

The almost total absence of Catalogues or general Bibliographies of the publications of our Colonies is another sign.

We see it in the defective system of Book-Registration in almost every colony where books are registered.

The long-prevailing fault of subordinating countries to subjects, instead of first subordinating subjects to countries, tells the same tale.

---

<sup>1</sup> In reference to a Meeting convened "to consider and determine as to the desirability of forming" a Bibliographical Society, "and the lines upon which it should be conducted."



<sup>1</sup> Another proof of the same assertion appears in the tenacity of the belief in the theory that the catalogue of the Library of the British Museum or that of the American Library of Congress could form a satisfactory basis for the modern Bibliography of the respective countries, a possibility quite out of the question when we consider that the principles on which books are necessarily catalogued in National Libraries are quite at variance with the conditions necessary for a complete national bibliography.

And we could trace the same ignorance in a number of similar instances.

<sup>2</sup> *Investigations of the Theory of Bibliography.*

The first requisite [in reference to the work of the Bibliographical Society], is a thorough systematic investigation of the whole Theory of Bibliography in regard to the several stages in the history of a book just enumerated.

*Necessity for Government Registration of Literature.*

Such an investigation must show, amongst other things, that the success of all modern Bibliography is based upon compulsory Government Registration of all books not privately printed.

*Issue of Periodical Classed Lists.*

The Periodical Registers being then classified into broad but well-defined divisions, the Modern Bibliography of this country is not only commenced, but half-finished already, each section remaining for ever the common property of all bibliographers.

*The detection of existing gaps among Special Bibliographies.*

*A Commentary on existing Bibliographies.*

Having thus stayed the flood of bibliographical anarchy at the source, the society may then devote itself to a review of English Bibliography, old and new, with the object of discovering not only the more prominent gaps, but all the gaps in the Bibliography of this country. . . . But for this end it will be necessary to compile (and invaluable to publish) a Critical Commentary on all existing bibliographies relating to this country.

---

<sup>1</sup> This paragraph requires further explanation (given on page 431) to illustrate my original meaning. I was alluding to certain vague expressions of belief that the Catalogue of National Libraries *as existing* could be utilised for conjuring National Systems of Bibliography into existence, and also to the fact that there were no accompanying expressions outwardly recognizing those principles of reform which alone can make modern Bibliography a success.

<sup>2</sup> The headings have been inserted for the sake of perspicuity.  
- F.C.

This would be the only 'publishing' work permitted, since it would necessarily be a matter both of literary and financial co-operation, and an object to which even Government might be fairly asked to give a grant.

*Theory of Classification.*

But the compilation of such a Commentary in turn depends upon our being able to agree to a comprehensive Subject-Classification of the future Bibliography of our country. This must therefore be one of the foremost objects of the preliminary investigation of the whole theory.

Then, and not till then, will the Society be in a position to make a general advance along the line.

*Co-operation among Workers.*

For, having at last a complete code of clearly-defined principles, it may then hope through the good services of the publishers to secure the co-operation of authors, printers, publishers and binders in the due recognition of the necessity for observing the first principles of Bibliography.

*The Society as an Organiser and Director.*

The Society will next make every effort to marshal the existing bibliographical forces in the country in the systematic and continuous undertaking of bibliographical work, and not until it sees that public enterprise is deficient or incapable will it commence the publishing of Sectional Bibliographies.

The effect of its influence as an evolving, organising and propelling power will thus be to secure much gratuitous bibliographical work, and thus ultimately to produce results far in excess of anything it could possibly expect if it commences primarily as a publishing body. And it will have the satisfaction of being able to congratulate itself on the fact of not having exhausted its energies and funds in the past by prematurely engaging in the work of the future.

*Bibliography in the Colonies.*

Finally, it is to be earnestly hoped that the Society will not confine itself exclusively to the United Kingdom, but will lose no time in taking up its proper position as the organiser of bibliographical work throughout our whole Colonial Empire, a task which can alone be done by such a Society, which may thus prove itself worthy of the name of the Bibliographical Society of the British Empire, &c., &c.

Your obedient servant,

F. B. F. CAMPBELL.

July 21.

(From the "TIMES" of July 26th, 1892.)

In order to lay sound foundations of Bibliography, it is necessary :

(1) That the Accessions of National Literature be printed separate from Foreign Accessions.

(2) That the Indigenous Literature of the past be kept separate from the Accessions of the present.

(3) That Modern Accessions be registered at regular and speedy intervals.

(4) That those Accessions be issued in *Classed* Lists, in addition to provision being made for Author-Catalogues, Title-Catalogues, Indexes of Matters and various modifications of Class Catalogues.

(5) That for the above purposes, the necessary Catalogue-Titles and Index-Entries be written, on one and the same examination of a book, and printed simultaneously or nearly simultaneously.

(6) That detailed arrangements be made in regard to the manipulation of the entries of:—

Separate Works.

Non-Periodical Continuations.

and for

Ordinary Collected Works.

Learned Societies' Publications.

Periodical Literature.

I know of no National Library where all the above essential conditions are fulfilled, and, in regard to the past, it is impossible that they could have been fulfilled, for it is scarcely necessary to point out that in former times, it was a matter of considerable difficulty to procure the financial grants adequate for the printing of Catalogues and for the payment of the Staffs required to prepare the Work. It was never publicly recognised that the truest principle of economy was to prepare the entries for the several kinds of Catalogues and Indexes simultaneously on one and the same examination of a book. Librarians had therefore to be satisfied with what they could get, and be content generally to commence with Author-Catalogues alone; thus, although there are extra copies of the Titles of all the Books in the British Museum Library, arranged as a Manuscript Subject-Catalogue, these Titles were written mainly with a view to compiling an *Authors'* Catalogue. For this reason, while it is possible to extract the *Titles* of all Works printed in the United Kingdom, it would be necessary to send for from the shelf and re-examine the

majority of the individual corresponding Works in the Library, in order to compile *proper* Class-Catalogues of English Literature, Old and New, and in order to compile the required Index of Matters. And it is morally certain that the same difficulties exist, more or less, in every other National Library in the world.

The above letter does not actually refer to the necessity for the Registration of Privately Printed Works. I have dealt with this point in subsequent writings on the subject. F. B. F. C.

### THE CLASSIFICATION OF LITERATURE.

The following letter was written in reference to one addressed by Mr. Taylor Kay, Librarian of Owens' College, Manchester, to the Editor of the "Daily Chronicle."

It is not necessary to add much explanation. The fact remains that one of the greatest wants in the world of Literature is a proper system of Class-Catalogues *in addition to* other kinds of Catalogues and Indexes.

I have alluded to the subject more fully in a paper read at Belfast in September, 1894, and in September, 1895, the situation remains unchanged.

There is still no serious study, at any rate no *printed* study of the subject: Librarians are just as much at variance with one another on the question, and show very little disposition to co-operate, with a view to serious work.<sup>1</sup> And while this is so, Men of Science are taking the matter into their own hands and are actively engaged, so far as their own branches of learning are concerned, in evolving practical methods for supplying their own wants.

<sup>1</sup> Since writing the above I have received a copy of the "Bulletin," No. 1, of the "Institut International de Bibliographie," instituted under the auspices of the Belgian Government, at a Conference held in Brussels in September, 1895.

The founding of this "Institut" (of which the receipt of the "Bulletin" was my first intimation) at once alters the situation, for by its Statutes, it pledges itself to be a Society "exclusivement scientifique," of which the fundamental objects are:

- 1.—"De favoriser le progrès de l'inventaire, du classement et de la description des productions de l'esprit humain";
  - 2.—De déterminer les unités bibliographiques en vue de faciliter d'internationaliser et de perfectionner le caractère scientifique de ce classement;
  - 3.—De donner son concours à toute tentative sérieuse de classement international
- &c.      &c.      &c.

The appearance of such an Institut (which I have further alluded to in an article in the "Library" of November, 1895) is a matter of the very highest importance, and if it is made thoroughly representative and its operations are wisely conducted, librarians may now look forward with hope to the day when disorder in International literature shall be a thing of the past.

Their zeal and energy are much to be praised. But however successful they may be in their individual spheres, it cannot but be a matter of concern to those who would guard the interests of ALL, when they see the several branches of Science, while partly co-operating among themselves, acting *independently* of other Branches of Literature, in spite of the fact that their interests are all bound up together.

---

*To the Editor of the Daily Chronicle.*

SIR,—As one greatly interested in the important subject of the classification of literature, may I endorse the necessity for the investigation suggested in Mr. Taylor Kay's letter in your columns? I am glad that allusion is made to the interests of "authors, publishers, booksellers" in the matter, for I am convinced that a good system of classed catalogues would be one of the best advertisements for all concerned—a fact which is not yet sufficiently recognised.

To reduce the theory to a single practical example—if we had periodical lists (on strictly bibliographical principles) of *all* the works annually issued in this country, relating to social or religious questions, directly or indirectly, is it not a certainty that there would be a thousand subscribers to-morrow who would avail themselves of such lists, and thus read and purchase books which they would otherwise never hear of? Apart from the matter of the circulation of literature, however, and the claims of the Press, there are two aspects of the subject which are worthy of consideration—viz., the reasonableness and definiteness of the demands of students in search of information, and the ability of librarians to supply such demands. Personally I am of those who consider it impossible for librarians to supply all the information to be desired without a complete system of classed catalogues or "special bibliographies," supplementary to other works of reference.

In regard to the interests of students, if Mr. Kay's letter elucidates a fresh, *definite* expression, showing clearly whether specialists are agreed among themselves as to what are their *legitimate* needs, it cannot but prove of great service to librarians and readers alike. I emphasise the words "definite" and "legitimate," because students are not always clear in their own minds as to what they really do want; while at other times they are, on occasion, apt to be unreasonable in their demands. I especially allude to classed catalogues as being *supplementary* to existing works of reference, for it is a commonly prevailing error to make one form of catalogue appear as rival to another—a fallacy the circulation of which is doubly injurious; for while it unjustly disparages one class of works in favour of another, it raises needless discussions among librarians, and tends to obscure the true course of inquiry. Author-catalogues, title-catalogues, large-group and small-group classed subject catalogues, and subject-indexes, *all* have their appointed ends in library economy, and no single one can be dispensed with without loss.

In regard to the allusion to "specialists"—as already hinted—if specialists have claims upon librarians, so have librarians upon specialists, of whom it is required that they shall severally define the scope of their various branches of knowledge and issue definite and practical statements as to the points of contact between those branches.

It is to be hoped, therefore, that any committee of inquiry instituted may obtain the co-operation of the leading specialists in every profession. It is quite possible that a few specialists may declare themselves already satisfied. At the same time, such opinions must sometimes be qualified by the fact that the knowledge of bibliographical intricacies which they have themselves acquired, only after the experience and study of years, is not common nor possible to all. And at least in such cases it is to be hoped that their apparent prosperity may not be taken as an excuse for the neglect of their brothers' adversity.

In regard to the institution of organised inquiry, I have recently expressed my belief at Belfast that this is a work which might well engage the united efforts of the Library Association and the Bibliographical Society, as these two societies together include the largest number of librarians and bibliographers in their ranks.

The suggested services of the Society of Arts would no doubt be of great practical value; at the same time, while such a society might and should be invited to co-operate, I cannot but feel that any inquiry or report upon the classification of literature would be lacking in authority and influence unless it emanated under the auspices of the two societies which already exist (among other objects) for the express purpose of bibliographical inquiry.

I am, Sir, your obedient servant,

FRANK CAMPBELL.

Sept. 18th.

(From the "DAILY CHRONICLE," September 19th, 1894.)

#### RECORD OF COMPARATIVE LEGISLATION.

In the "Times" of November 9th, 1894, there appeared a leader and a long account of a paper read on the previous day at the Imperial Institute, by Mr. Ilbert (Sir Courtenay Ilbert) on the desirability of obtaining a Comparative Record of British and American Legislation.

The occasion was one of exceptional interest, not only on account of the position and authority of the reader and the number of eminent men present, but because of the special declaration, unanimously upheld, concerning the identity of interests in the various parts of the British Empire, and of the

whole of the English-Speaking Race. But more than this, the Meeting had a special claim on the interest of Librarians and Bibliographers for although it was ostensibly a meeting of Lawyers to consider "Law," it was in reality a Meeting of Lawyers to consider the BIBLIOGRAPHY OF "Law." And the verdict of that Meeting was that past Bibliography of law in the English-Speaking countries was an utter failure. And, in spite of subsequent statements as to the comparative completeness or incompleteness of particular Law Libraries, Mr. Ilbert's paper tended very specially to show how useless is the accumulation of Documents unless they are catalogued, classified and indexed in such a manner as to render them accessible for reference.

It was not unnatural (in the absence of Librarians drawing attention to the subject) that the body of Lawyers following in the steps of all other bodies of Scientific Men, should generally ignore the "Librarian" in the matter, should fail to perceive that it is not so easy to disentangle the whole Literature of Law from other Literature without a *Central System*, and should ignore the fact that the successful record of the Literature of Law like that of all other branches of learning, is dependent on the institution of a proper system of Compulsory Local Registration of *all* Literature in every English-speaking Country.

The following letter was therefore written with the intention of forging this link in the chain of evidence, and of greatly accounting for the failure of Librarianship in the past, by showing that the Colonial Governments were chiefly responsible in the matter. It was also intended to convey a delicate hint to the Lawyers that the failure of Bibliography was in no small degree due to the failure of Law, and that it was within their province to remedy that failure by drafting and passing better Laws — Laws framed so as to counteract the weakness of human nature in the future more successfully than has been the case in the past.

But we are *all* to blame for the present state of affairs; Statesmen, Lawyers and Librarians are alike responsible for the failure of Copyright Laws in the past; and it is only by Co-operation in the future that we can hope to remedy matters. But *Co-operation* there *must* be, with a view to obtaining complete Periodical Registers of Literature from which to select. For, if Librarians, with all the many means at their disposal have failed to obtain complete Lists of Literature issued, how are the Lawyers or any others to succeed?

In the meantime, who is to make the advance?

*To the Editor of the "Times."*

SIR,—The issues raised by Mr. Ilbert's admirable paper on the "Record of Comparative Legislation," and in your leading article of to-day, are so vast that perhaps I may be pardoned if I contribute a few remarks from the point of view of the librarian.

Although on this special occasion, Mr. Ilbert confined himself more directly to the subject of legislation, he will probably have been the first to recognise that the question is one which assumes even wider proportions—viz., that in it is involved the whole question of National and International bibliography, for what is required in the region of Law is equally necessary in every other branch of learning.

In your leading article you ask, relative to the work of the various Legislatures, "Where are the records of their labours, and how are they to be consulted?"

This is a question which I can, alas! from bitter experience, answer only too easily.

Their records exist for the most part in huge unwieldy volumes, in which the Sessional papers, if arranged at all, are arranged on different systems, mostly bad ones; and with few exceptions, they cannot be consulted for the simple reason that the Colonial Governments will not exert themselves to compile proper Catalogues of the Official Publications which they issue. Nor is America much better in this respect.

In the absence of such catalogues, the various collections of Colonial Documents which do exist in this country are practically useless.

As Mr. Bryce infers, it is one thing to possess a copy of the statutes and another to be informed as to their operation. And for this reason the fulfilment of Mr. Ilbert's scheme is dependent on bibliographers and bibliography as a whole. The reports Mr. Bryce is in search of, exist most certainly in more than one library in London, but they are buried for lack of reference catalogues.

As to the advisability of a "Readership," I am not competent to offer an opinion, but it is certain that a solitary Readership of Comparative Legislation will effect little if there is nothing to read—i.e., unless provision is made for access to the material actually published officially; and, as already stated, such provision does not exist—in fact, it is at present almost an impossible task to discover what the Colonial Governments do publish, in the absence of Official Lists and Catalogues similar to those issued by the British Government.

If the Colonial Governments would take the matter seriously, the remedy, on the part of the librarian, is very simple. All that is required is to institute the compilation of Complete Catalogues of the Official and Non-Official Literature of the past, and to maintain Annual Records of the same year by year in the future.



In regard to Non-Official literature, this would necessitate the passing of special Book-Registration Acts similar to those existing in Cape Colony and in several of the Crown colonies. But this would scarcely be a matter of any real difficulty.

It is needless to say that the compilation of catalogues of past literature would involve considerable financial expenditure, but this would be nothing compared with the proportionate gain. In reference to any considerations regarding the magnitude of any scheme put forward, it must be remembered that great problems demand great remedies, and that there can be no simple solution to intricate entanglements.

And in regard to expense and labour, be it observed that, whether we will or not, we are bound to do the work sooner or later—that is to say, *some one in the State will have to do it*. The only possible difference is that, in the one instance, according to the plan proposed, the work would be done once and for all by competent experts at a *minimum* cost of time, energy, and money; while, on the other hand, if neglected, it will be ultimately performed by a thousand different individuals, each working for his own ends, on different systems, covering no ground completely, and at a great expenditure of time and money. If, as a nation, we had paid more for bibliography, it would have been unnecessary to spend £45,000<sup>1</sup> on a Labour Commission.

Should, therefore, the reading of Mr. Ilbert's paper lead to a real attempt to grapple with the difficulty, he will have conferred an inestimable benefit on the English-speaking race, and to-day will mark an epoch in the history of English Bibliography, and consequently in the history of the progress of civilization.

The world has but slowly discovered its dependence upon libraries. It has yet to learn that the full benefit of libraries is dependent on a proper appreciation of the laws of Bibliography. In the meantime it is sad to reflect that, while Governments play with the subject, the people suffer.

I remain, your obedient servant,

FRANK CAMPBELL.

Nov. 9.

*From the "TIMES" of Tuesday, Nov. 13th, 1894.*

---

<sup>1</sup> (Quoting from memory.)

### **The Functions of Bibliographical Societies in a National System of Bibliography.**

A National System of Bibliography to be worthy of the name requires the following machinery :—

(1) A Law requiring the delivery, on the day of publication, of all Literature issued for sale.

(2) Special Measures for obtaining a register of all other Literature (which may not be offered for sale).

(3) A Bureau (which should form part of a National Library) where all publications shall be delivered direct, and where all necessary bibliographical records shall be simultaneously made by one staff.

(4) The periodical issue, for sale, of such Bibliographical Records (Works of Reference) at short intervals of time, arranged in convenient systematic series.

(5) The Institution of a Special Branch at each National Library for the express purpose of the investigation of the theory of the Science of Bibliography.

The above essentials fall under the sphere of Government control.

#### **Need for Bibliographical Societies.**

But there are other parts required in the national machinery, which must be supplied by private enterprise, viz., the formation of Bibliographical Societies which will enable librarians and all who are interested in Bibliography to meet together for the discussion of all matters concerning Bibliography, and which will supply the necessary machinery for friendly unofficial communications between similar bodies in every other country.

This being so, **How are the Societies to be constituted?** and the answer to this question is of great importance, *for on it depends the real progress of the Science of Bibliography.*

The constitution of all societies naturally depends upon the nature and scope of the work to be performed, and upon the men to perform it.

What then is the nature of Bibliographical work? Its nature is a very *varied* one; that is, it includes several district areas of work, each of which is of great magnitude, and each of which is of special interest to some bibliographers, and frequently of no primary interest to others, and each of which claims a very special amount of attention and care.

Thus there are the general divisions of *Ancient Bibliography*, and *Modern Bibliography*, and each of these finds its admirers, who are only interested in certain restricted periods, or in certain kinds of works, or in certain parts of works.

There are also the two great natural divisions of *General Literature* and *Official Literature*, the former of which has innumerable friends—the latter, innumerable enemies!

Then there are the smaller natural sub-divisions (chiefly confined to *General Literature*) of *Periodical Literature*, and the closely allied sub-division of the *Publications of Learned Societies*.

But the field of Bibliography reveals other aspects also, in connection with which it divides into sections, having regard to different kinds of Works of Reference, some being specially interested in Sub-Catalogues and others in Indexes.

Here, then, is a bird's eye view of the vast prospect of Bibliography requiring organised effort. How shall that effort be organised?

Theoretically, one would answer in three words: "*Centralise and Decentralise.*"

Form one society, and then resolve it into sections. But, in so saying, you overlook an important element in the question—*Human Nature*. You forget that where so many interests are at stake, it is morally certain that some will go to the wall. You will never get a General Committee who will represent all interests alike, except they be chosen in exact numerical proportion, in which case there will be a dead-lock; and where you have Sectional Committees, the probability is that they will always be subjected to a certain amount of central control which may hamper as well as help them.

Moreover, you will never give universal satisfaction unless you divide the funds of such a society equally, or allow each section to cater for its own subscriptions, and yet neither of these courses is wholly free from objection.

### **Remedy to be found in Sectional Societies.**

Everything, therefore, points to the necessity for the separation from one another of unsympathetic elements, in order to remove

friction and jealousy, and give freedom to all to unite amicably upon lines congenial to them.

To what extent the separation shall be carried out is a matter of circumstances. But everything seems to point to the necessity for the existence in each country of two societies :—

**A Society interested in Old Books.**

**A Society interested in the Record of Modern Literature, and its Developments.**

The latter Society would most certainly resolve itself into the following Sections, which I sketched at the Belfast Meeting of the Library Association, 1894.

- (a) **A Society for the Establishment of Compulsory Book Registration (the General Organisation of Bibliography.)**
- (b) **A Society for the investigation of Subject-Classification, and the work of compiling Periodical Special Bibliographies.**
- (c) **A Society to investigate the Bibliography of Periodical Literature.**
- (d) **A bonâ-fide Index Society.**
- (e) **An International Bibliographical Society.**
- (f) **An Official State Papers Bibliographical Society.**
- (g) **A County and Municipal Official Literature Society.**

#### **Other Considerations.**

But the success of societies does not consist simply in their existence as Sectional Societies.

There are other considerations which may make or mar the work of any Society—chief among which are the questions connected with :

- (1) **Mutual Co-operation among Members.**
- (2) **Printed Publications.**
- (3) **Arrangements concerning Meetings.**

#### **Mutual Co-operation of Members.**

In securing the co-operation of the members of a society, there are always two ways open : (i.) to issue general invitations for papers and suggestions ; (ii.) to issue special individual invitations to members—the one being to *go* to the members ; the other, to ask the members to *come* to you. And there is no doubt that any society which formally invites papers and resolutions

may always, with a considerable amount of reason, state that it has done its duty by all new ideas or possible reforms. But, at the same time, it will be generally agreed that while there must always be standing *general* invitations for co-operation, the well-being of a society depends upon the *special* invitation.

It will generally be conceded that matters of organisation should rather emanate from ruling Committees than be pressed upon them. The committees of a society are, or should be, in a position to know who are the best men for furthering the several sections of the work of a society. This being the case, it is for *them* to endeavour to inspire their members to devote themselves to the particular subjects with which they are best able to deal. If this is done, the members, having an earnest of the real interest of a committee in furthering a particular object, will heartily respond to the invitation. But where this is not done, there will never be real progress. For members of societies will naturally shrink from submitting or continuing to submit the results of laborious investigations unless such efforts receive real welcome by committees, and there is a real prospect of effort being made to act upon them.

### Arrangement of Meetings.

The second matter closely connected with the prospects of a society relates to the arrangements of periodical meetings, and especially of annual meetings.

There are certain essentials to note, if there is to be real progress in the work of a society. The members must not be brought together to *play* but to work. That is, there must be no papers in the programme which do not bear upon vital points of the work of a society, and which do not demand discussion.

The main object of bringing members together, apart from purposes of social intercourse out of hours, is that they shall meet to discuss, in parliament, important subjects which need discussion. And in order that discussion may be possible, great care should be taken that the programme be not *too* long, or else it defeats its own object. Nothing is more disheartening for members than to have prepared papers at a great cost of time and labour, on matters which require discussion, and then to have to read them hurriedly to a tired and impatient audience and to find no time left for discussion.

But if committees of societies do their part of the work, they have a right to expect of members that they shall do theirs, viz., that they shall make real effort to "get up" the subjects for discussion, in order to help forward their elucidation. For it is equally disheartening for committees of societies, after they have prepared their programme, to find the time of the meeting wasted by irrelevant remarks and aimless discussions, in which the whole point of a subject is lost by the repetition of fallacies which should never have been raised.

### Societies and their Publications.

In order that a society may fulfil its proper functions, it is imperative that it possess exact machinery for the prompt printing of all matter of interest to its members.

Such matter is of five kinds :—

- (1) Communications of general interest in relation to the progress of Bibliography.
  - (a) *At home.*      (b) *Abroad.*
- (2) The General Proceedings of the Society.
- (3) Papers read at its Monthly Meetings.
- (4) Papers contributed direct, without their being read.
- (5) Papers contributed to the Annual Meetings.

Now, it is obvious that the feature which is of greatest importance is the separation of the longer and more elaborate monographs from the shorter miscellaneous items of current information. And it is plain that, in matters of Printed Publications, the several sectional societies need to co-operate.

What, then, is to be the arrangement? The plan which seems above all others to commend itself is the following :—

The first need which forces itself on our attention is **the need for current information**. Englishmen, for instance, require to know not only what is going on among themselves, but what is transpiring abroad in the bibliographical world. At present, there is no periodical which really supplies such information in our country. This, then, is the first requisite : (i.) To establish a monthly periodical which shall give all current information relative to the progress of events in the field of modern Bibliography. Such a periodical would be common property for *all* the sectional societies, who would all contribute to it and support it, and who might constitute it (ii.) as the medium for the record of the general proceedings of each society.

The second need is the need for the printing of **Monograph Papers**, together with any discussion on those papers, as soon as possible after they are written or read. Too much stress cannot be laid upon the need for *speedy* publication.

The "Library Association" affords a good illustration of the matter in question. On a fatal day in the history of the Association, the members decided that the papers read at the Annual Meeting of the Association should not be published in one annual volume, but should be issued during the course of the year in the monthly periodical. Apparently, the reasons for assenting to such a policy were that some of the members thought that "half a loaf" was "better than none," and preferred to have five papers in print at the end of a month rather than wait for the publication of thirty papers in a volume which might be delayed two months. Perhaps, also, there was a misconception as to the possibility of having an annual volume and a monthly volume as well. But, whatever the cause, the step was fatal, and until the Society remedies this gross defect, the good work which it performs will always be seriously affected. The writers of papers frequently wish to be able to refer to their own papers in print *as soon as possible* after they have been read, as also do their friends or critics; and often the delay in the issue of a paper means that the immediate interest in the subject has passed away.

The true policy is, therefore, while publishing **Monographs** contributed throughout the year, in a **Monthly Magazine**, to issue the Papers contributed to Annual Meetings (together with the discussions thereon), in one volume, as soon as possible after the meeting.

#### Necessity for General Co-operation.

While, however, recommending the necessity for the separation of the New Bibliography from the Old, and the resolving of the New into its topical sections, it is of paramount importance that the several sections shall be in touch with one another, so that each may render mutual help and counsel where their interests meet, and in order that there may be combined action where the general interests of all are at stake.

The need for this is all the more clearly emphasized by the general ignorance concerning the recent action of the Royal Society in convening an International Bibliographical Meeting of scientific men in London in the interests of Scientific Literature.

I think I am within the mark when I express my doubt whether in September, 1895, five members of the Library Association had any knowledge of the contemplated meeting, in spite of its all-importance to the body of librarians. It was by pure accident that I discovered it myself, and not until some while after I had read a paper before the International Geographical Congress on the subject—on which occasion I do not remember that anyone referred to the Royal Society scheme, which should, of course, have been uppermost in men's thoughts. And, as further proof of the same want of an international system of communication, I believe I am right in saying that, a year ago, the energetic secretaries of the Institut International de Bibliographie were in like ignorance of the coming event. One of the most prominent figures in the library world knew nothing of the projected meeting until I accidentally mentioned the subject.

All this then tends to emphasize the same fact—the need for co-operative communication between all who have interests at stake in the systematic record of literature.

How is this co-operation to be obtained ?

The answer lies in the institution in each country of a **General Periodical of Modern Bibliography**, which, without committing itself to any long papers on any subject, will give all current information relative to the record of modern literature, in this and other countries, to which not only *General Librarians*, but all specialists—especially those of the scientific world—shall be invited to contribute.

It is only through the medium of such a periodical that we can hope to understand one another's needs, and thus be in a position to co-operate together.

To state the subject internationally :

If in each country there be two Bibliographical Societies—

(i.) One for Ancient Bibliography

(ii.) One for Modern Bibliography

—if each Society publishes—

1. An Annual Volume of the Papers and Proceedings of its Annual Conference

2. A Monthly Magazine

—if there be two International Institutes—

(i.) One for Ancient Bibliography

(ii.) One for Modern Bibliography

—if each International Institute publishes—



1. An Annual Volume of Special Papers and Proceedings (both its own papers and a summary of those of other countries)
2. A Monthly Magazine, summing up the Magazines of its connected Societies—THEN there would be real progress.

We should all have the means of contributing our personal experience in print.

We should all be in possession of the history of Bibliography up to date.

We should all have a means of communication—questions and answers.

We should all feel that our individual efforts were not thrown away.

We should all gain by the mutual encouragement which would ensue.

Will this happy state of circumstances ever come about ?

---

**Memorandum on the preliminary treatment of Books in a National Library prior to their being catalogued, with special reference to the separation of Official and General Literature.**

If there is one thing more certain than another in matters bibliographical, it is this, that General Literature and Official Literature must be registered and catalogued separately.<sup>1</sup>

In order to effect this satisfactorily, it is necessary that *Official* Literature should be received at the National Libraries separate from *General* Literature.

But, unfortunately, this is by no means the case, and indeed in regard to the past, can never be absolutely remedied, although in the future, the introduction of an *International System of Bibliography* will do much to remedy the evil.

This is due to several causes :

- (i.) *That in the Official Records of Literature issued annually by some Governments, the two classes of literature are not kept distinct,\* or wholly distinct.†*

*\*e.g. Ceylon. †e.g. India.*

- (ii.) *That in the Bookseller's Records,\* the two classes of works are not usually kept distinct.*

*\*e.g. France.*

- (iii.) *That Consignments of Donations for Public Libraries frequently (and not unnaturally) consist of General and Official Literature mixed together, sent from the same source.*

And in most cases, a Library is obliged to treat the works received, in the first instance, *as a class, as received*, in preference to their *Bibliographical* nature according to which they must subsequently be treated.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Although certain kinds of Official Literature may and must as a last stage, be entered in General Literature Catalogues, in duplicate.*

It will easily be perceived then that works have to be treated in National Libraries,

- (i.) *In reference to the channels of delivery, secretarial receipt and registration.*
- (ii.) *In reference to subsequent bibliographical necessities, i.e.*
- (a.) *Separate Registration of Continuations for Departmental purposes.*
- (b.) *Separate application for Imperfections, in the many instances where series of works are received incompletely.*
- (c.) *Distribution to the Special Cataloguers of a Library Staff.*
- (d.) *Assignment to the particular part of a Library.*
- (e.) *Entry in their respective Catalogues.*

And as certain Official Documents require to be catalogued twice over,

- (i.) *In a General Literature Catalogue.*
- (ii.) *In an Official Literature Catalogue.*

it is evident that very careful organization is required in order that the interests of neither catalogue be overlooked and a work be entered in one and not in the other. And the need for a perfect system is evident, when it is shown that in the case of Official Documents which may easily be received from three or four different sources, under a corresponding number of arrangements, if an Official Document be "wanting," it is not one Query, but three or four Queries, as it might have arrived from any of three or four different sources.

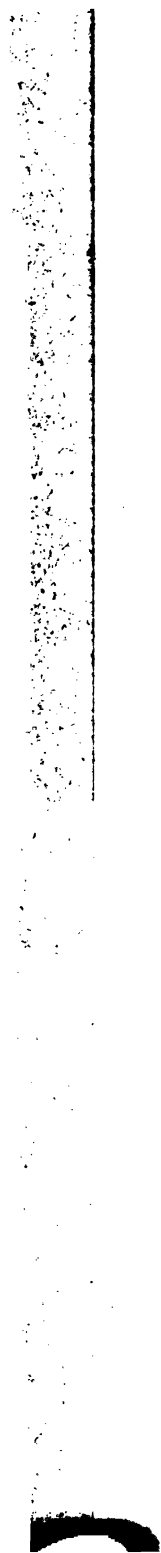
Thus, if we take the case of our own Empire, which affords the best possible illustration of the subject, General Literature may be received under six different Systems, and Official Literature may be received as follows :—

Home Official Docs.	(under 3 Systems).
Colonial „ „	(under 5 Systems).
Indian „ „	(under 4 Systems).
Foreign „ „	(under 4 Systems).

And the resulting intricacies and difficulties with which the librarian has to contend can only be appreciated when it is realised that if a Colonial Document be "wanting," or temporarily in transit through the various Departmental stages, search might have to be made at any of five possible sources :<sup>1</sup>—

---

<sup>1</sup> To quote one instance only.



- A. 1. Colonial Copyright.
- B. 2. Donations.
- C. 3. English Copyright.
- F. 4. International Exchange.
- G. 5. Purchase.

and equal intricacies exist for the other three Divisions.

In order to emphasize the need for System, and illustrate the manner in which it may best be carried out, I have drawn out the following table, which can be easily adopted in any National Library by simple adaptation according to the particular circumstances.

The following Table represents the different classes of Literature referred to in the published Official Reports, as being received at the British Museum, but they are here tabulated on a different System, in order to illustrate the particular subject:—

**DESPATCH REGISTERS.—Suggested simple form of Register for Secretariat use, to ensure the accurate despatch of Periodicals and Continuations.**

It may seem a trivial matter, and an impertinence, to make suggestions concerning the despatch of Publications between Governments, Institutions, and Individuals. But I am sure that all librarians will support me in my statement that the prevailing methods of despatch of publications, on the part of very many Governments, Learned Societies, and Editors of Periodicals, is most unsatisfactory; for while they are often most generous in the distribution of their publications, their generosity is discounted by the fact that, owing to faulty secretariat arrangements, their publications are not despatched regularly or accurately.

This defect upsets any arrangements which may exist for the Record of Bibliography, raises mountains of trouble for the librarian, who cannot bind, nor (in many cases) properly catalogue the series of works received, because the series is imperfect. And as he is often debarred from complaining at once (because there is a chance that the works may not have been published), confusion and vexation is the result. The demoralisation and waste of time and energy which ensues may be realised by the following statement of what must often transpire in all large Libraries, concerning, perhaps, merely one missing part of a scientific journal:—

*Reader (complains to Superintendent of a Reading Room):* I asked for the whole of vol. x., but I have not received parts 6-7.

*Superintendent:* I will make inquiry.

*Messenger* is despatched to the particular part of the library to inquire.

*Attendant*, who had first fetched the books, is fetching others

in another part of the Library. He at last returns, and answers that the missing parts have never reached him.

*Another Attendant* is then interrogated to know whether the parts have been received, who replies that the *Superior Officer* had been consulted in the matter, and that application had been made for the missing parts, which were expected every day.

In the meantime, one Superior Officer has been debating whether he should not purchase the work rather than wait indefinitely for it; while another has been sending irate messages to know when he can send the volume to be bound; the unbound parts are getting more tattered and torn, and probably the disappointed reader has in the meantime tried to find the work at another Library, or has been obliged to purchase it himself.

In some cases where purchase is ultimately decided upon, the unfortunate bookseller, whose time is equally wasted in sending communications across land and water, replies that the work is out of print, and the Library Copy of the work is then incomplete for an indefinite period of time—perhaps for ever. And if the work be ultimately purchased, it is probably at a cost of five times its original worth.

The above is no exaggeration of what constantly takes place in many a Library—and all because the system of despatch is carelessly managed, and too often left in the hands of clerks under no proper supervision.

But, care or no care, the despatch of books will always be imperfect unless there is a proper register ruled for the particular object. And that this is the real cause is shown by the fact that the experience in Libraries is that imperfections generally occur between the last number of the last consignment and the first number of the next, thus showing that the sender was ignorant of where he had left off! And, in the absence of a properly posted Register this must necessarily be the case when, as doubtless it often happens, the clerk who sent off the last despatch is absent on his holiday or away ill.

It should be mentioned, however, that “Imperfections” not received in Libraries are often due to the fact that clerks carelessly send duplicate copies of No. 1, and think that they have sent a copy of No. 2.

For the above reasons, I submit a simple form for a Register. Probably many an institution has a better one. If so, it would be a kindness if it advertised the fact.

Name of Institution or Person addressed to.	Name of Publication.	Columns for specification of Vol., Part, No., Year, Month, etc., despatched.
The British Museum	Anl. Report Journal Proc. Trans. Bulletin	96, 97, 98, Vol. I., Pt. 1—2—3. Vol. II., Pt. 1 Vol. X. Vol. X. (Section I.), No. 1—2—10
Etc.	Etc.	Etc.



## On the Origin of the Stereotyping of Titles and Catalogues.

I believe I am correct in saying that Mr. William D. Cooley, Secretary to the Hakluyt Society, was the first person to make definite proposals relative to the value and possibilities of stereotyping titles. For this reason, it seems to me only a due tribute, without giving any opinion on the subject, to quote his statements on the subject when interrogated by the British Museum Commission, Feb. 9, 1849. (See POSTSCRIPT.) F. C.

"4727. Do you know of any very large catalogue, anything approaching to that of the British Museum, having been printed or stereotyped?—No; I do not know of any.

"4728. (*Viscount Canning.*) The usual mode of stereotyping is to stereotype page by page?—I believe it is.

"4729. You contemplate some other mode, because if that were done it is obvious that you could not insert in the middle of the page the title of any new book that might be acquired?—But I have qualified my proposal of stereotyping by saying that each title should be separate.

"4730. Each title should be stereotyped separately?—Not stereotyped separately, but if you make a cast between the division similar to a printer's lead, the titles would then come out separately. You could cast many things separate, all at one cast.

"4731. But taking each title by itself, when you had stereotyped it, that title would remain in the possession of the Museum, and it would remain unalterable?—Yes.

"4732. You might print it before any other title, or after any other title. You might make any permutations of the titles, but you could not alter the words of a particular title?—Just so.

"4733. That is the way in which you would have it done, so that you might apply the title either to a general catalogue or to a shelf catalogue, or to a class catalogue?—Yes; I would

proceed in this way. I contemplate that when any new works are published, you would print in a cheap form a sheet of 'Additions to the Library,' and have it filed in the reading-room, and at the same time you would go on printing the general catalogue.

"4734. Then in practice would not your system amount to this, that for every separate book having a title of its own in the Museum, there would exist a separate stereotyped title ready to be inserted in any catalogue that might be required?—Precisely. There is one consideration however. If you take the old catalogue, you find several names or titles—take, for instance, that of Ptolemy—which may extend over several pages. Now there is no objection to their all being cast in one, provided that it is quite complete; but supposing it be not quite complete, there is no difficulty in cutting the stereotyped plate. That would cost next to nothing, and it does not at all infringe upon the essential value of my system. If you have a stereotyped page you can cut it as you please. The separate titles would be perpetual.

"4735. (*Lord Wrottesley.*) You are aware there are mistakes in the old catalogue?—I dare say there are.

"4736. Do you think it advisable to perpetuate those mistakes in the manner which you describe?—Certainly not. I would expunge those mistakes. But supposing you were to go to work to-morrow to make this stereotyped catalogue, you could go on upon this principle, and have what the printers call 'good copy,' because that system of proceeding is not one that would oblige you to go straightforward. You might postpone whatever required consideration; you might proceed from first to last without a single break in the work, and still take time to consider whatever involved difficulty.

"4737. Your plan involves a complete revision of the whole catalogue before any work can be done?—It supposes a revision of each part before it is stereotyped. I propose first of all that every title should be inspected by the librarian before it goes before the printer; and secondly, that the printer's work should, of course, be revised like every other work.

"4738. (*Chairman.*) Supposing a difficulty to be found in commencing to print a catalogue from a manuscript catalogue which is not complete, because subsequent references and interpolations may be necessary, would not the plan you have proposed, if it were practicable, obviate that difficulty, and enable you

without loss of time to begin immediately from a manuscript catalogue?—I conceive it would. That I conceive is one of the great advantages of it.

“4739. That would be one of the main objects of the scheme that you propose?—Certainly. There is abundance of good copy to begin with, and whatever is difficult and whatever requires consideration may be postponed without the slightest inconvenience.”

POSTSCRIPT.—The above statement must be qualified by the following extract from Mr. Edwards' *Memoirs of Libraries*, written in 1859 :—

“Mr. Cooley appears to have been the first to propose *publicly* this ingenious plan for a permanent and expansive catalogue, but the same idea had already occurred to **Professor Jewett**, now the distinguished Librarian of the City Library of Boston, who seems to have made it the subject of discussion with some of his friends and correspondents, both in England and America, without, however, having had any opportunity, until 1849, of reducing it to practice.”

---



REMARKS ADDRESSED TO  
THE MEMBERS OF THE  
LIBRARY ASSISTANTS' ASSO-  
CIATION, SEPTEMBER 18, 1895.

FRANK CAMPBELL.

“And yet, on the other hand, it is never to be forgotten that Ideals do exist; that if they be not approximated to at all, the whole matter goes to wreck! Infallibly.”—CARLYLE.

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE
The Young Librarian : His General Education .. .. .	459
The Young Librarian : His Technical Education .. .. .	461
The Librarian as a Man of Business .. .. .	462
The Librarian as a Man of the World .. .. .	463
The Librarian as a Man of Ideals .. .. .	463
The Librarian as a Man of Culture .. .. .	465
A System of Training for Librarians .. .. .	466

## MR. CHAIRMAN, LADIES AND GENTLEMEN :

I need hardly say that it is a very great pleasure to me to be here this evening, and I feel it a special honour to have been asked to address you on this, the first of what will, I trust, be a very long series of similar gatherings to promote the *social, intellectual, and professional* interests of the members of the Library Assistants' Association. Your President, Mr. Peddie, suggested that my remarks should refer to the "Education of the Librarian," and I think that you will agree that this is a subject eminently suitable as the keynote of the future, and one especially desirable for this evening's consideration. But, for this reason, that this is, in a sense, an inaugural meeting, I think it would be scarcely becoming on my part if I did not take the present opportunity to congratulate you on the successful issue of the efforts of the gentlemen who compose your Committee, mentioning especially Mr. Fortune, your late Secretary (who is, I believe, practically the founder of the Association), and Mr. Peddie. Your Committee have met—well, I would not like to say how many times—as reported to me, and this fact alone augurs well for the future. I think it does them great credit that they have successfully steered the Association through the initial difficulties which such an Association must always encounter, and I trust that they will continue to receive your full confidence and support in the future.

Library education being, then, the subject for this evening, I

have been considering what aspects of the question I should touch upon. I came to the conclusion that it would be unwise of me to attempt to treat in detail the work connected with the ordinary routine of the public libraries; firstly, because it is a subject on which you already probably know more than I do; secondly, because it would not be possible for me to treat the several sections of it fully in one evening.

It seemed to me therefore that I might help you better if I considered the subject from a *general* point of view; for successful librarianship depends more upon the development of the individual character than on technical knowledge and experience alone. And this is all the truer, because the "librarian" is not *one* person, but many—for many are the parts which he has to play. We are all aware that the popular definition of a librarian is "a man who indexes books"; but *we* know that librarianship involves—well, just a few other considerations, and so we smile and pass on our way.

In approaching, then, my subject, I place myself in the position, not of the senior members, but of the youngest librarian student in the room, who, finding himself on the threshold of a library career, asks himself: *What am I to do?*

This is a most important question to ask and to answer, for unless we clearly understand the nature of the duties expected of librarians, we can scarcely attempt to perform them. And in trying to answer the question, it seemed to me that my best way would be to view the librarian in his several characters, reverently following the idea of a work which you will easily recognize.

I commence then with

### **The Young Librarian: His General Education.**

What is it that librarians expect of their assistants when they first enter the profession? I think perhaps that their expectations are best defined by the questions they ask: "Is he intelligent? Is he quick?"

What a difference there is between the various characters with which we meet! and how refreshing it is to meet with one who has plenty of *go* in him, *quick* to grasp the situation, *ready* to act at a moment's notice, *brisk* in his actions—in a word, *smart* at his work. This, then, is one of the first qualities to be desired: *Quickness of Perception and plenty of Spirit*—and none

of that sluggardly disposition which is listless, without energy, and always asleep, thus needing perpetually to be aroused to a sense of its own existence.

The next point which a librarian notices is the grace of *Willingness*. What a difference there is between the one who readily and cheerfully offers his help on every possible occasion—even before it is asked—and the other who hangs back and does only that which he is actually compelled to do.

Continuing, I need hardly say next that *Accuracy* is one of the chief qualities required in a librarian. Alas! we could do well with a few more Henry Bradshaws in the past, for witness the number of slovenly catalogues which have been spoilt for want of accuracy, thus rendering it eventually necessary for all the work to be done over again. Unless a librarian can rely upon the accuracy of his subordinates, half his time is occupied in remedying their defects.

You will think it unnecessary for me to mention the word *Civility*, and yet it is one which is frequently ignored, and which is nevertheless of great importance. I do not mean civility to "readers," for I believe "readers" have seldom to complain on this head, but I mean civility amongst colleagues, and I lay great stress upon this point, for this reason, that the want of it may easily impede the work of a department; for if one man is persistently rude to another, the probable consequence will be that there will be a cessation of intercourse between the two,—and in a library, where one librarian may frequently have to consult another, and where it is extremely necessary for the whole staff to work well together, this may easily become a serious matter.

But when I have mentioned these qualities, more generally looked for in candidates for vacant posts, I would especially emphasize the individual necessity for the cultivation of original powers of thought. Wisdom lies, not only in the *accumulation of facts*, but in the *appreciation of principles*. This it is which especially distinguishes one man from another—the quick grasp of principles or laws. This quality it is which most chiefly enables the same man to administer one department of state after another without any previous experience of the same. A man who possesses this quality will generally reveal it by going to the point at once, and by asking the proper questions on meeting with a new situation.

These appear to me to be some of the chief points connected



with the general education and development of a young librarian. But there is his

### Technical Education

to consider. This I shall refer to generally at the end of my remarks. I will only say now that it is very necessary for a librarian to keep clear in his mind the natural divisions of his work, and thus be able to add to his knowledge methodically day by day. Thus he will mark the different branches of the subject of library administration. He will mark the natural divisions of bibliography, such as those of :

- I. General Literature.
- II. Official Literature.
- I. Ancient Bibliography.
- II. Modern Bibliography.

He will bear in mind the division of the stream of literature, *i.e.*, as evidenced by the parallel existence of "separate" works and of works which are "collected" in ordinary non-periodical series, in the journals of learned societies, and in the pages of periodical magazines; and he will be seeking to add to his stock of knowledge on the subjects of "cataloguing" and "classification." In regard to these latter subjects it is especially necessary for him to make a perpetual study of the *kinds* of catalogues and indexes required by bibliographers.

Among the many existing definitions of "genius," Dr. Johnson has defined it as a proper knowledge of "the use of tools,"<sup>1</sup> and if he had referred to genius of librarianship only,—well, he might have done worse. We do not even yet understand our tools, gentlemen, and there is a future for any young librarian who will study their use scientifically.

I will not now remark upon the study of the "theory" of bibliography, beyond saying that I have never yet seen a suitable guide to the subject. I have, myself always avoided the old disquisitions on the matter, because they always give me a headache, and I should be very sorry to condemn you to their study, for I am convinced that you would get up from your chairs more bewildered than when you sat down!

I come now to

---

<sup>1</sup> "Genius is nothing more than knowing the use of tools; but there must be tools for it to use."

### The Librarian as a Man of Business.

A library is a huge machine, the wheel of which is ever turning in the silent process of the receiving of books, and the disposing of them.

It is obvious, then, that a librarian must be a *Man of Business*, for a single hitch in the machine may affect the work of the whole department; and nowhere are business-like habits more conspicuous than in the arrangement of books and papers in actual use. A man's table is the index to his mind. If, therefore, his books and papers are always in confusion, the general conclusions to be derived are that his brain is in a similar condition. I need hardly say, then, that one of the chief requisites in a young librarian is that he should from the very earliest moment endeavour to acquire methodical habits of business. And this is all the more necessary because, as you know, it is often very difficult; for libraries become overcrowded with books; the staff may be overworked; acquisitions increase quicker than they can be dealt with; and thus arrears accumulate. And when once arrears accumulate, all the business-like habits of a man are put to the test, in order to prevent confusion and maintain order.

But it is not only with reference to the *interior* of a library that business habits are required, but in regard to the *chaos* which reigns supreme in the outer world of bibliography. In the words of Carlyle:

"This which we now have, that Chaos should sit umpire . . . this is the worst."

I must also allude to the value of business-like habits in another department of librarian life—that is, in the internal economy of an association such as the one which I have the honour to address—I mean, in regard to the discussions which will take place on papers read. I feel it necessary to warn you against a type of unbusiness-like man who frequents business meetings, and who never talks to the point. Frederick Denison Maurice has alluded to the subject when he warns us against craving "for teachers who shall keep us in good humour with ourselves, not lead us to higher aims, and a more solid foundation." Probably one of your wisest members will have just concluded reading a paper which contains years of experience and weeks of work, when up jumps a gentleman of the type I allude to, and putting his hands in his pockets, proceeds to deliver himself thus:—

"Gentlemen and Ladies, Mr. President——

"Mr. President, Ladies and Gentlemen—(*He looks round for applause*)—I have not understood a word which the reader of the paper has said, but I beg to say that I differ with *every* word he has said. I believe he has some new-fangled idea of improving us in our profession! Well, all I can say is that we don't want to be improved. In my opinion, we are all a set of jolly good fellows, that's *my* opinion, and all we want is shorter hours and longer pay." (*More applause.*)

Gentlemen, this is the sort of "clap-trap" which breaks up a society, and disgusts its better members so that they resign all connection with it. I trust, therefore, that you will not permit it in *your* Association, and that should this type of man ever arise, you will speedily "sit on him!"

### **The Librarian as a Man of the World.**

There is another aspect of the librarian's education to which I should refer, and that is one which I see you recognize, for other reasons when you include the word "*Social*" among the objects of your Society. We have to remember, in these days, that the librarian has a great many friends if he can find them; but they are not of much use if he fails to do so. And thus it is of the highest importance that the librarian of a local library shall make it his business to mix with the social life of his neighbourhood one day, in order that he may ask his neighbours for their life or money the next. I have been told of a successful firm of architects with two partners at the head of it, of which the duty of the one was to work *in* doors, while the other dined *out*! I am afraid if this were a common custom among librarians, there might be some difference of opinion as to which was to do which? But this sufficiently illustrates my meaning that a librarian should take up his position in his locality, and thus secure more help and co-operation than he otherwise might obtain.

### **The Librarian as a Man of Ideals.**

I next pass on to the consideration of the librarian as a man with an *Ideal*.

I believe that it is generally considered highly improper for a man to have a "Mission" in life, but it is graciously permitted to him to have an "*ideal*"—at least, in fiction it is; and it is perhaps fortunate that at least this is allowed him—if he is

to do good work—for without ideals we shall lack enthusiasm, and as you know, little can be done without Enthusiasm, the mother of Arts. This is one of the many reasons why I strongly advocate that every facility and encouragement should be given to women librarians—because the ladies are conspicuous by their Enthusiasm.

It was Lord Beaconsfield who said that:—

“The youth who does not look up will look down, and the spirit that does not soar is destined, perhaps, to grovel.”

And these are words which we do well to remember—and especially so in these days when we hear it not unfrequently stated that the proudest position of the librarian is to consider himself “the servant of the public,” or “the public servant.” It is true that there is a sense in which we may be a man’s “servant” and yet his “chief,” but this is a different application of the moral.

I am at present alluding to the so-called librarian who takes a pride in assuming that his functions do not call upon him to exercise his judgment or discretion, but simply to supply that which the public demands—as an automatic machine.

Gentlemen, the place for automatic machines (with apologies to the “*Indicator*”) is on the Underground Railway, and not in the library. If I were a caricaturist, I should be sorely tempted to picture such a man with a black coat and a silk hat, dragged along by a very long nose and—shall I add—two long ears, by a rabble with no coats and no hats—and all the time a silly look of painful pleasure on his countenance, as he tries to comfort himself with the assurance that he is fulfilling the highest duty of his existence! This is not *my* conception of the functions of a librarian, and I do not think that it is *yours*. My conception of a librarian is that he is not only a *Guardian of Literature*, but a *Guide to Literature*; and in so being we must not forget that we have our duties towards the past, as well as to the present and future generations. Of what use that we are the inheritors of a glorious literature, if we are to rest content that the works of genius are to moulder on our bookshelves, while works of inferior merit are greedily devoured? And in regard to the present, we must remember that—especially in the crowded cities of our country—we have to do our best to save our readers from their own ignorance, and *not* to rest satisfied, and shield ourselves behind it. This is the only reason of our existence. This is why we fill posts as librarians. We are placed in charge

of libraries, because we are supposed to know more than other people—that we may be their guides through the mazes of literature, and not leave them to flounder about by themselves. That our efforts shall be successful throughout the country is dependent on the co-operation of schoolmasters and school-mistresses, on popular lectures, and on personal intercourse with the readers, and, above all, by a judicious selection of books; and I trust that the day will come when the success of the library movement will be judged, not by the number of books in the free public library, but by the number of books kept in the home.

### The Librarian as a Man of Culture.

I would now like to say a few words on the librarian as a man of culture; for this is by no means the least of a librarian's duties; for until every town contains a museum and art-gallery, the library must be the true centre of culture.

Granting that the first duty of a librarian is to fall in love with the soul of his books—the next to learn to know in what consists the *true outward beauty* of a book—and, having acquired this new sense, he is bound not to keep his treasure to himself, not to rest content with his knowledge and the ignorance of other people, but to endeavour his utmost to learn how to *transmit* that sense of beauty to the eyes of others, that they may behold it as he beholds it. With this object, he must take every opportunity of examining the fine art books and manuscripts of every age (of which there is such a wealth at the British Museum); he must learn to appreciate the genuine, honest, and patient effort exhibited in the material and texture of the best specimens of art, and the workmanship bestowed; he must train his eye to appreciate good type and good arrangement of type when he sees it, *and be able to say wherein that goodness consists*; he must learn to appreciate good illustrations, *and be able to say wherein their goodness lies*; he must know when he sees good binding,<sup>1</sup> good tooling, *and must be able to say why the decoration of one book is good, and that of another bad*. This is a high ideal, to which few of us can attain, but nevertheless we must aim at it. But in all

---

<sup>1</sup> In reference to book-bindings, and the power of transmitting sensations of beauty, I think it only due to Mr. Davenport, of the British Museum, to express my conviction that public exhibitions of the exquisite series of lantern slides which he has prepared will do more to instil a due love and reverence for good book-bindings than any other means I know of, short of living with the books themselves.

this I must add one word of warning. You may be lovers of the beautiful in books, but *do* not degenerate into mere pedantic worshippers of the rare and curious.

But, more than this—a librarian should have a soul for the beautiful in *everything* and *especially* for the architectural beauty and fitness, exterior and interior, of his own library.

And not only for architecture do I plead, but for all the arts; for is he not the guardian of their records, and shall he not know something of their treasures? These tend in part to make the sunshine of a librarian's life, and to relieve the frequent monotony of it. In fine, if a librarian is to inspire a love of literature and art in others, he must first be smitten with it himself.

### A System of Training for Librarians.

I have now dealt with what appear to me to be some of the more important educational aspects of the character of the ideal librarian. But there is yet this very vital question to bring before you, viz., the institution of a regular system of preliminary training for young librarians. So far as I understand the situation, matters are at present at a sort of deadlock. The Library Association has considered the subject of the training of library assistants generally in the past, and has undertaken to examine candidates if they "present themselves" for examination. These words "*present themselves*" are important, for, if I am rightly informed, no one ever does "present" himself—or only a very small percentage of persons!

And I confess that I am not altogether surprised, for it appears to me that the experience of young librarians in their endeavours to equip themselves for the fight is most discouraging. Their hours of work are long, their hours of recreation short, and there is little time left for any regular study of the *science* of their profession.

As regards the *hours*, my strong conviction is that librarians, and what is more important, library committees, will find it to their benefit to take special means to enable their library assistants to increase their own efficiency. I believe that there are already many librarians endeavouring to do so, of whom our chairman (Mr. Inkster) is one. I trust that, before long, they *all* will find it possible so to do.

I am encouraged in this hope, moreover, because I believe that it is but the similar experience of other professions. Here

is, for instance, what the President of the Royal Institute of British Architects said in 1894, in the course of an address to students of architecture.

\* \* \* \* \*

"The air is full of educational courses, curricula, syllabi, lectures, and classes, and the remarkable success which many of these have attained, demonstrates how much they were needed. The creation and continuing elaboration of such educational facilities has materially altered the relations which formerly existed between master and pupil. It is true that students must to some extent take advantage of such facilities after office hours; but I think that, in receiving a pupil and accepting a premium with him, *a master is now bound, not merely to extend to him the advantages of training in his office, but, in addition, to recognize the existence of educational institutions outside, and to afford to his pupils reasonable facilities for profiting by them.*"<sup>1</sup>

But, even supposing that a library assistant finds time for special study, what line of study is he to take up? Who is to advise him? What text-books are there to help him? What connection will there be between his studies and the examinations which it may be desirable for him to pass? What incentive is there for him to make a special effort on his own behalf? I am afraid there is no answer to these questions at present.

Well, to cut the matter short, all this points to the necessity for a *system* of education. And if any librarian complains that the suggestion is a reflection on his own powers of training, and will tend to produce stereotyped librarians, I answer: "You will not decline him when you see him; and, after all, you are not obliged to take him, any more than he is obliged to go to you. It is impossible for you yourself to devote the requisite time to personally superintending any more than a fraction of his studies. They do not make these objections in America, so why should we, *here*?"

But how is such a system of education to be initiated, and on what lines? Well, in answer to this, I see those in the room who will have something to say. Both Miss James and Miss Petherbridge have, I believe, a considerable knowledge of the methods prevailing in America. Miss Petherbridge was the first, I believe, to read a paper on the subject at the Belfast Meeting, and touched on the same question again at the Cardiff Meeting of the Library Association.

---

<sup>1</sup> The italics are inserted.

Mr. Peddie has also his views as to the relationship between this Association and the future question of the education of "library assistants," and therefore I will not take up your time any longer than to say that whatever scheme may be suggested and eventually carried out, there are two necessary conditions of success which I think should be mentioned :

(1) That it should receive the full support of the body of librarians in this country.

(2) That library assistants shall resolve to take full advantage of the special opportunities which may be offered to them.

And it appears to me that both conditions are likely to be fulfilled.

---



**Carlyle on Bibliography. (Being extracts from his Evidence before the British Museum Commission of 1849.)**

And now, having spent many long hours in wearying both myself and my reader, let us give ourselves a moment's enjoyment in refreshing our memories as to a most entertaining piece of literature—the evidence of Carlyle before the British Museum Commission of 1849.

Carlyle's evidence in the middle of this ponderous report comes like a breath of fresh air ; or rather, we are transported to a Scotch moor, and witness the passing of a storm. Growlings and grumblings of thunder succeed one another, with occasional flashes of lightning. Lights and shadows pass before us, with transient gleams of sunshine struggling through the clouds ; for, like the mountain torrent, Carlyle sweeps all before him knowing that he has a destination, and impatient to reach it. He does not know much about Bibliography, but he knows what he wants, and that he cannot get it, but he will not hear of opposition. The thing can't be done?—It must be done.

“ Yes, Mr. Carlyle ” (we hear, in imagination), the Commissioners say, “ we quite agree with you that something ought to be done. But there are obstacles which even you must admit. Supposing a big man stands in your way ? ” “ Knock him down,” says Carlyle. “ And supposing that a little man trips you up ? ” “ Get up again.” “ And supposing that your boat upsets ? ” “ Swim to the shore.” “ But what if there are rocks ? ” “ Climb them.” “ But then you will have hedges to get over ? ” “ Go through them.” “ But, Mr. Carlyle——”

*(Aside : “ It is really impossible to talk to such a man.”)*

As a matter of fact, the Commissioners were not timorous, nor did they suggest obstacles except with a view of sifting the subject, but the above correctly represents Carlyle's attitude when he answered : “ No, I never worked at a Catalogue ; but I know the difficulties are *ad infinitum*, precisely as you choose to go

into them. I should say that the worst Catalogue that was ever drawn up by the hand of man was greatly preferable to no Catalogue at all. In fact, I believe a *perfect* Catalogue was never yet, and never will be, made by any human being; but of all Catalogues, surely by far the *worst* is 'no Catalogue at all.'"

"A Library is not worth anything without a Catalogue—it is a Polyphemus without any eye in his head; and you must front the difficulties, whatever they may be, of making proper Catalogues."

**Carlyle on the Need for Catalogues and their Distribution throughout the Country.**

"4385. The grand use of any catalogue is, to tell you in any intelligible way, that such and such books are in the library. All other merits of a catalogue are as nothing compared with that. I should expect it to be a simple thing enough to draw up a list of the names of the books, which would be a great help to the student. You must exercise a moderate share of human intelligence over that: if you happen to have a large share of human intellect, and any great knowledge of books, you will be able to arrange the classes—and you will do it just in proportion to the quantity of intellect you have; for that seems to be the function of the human intellect to go into chaos and make it cosmos. A man of sound understanding will not do the thing more minutely than is indispensable, but he will do it faithfully up to his limits. I should consider that it would not be at all difficult to arrange books in catalogues under the various classes. There might be one catalogue of works on English History, and I would have that circulated everywhere. There might be a catalogue of works on the French Revolution; a catalogue of works on the Reformation; a catalogue of works on English History during the Civil War. In that way, catalogues of various kinds might be arranged; and one general shelf catalogue, telling any man who came there whether such and such a book was in the library. And I would have a total abrogation of that arrangement by which a man is obliged to go and seek for a book out of the library himself. I consider that entirely unreasonable. Like a haberdasher requiring me, if I went into his shop and asked for a yard of green ribbon, to tell him in what drawer the ribbon was lying. Drawer? I should naturally answer: I want such a ribbon! I tell you what I want, and *you* must know in what drawer the ribbon is.

“4386. (*Chairman.*) You would desire to have an alphabetical catalogue, and class catalogues or special catalogues prepared?—Just so. I should not object to a catalogue with all the accuracy of this one, or with ten times as much accuracy in detail, if it could be done; but, failing that, I think an auctioneer's list of books, or something superior to that, which might easily be drawn up with accuracy, would be a great help to students. That would be a thing I should most strongly urge: and that being once done, I should wish all manner of class or special catalogues to be made up, and to be printed, and offered for sale to any person who wanted to purchase them.

“4387. Do you think that a printed catalogue, taking the most compressed catalogue that would be useful, could be comprised in a volume which might have a general sale?—No, but it might remain in the different libraries of the country.

“4388. You think it of great importance that it should be distributed to the great provincial libraries?—If there is to be any real studying in England—yes. The object of such distribution of the catalogue is to encourage that. If there is not going to be any real study in England there is, of course, little use in distributing catalogues; there is little use in keeping up the library at all. But I hope the time is coming when there will be a public library in every county; when no Englishman will be born who will not have a chance of getting books out of the public libraries. I am sorry to believe that we, of this country, are worse supplied with books than almost any other people in the civilised world. I have seen it stated that in the island of Iceland a man has a better chance of getting books out of the public resources than we have. I believe, every Icelfander, when he comes to Kiekianik to sell his year's produce of stock-fish or whatever else, gets a number of books, by order of the King of Denmark, out of the library there, and carries them home to read in his own house in the winter-time; a privilege that no Englishman has at all. This, as far as I understand, is the only public library we have.”

#### **Carlyle on the Old Type of Reader in the British Museum.**

“4396. The people who frequent the reading-room at the British Museum are very miscellaneous in their character; perhaps many of them persons whom it is not worth while to take much trouble to accommodate. The use they make of the library is, to assist

them in drawing up articles for Compilations, Dictionaries, and Encyclopædias, and the stuff called 'useful knowledge.' They are a very thick-skinned race. There are not many persons who are prosecuting any inquiry which involves much delicate intellect. I was extremely anxious, while reading the books about the Civil War in England, to get into the room myself where those books are, and to have liberty to get up to the works and look at them, and take them down as I pleased, and investigate them: perhaps to employ two or three clerks to take extracts from them: but I found that that was not feasible. And indeed I can conceive great difficulties that might be in the way of that; it would be only a very small select class of persons, not one in a hundred of these wanting to get in the room, who could have such a privilege. I was told that the librarian was extremely civil, and that he admitted some into his room: but I had no acquaintance with him; I could not apply to him. I spoke to various official people on the subject, and I was informed that it was impossible I could be allowed the privilege. I found out a hardy intelligent amanuensis who worked for me, or I must have broken down in the enterprise. I could not have existed in the position in which I was there.

"4397. (*Chairman.*) Do you consider that, by the establishment of lending libraries, a considerable number of the ordinary readers of the Museum might be drafted off from the reading-room of the British Museum?—Some, doubtless; but that would be no complete remedy. I believe, there are several persons in a state of imbecility who come to read in the British Museum. I have been informed that there are several in that state who are sent there by their friends to pass away their time. I remember there was one gentleman who used to blow his nose very loudly every half-hour. I inquired who he was, and I was informed that he was a mad person sent there by his friends; he made extracts out of books, and puddled away his time there. A great number of the readers come to read novels; a great number come for idle purposes—probably a considerable proportion of the readers. And on the whole, a vast majority come to the reading-room chiefly to compile and excerpt; to carry away something which they may put into articles for encyclopædias or periodicals, biographical dictionaries, or some such compilation. I do not suppose it to be very urgent that much more accommodation should be afforded to all those various classes of people."

Remark Carlyle's tribute to the value of an "intelligent amanuensis"—to the value of that hard-working class, who

being frequently far more than intelligent, and not always blessed with hardiness, contribute so greatly to the success of the labours of the greater stars in the literary world.

### Carlyle on the Principles of Selection.

Carlyle would have been a dangerous Librarian if called upon to select the Literature of a National Library, and scarcely likely to have proved as *catholic* in his selection as he might have wished, nevertheless his remarks upon the subject are like the pure gold he aspired after.

"4497. You are not able to give the Commissioners any opinion as to the purchase of books, whether they are well selected, or whether you could suggest any arrangement by which more useful works to the public might be secured for the library, especially foreign works?—No, I am unable to give any opinion upon that I have not consulted the library with that view. That, and indeed all else, must depend upon the kind of management you have within the library itself. In fact, after all one has said, everything must depend upon that; you must get a good pilot to steer the ship, or you will never get into the harbour; you cannot direct the people on board by a speaking-trumpet from the shore. You must have a man to direct, who knows well what the duty is that he has to do; and who is determined to go through that, in spite of all clamour raised against him; and who is not anxious to obtain approbation, but is satisfied that he will obtain it by-and-bye, provided he acts ingenuously and faithfully.

\* \* \* \* \*

"4499. There has been an immense increase in the publication of books, of late years, and selection is therefore of much more importance for a library than formerly. If a man went out and collected everything he heard a noise about, he would make a frightful mess of it in the end.

"4500. Do not you think that, for a national collection, universality is important?—Not quite the most important. If I saw a book decidedly bad, I would do everything I, for my part, could to prevent its being read by any human being. If I were ordered by my superior officers to go and buy it, of course I would do so.

"4501. But a book that you would condemn, I might approve?—Doubtless. But I should be in a very poor way, if I did not

know my own mind about it, too, and were not ready to act on my opinion.

"4502. You do not propose that the acquisitions to the library should depend upon the opinion of a single man?—No. I mean that every man should have a sincere opinion, and should be prepared to act upon it.

"4503. In what way do you consider the selection of books for a national library could be best made?—The librarian is the man that must, of course, have something first to say upon it; and if I were the librarian, I should say, in reference to any book that was decidedly bad and false, 'I will not buy that book if I can help it.' But I should expect to be occasionally overruled by the Trustees, who would represent the sceptical part of the public; they would say to me, 'Though you are averse to this book, you are overruled.' I should say, 'Very good, I have done my part.' Certainly, no work coming from the realms of darkness, ought to be sent up to the realms of day, and allowed to do evil to the sons of men, if it can be hindered.

"4504. Are you not aware that many books which were supposed to be of the character you have stated, in former days, are put forth in a time at which there is a change of opinion on many of those matters; and that, if your opinion was acted upon, you would shut out those books altogether?—Yes; and this is perhaps the small benefit we get out of the application of that principle of universal scepticism, which goes from one end of the world to another at present. Every man declines to have any opinion of his own, but asks the world what their opinion is. By adding zero to zero a thousand times, you will not make a sum; zero, *nothing*, is your sum after all. But, as regards this refusal to take certain books into the Museum Library, observe I could not, perhaps would not, object to such a book's being published. I would let the book swim for its life, and it would survive if it were worth anything. But every man should consider that the Almighty has given him powers of judging, and that he is responsible for his exercise of the power. He should form his own opinion upon the matter, or take a wiser if he can fall in with it, and act upon that as far as circumstances permit him.

"4505. Do not you consider that the books in the Library of the Museum ought to be a selection to suit people of all classes of opinion?—Yes: and I should be very catholic; much more so perhaps than you expect. Where I found any kind of human intellect exercised, even though the man were a blockhead, if he

were trying to do his best, I would not reject his book. But where a man was a quack, and his work was decidedly bad, I should consider I was doing God service, and the poor man himself service, in extinguishing such a book; and, in short, that it was necessary to be *select* in choosing books out of the whole world."

---

## CONCLUSION.

In conclusion, it may be observed that the time, both of the writer and (prospectively) of the reader, might have been bestowed on subjects of greater general interest ; but if to most people the subject be a dry one, it is at least a *great* subject—and someone must write, and somebody must read dry books on occasion, *if* the world is to progress.

And, perhaps, it is most fitting that such a work should be issued, even unofficially, in connection with a Great National Library, for from no other position can a man obtain so clear a bird's-eye view of the situation, and thus be able to generalise with accuracy, as in a Library such as the one to which I have the honour to belong, where thousands of books perpetually pass before the eye.

Moreover (a matter which it is important to remember), it is the Librarian at a National Library, if anywhere, who is obliged to adopt broad, liberal, business-like, and, if one may say so, "statesmanlike" views of the question of Bibliography.

Brought daily into contact with numerous interests, he is bound to regard matters not only from a National, but also from a Cosmopolitan point of view.

He it is who has to guard the interests alike of the past and future, the poor and the rich, the ignorant and the learned, the interests of men of science, literature and art—from the most practical student of economics to the most dilettante of Book-Lovers. And, in order to perform that part of his duties which relates to the record of, and reference to, Literature, he has to protect one class of student from the selfishness or indifference of another, and thus to provide for the record of Literature in such a manner, and on such a scale, that not only one portion of the community, but *all* may be satisfied in their legitimate wants.

But in order to do this, Librarians must first win the confidence of the community, and establish a mutual understanding in regard to the difficulties to be surmounted and the nature of the remedies required, in order that the sympathy and support of the community may be enlisted on behalf of its own interests.

THE AUTHOR.



### ADDENDA.

The following memoranda throw additional light on the preceding work :—

- I. Works of Reference.
- II. Ditto (Their Lessons.)
- III. The Dispersion of English Records.
- IV. National Archives as International Property.
- V. Official Documents.
- VI. The Dispersion of Semi-Official Documents. (India.)
- VII. Burial of Indian Official Documents.
- VIII. An Imperial Record Office of India.
- IX. American Official Documents.
- X. International Exchange of Official Documents.
- XI. National and International Bibliography.
- XII. International Exchange of Titles.
- XIII. Periodical Literature.
- XIV. Institut Colonial International.
- XV. International Conference on the Cataloguing of Scientific Literature.
- XVI. American Library Association.
- XVII. A Pretty Story.

#### I.—Works of Reference.

It is interesting to note the variation of opinion on the relative value of Works of Reference, as illustrated by the views of Panizzi and Edward Edwards. In regard to the British Museum, the former decided in favour of *Author-Catalogues* with *Subject-Index*. In regard to the Manchester Free Library, the views of the latter were expressed in his "Special Report . . . of a Classed Catalogue of the . . . Manchester Free Library" (1855, 8°) when, to meet the wishes of the Trustees, he recommended the adoption of a *Classed Subject-Catalogue*, to be accompanied by an "*Index of Authors*," and an "*Index of Matters or Topics*." Thus, did two of the greatest authorities on Bibliography differ.

At this distance of time, it is easy to see where the cause of the difference lay, and how easily it might have been removed. They were both agreed as to the value of an "*Index of Matters*;" but the one preferred full titles in an *Author's Catalogue*, the

other preferred them in a Classed-Catalogue. The obvious and reasonable escape from the difficulty was to have full titles in both Catalogues; and, if both Catalogues had been compiled simultaneously, this could have easily been done.

## II.—Works of Reference.

### Catalogues of Libraries as Bibliographies.

Perhaps the *necessities* and, at the same time, the *diversities* of *Cataloguing* are shown nowhere so clearly as in the following instances of three Catalogues of Works on Architecture :—

(1) The Library Catalogue . . . 1834-1888. (The Royal Institute of British Architects.) pp. vii., 318. *London*, 1889. 4°.

(2) Catalogue of the Books relating to Architecture, Construction and Decoration, in the Public Library of . . . Boston, &c. pp. 150. *Boston*, 1894. 8°.

(3) Catalogue of the Avery Architectural Library. A Memorial Library of Architecture, Archæology, and Decorative Art. pp. xii., 1,139. *Library of Columbia College, New York*, 1895. 8°.

Here are three Catalogues of works on the same particular subject. Now, we may take it, that the compilers of each Catalogue asked themselves independently the same question : *What form of Catalogue will be the most useful?* And each answered it in a different manner ; and it is a most noticeable fact that each of them unconsciously selected a different form of Catalogue, of which three forms *all* are required in the Economy of Bibliography, *i.e.*,

(A) *An Authors' Catalogue.*

(B) *A Classed Subject-Catalogue.*

(C) *A Specific Subject-Catalogue.*

The "Avery" Collection, while it is classed *on the shelves* in some 60 groups, is catalogued strictly as an **Authors' Catalogue**.

The Boston Collection is **Classed** in twelve groups, with minor sub-divisions, and is supplied with Indexes of Authors, Places, and Subjects.

The English Catalogue is arranged, primarily, on the **Specific-Subject** principle. Thus, works on Fire-places, Furniture, Glass-Painting, Hospitals, Nuremberg, &c., are found under those heads. It is true that it also combines an Authors' Catalogue in among the Subject-Entries. But, although it thus recognises the value of an Author's Catalogue, we regard it more specially as representing

the need of a Specific Subject-Catalogue. It is to be noticed, also, that the Boston Catalogue recognises the value of **Territorial Catalogues**, by making a special group of "Architecture of Countries." And it is probable that (since it is by Territorial Catalogues alone that we discover and rectify the real deficiencies of a Collection) if we compared the Boston and the London Catalogue, we should find a comparatively richer collection of works relating to particular countries in the former than in the latter.

### III.—The Dispersion of English Records.

"Some of our best and richest Records have passed into Libraries, both public and private, which are spread all over the United Kingdom; some have passed into Foreign Collections." (*Synoptical Tables of the Records of the Realm*. . . . By E. Edwards," 1865).

### IV.—National Archives as International Property.

We find a good instance of the above in the following work :—  
Verslag van een onderzoek in Engeland naar Archivalia, belangrijk voor de geschiedenis van Nederland, in 1892, op last der Regeering ingesteld door Dr. H. Brugmans. M. Nijhoff: 'S-Gravenhage, 1895, 8°. (Account of a search in England for Archives of interest for the history of the Netherlands, made by . . . command of the [Dutch] Government.)

This work, of over 500 pages, is the result of researches in the following places :—

- (A) Public Record Office.
  - (a) Foreign Office.
  - (b) War Office.
  - (c) Colonial Office.
  - (d) Admiralty.
  - (e) Rolls and other Documents.
- (B) British Museum, and numerous other Libraries.

Covering the ground as carefully as it does, with full and clear table of the several sources of information, it should prove a useful work of reference for other foreign students, who may wish to search the Archives of their respective countries.

### V.—Official Documents.

"The Administration of the Marquis of Lansdowne, as Viceroy and Governor-General of India, 1888-1894. By G. W. Forrest

. . . Director of Records to the Government of India." *Cal.*, 1894, 8°.

The above work is an instance of an Official Document, which fulfils an important function (Theory of Publication) in furnishing a summary of progress under a particular Government.

#### VI.—The Dispersion of Semi-Official Documents (India).

Tenant-Right and Auction Sales in Ghazeepoor and the Province of Benares. By W. Oldham . . . Late Officiating Collector at Ghazeepoor.

*Printed for the Author : Dublin, 1873, fol.*

Railways in India. Notes by F. Mathew . . . Chief Resident Engineer, B.B. and Central Indian Railway.

*Hodges, Foster and Co. : Dublin, 1874, fol.*

#### VII.—Instances of Indian Official Documents dispersed and buried.

"A List of the Wild Grains, Seeds (of Weeds, &c.), and other Vegetable Products . . . used in the Deccan for Food during the Famines of 1877-1879." (By the Rev. Dr. — Fairbank.) 1880, fol.

*Contained in the Bombay Sanitary Commissioners' Report for 1879.*

"List of Plants and Seeds . . . used as Articles of Food . . . during the Famine of 1876-77, in the . . . Belgaum District (of the Bombay Presidency). 1884, 8°.

*Contained in the "Gazetteer of the Bombay Presidency, vol. xxi., 1884, 8°.*

#### VIII.—An Imperial Record Office of India.

"A guiding principle of Lord Lansdowne's internal policy was the promotion of a systematic enquiry into the facts and circumstances of the Empire. He realised, as keenly as any of his predecessors, that a knowledge of the country and its people, is the foundation of all sound administration." (*G. W. Forrest*).

"Simultaneously with the exertions which have been made during these years to found an Imperial [Public] Library [at Calcutta], active means have been taken to form an Imperial Record Office for the care, superintendence and preservation of the Ancient Records of the Government of India. The attention of

the Government of Lord Landsdowne being directed to the neglected state of the records, and the necessity for some plan for conserving them and rendering them available for historical research, it was resolved to obtain the sanction of the Secretary of State to the appointment of a special officer to organise a Central Record Office. The sanction having been obtained, an Imperial Record Office, has, during the past four years, been established, and the Records of the Government of India, systematically arranged in one general repository. Indexes, Catalogues and Calendars are in course of preparation, which will make available, to those who are now engaged in the task of administration, the experience of the able and eminent men who have preceded them, and will afford the student every facility for studying those original documents from which alone can be traced the history of the growth of our Indian Empire."

(G. W. Forrest's "*The Administration of the Marquis of Lansdowne*," &c., 1894. 8°.)

#### ix.—American Official Documents.

Owing to want of time, I have been obliged to omit an essay I had hoped to contribute on the Bibliography of America Official Documents. There is, however, less need for such an essay, now that the Americans are taking such energetic steps to deal with the subject.

Without comment, I will therefore, only draw the attention of my readers to the existence of the following documents which have lately been sent to me :—

*An Act providing for the Public Printing and Binding and the distribution of Public Documents*, pp. 26. (Approved, Jan. 12, 1895).

*First Annual Report of the Superintendent of Documents*, pp. 36. Government Printing Office, Washington, 1895, 8°.

*First Draft of a Proposed Bill to reduce the cost, increase the value, and simplify the methods of Publication of the Public Documents furnished to Designated Depository Libraries*. Government Printing Office, Washington, 1896, 8°.

#### x.—International Exchange of Official Documents.

The following report should be noted :—

" Message from the President of the United States, transmitting a communication from the Secretary of State, relative to the

establishment of an International Bureau of Exchanges." (With "List of Official Publications issued by Congress, and the respective Executive Departments from 1867 to 1881).

**XI.—National Bibliography must precede International Bibliography.**

"My first idea was a Universal Biography, with a number of editors and contributors, English and Foreign. From that wild attempt I was saved by the knowledge and sound judgment of my friend, Mr. Leslie Stephen. Now that I know what the production of a Dictionary of National Biography involves, I tremble when I think of what a Dictionary of Universal Biography, carried out on similar lines, would have meant."—(Speech by *Mr. George Smith*, June 6, 1894.)

**XII.—Other Instances of Required Internat. Exchange of Titles.**

**No. 1.—America to England.**

"Agricultural investigations at Rothamsted, England, during a period of fifty years. Six lectures delivered under the provisions of the Lawes Agricultural Trust, by Sir Joseph Henry Gilbert . . . under the auspices of the Association of American Agricultural Colleges, &c., in November, 1893." (U.S.A., Department of Agriculture), *Washington*, 1895, 8°.

**No. 2.—England to the Cape.**

Report of Her Majesty's Astronomer at the Cape of Good Hope to the Secretary of the Admiralty, for the year 1894. *London*, 1895, fol.

**XIII.—Periodical Literature.**

*Catalogo Metodico degli scritti contenuti nelle pubblicazioni periodiche Italiane e straniere. Parte prima. Scritti biografici e critici. (Biblioteca della Camera dei Deputati). Roma, 1885-95. 8°.*

No work referring to the Bibliography of Periodical Literature would be complete without a reference to the existence of the above Catalogue.

Commencing with lists of periodicals dealt with, each of the four volumes gives full titles of articles of a biographical or critical nature, under the names of the persons treated of,

and stating clearly the authorship and source of information. The work is supplemented by an Author's Index. The type, while small, is beautifully clear on account of the clever arrangement; and that it is a work of exceptional value a glance is sufficient to prove.

#### xiv.—Institut Colonial International.

The above is the title of an institution founded at Brussels, which has undertaken a good work; but I am not able to speak positively as to its character, as I have not yet had an opportunity of seeing its publications. It appears, however, that it has published the following works:—

- (1) *Compte-rendu de la session de 1894.* (Brochure, 80 pages).
- (2) *Le main d'œuvre aux colonies* (Documents officiels). 1 volume environ 600 pages.
- (3) *Le compte-rendu de la session de 1895*, un volume environ 500 pages.

#### xv.—International Conference on the Cataloguing of Scientific Literature.

It having been impossible to complete the printing of this work before the Royal Society Conference, as I had hoped, I am at least able to include some notice of the important results as given in the *Daily Chronicle* of July 20, under title, "The Royal Society and Scientific Literature:"

"We are enabled to state authoritatively that the result of the great international conference held within the rooms of the Royal Society during last week is, briefly, that such a "Catalogue" of scientific literature as the Royal Society projected will be undertaken as speedily as the arrangements—vast and intricate as they must be—have become practicable, and that the central office for its preparation and distribution will be London. The *acta* of the conference will not be available for some days to come, but by the courtesy of Professor Foster we are enabled to say this much, and that resolutions of a practical nature have been arrived at after long and serious discussion, the effect of which will be to place at the disposal of scientists all over the world, without loss of time, information with respect to the latest contributions to current scientific literature, carefully examined, tabulated and described. The selection of London as the disseminating

centre is highly gratifying to Fellows of the Royal Society of London, who, during thirty years, have issued eleven quarto volumes dealing with scientific papers published from 1800 to 1883. These volumes, however, only gave the titles of papers under their authors' names. What it is now resolved to do is to catalogue all periodical scientific literature—*i.e.*, to limit its operations to papers published in all languages in the "Transactions," "Journals," &c., of scientific societies, together with a sufficient index to their contents. It is proposed to begin with the year 1900, the Royal Society itself endeavouring to complete the record up to that date."

\* \* \* \* \*

"Nearly all the great societies of the world were represented at the conference by their most distinguished members, and about twenty foreign and colonial Governments were also officially represented. The result is that London has been made the scientific centre of the world, the repository of the archives of scientific discovery, and the source whence all who are devoted to scientific research must turn for an index to the literature which marks the progress of science. An international council will take upon itself the direction of the London bureau, and the Catalogue will be prepared and issued under its authority. Applied sciences, such as engineering, medicine, and the like, are excluded from the operation of the bureau, but there is to be no restriction when pure science is dealt with under any head of applied or practical science."

#### xvi.—The American Library Association.

I regret that I have not mentioned the admirable "List of Subject Headings for use in Dictionary Catalogues" (pp. 188), published by the American Library Association in 1895. This is a most noticeable instance, not only of a valuable work of reference, but also of the principle of United National co-operation among Librarians.

#### xvii.—A Pretty Story.

Although it does not strictly fall within the province of this work (except in so far as it is connected with the subject of Bibliographical Survey), I cannot forbear relating a story which Sir George Grey told me, relative to his efforts to obtain Manuscripts from the interior of Africa, a full account of which appeared subsequently in "The Album," of July 29th, 1895. (*See extract below.*)



While Governor at the Cape, Sir George's attention was attracted to the discovery, by Dr. Krapf, of some remarkable manuscripts in North-East Africa. He, thereupon, with the help of Livingstone and others, advertised the fact that he was desirous of purchasing any similar Manuscripts which might be discovered, with the result that some years afterwards, in 1861-62, an old Arab gentleman boarded an English man-of-war off the coast of Mombasa, and delivered a packet which he had brought for Sir George Grey, and which was subsequently sent to him in New Zealand. But no one could be found to read the Manuscripts, until one day a native of Assyria, passing through Auckland, was able to do so, and thus forged the key to Manuscripts of the greatest interest. But the chief interest centres round the decipherment of the letter which accompanies the packet, in which the writer, "Mohamed Naser Eben," who was lost for two years on his journey, refused payment for the Manuscripts, and revealed himself a poet and idealist in his allusion to one of the Manuscripts as being "*full of golden leaves*," in the following passage:—

*"Dear Friend :—If we see a garden surrounded by a wall, and its gate is locked, I do not think we can judge as rightly about its fruits—whether they are sweet and delicious or not—except we enter into it and taste its different varieties. So it is with Books : unless you understand and read them with care, you cannot realise their beauty and sweetness."*

Truly the story reads like a "romance," and we eagerly hope that the answer of appreciation, despatched more than thirty years after the first receipt of the gift, may have reached its destination, if only to be preserved as an heir-loom by the descendants of a man whose character must have charmed his surroundings in days gone by.

---

1

## LIST OF DIAGRAMS.

## DIAGRAMS.

Showing the natural order of Classification of Subjects—under Countries (Territorial Catalogues), 61	Illustrating the Principle of International Bibliographical Exchange of Titles, 178
In illustration of the effect of Time (Archæology) on Classification, 64	Illustrating the Relationship of Works of Reference Proper, 191
Illustrating the process of Transverse Classification, 67	To illustrate the Value of the Section, 221
Illustrating the Natural Laws of Bibliography in the Division of Official Literature, 135, 137	To illustrate International Bibliographical Exchange, 238
Showing Natural Divisions and Sub-Divisions of Literature, as determined by Source and Form of Publication, 175	Indian Book-Registration Form, 239
Showing the kinds of Scientific Works of Reference required, 175	Book Registration Form Recommended, 240
Showing Series of Universal Large-group Subject-Catalogues to be obtained by (i.) putting together the several Sections of each Country, or by (ii.) making a Selection from such Class-Catalogues, 176	The Two Great Divisions of Literature, 272
	Specimen of Register of Official Docs., 395

1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

.

**Index to The Theory of National and International  
Bibliography. By Frank Campbell, London, 1896.**



## INDEX.

- Abstracts:** 54, 112, 113.  
 Annals of British Legislation, 112  
 Annals of Indian Administration, 112  
 Imperial White Books (Cassell & Co.) Omitted through oversight  
 Précis of Official Papers. (Engl. Sess. Papers), 113  
 Accidental Information, 392  
 Acland, A. H., 149  
 Addenda, 477-485  
 Africa.—West African Colonies (English), 321  
 Aids, *see* Works of Reference  
 Ajmere-Merwara, 325  
 Allen & Co., 113  
**America**, 190, 327, 352, 366  
   Copyright Act (1891), 237  
   Official Docs., 363, 486  
   Official Docs., *re* Publication, 7, 481  
   (Registers), 327  
   Supdt. of [Public] Docs., 358  
   Training of Librarians, 467  
   U.S. National Bulletin, 20  
 American (and English) Literature, General Catalogue of, 253  
 American Index to Periodicals, Its use, 276  
 American Library Association, 489  
 Annual Literary Index, 102  
 Anthropology and Classification, 70  
 Archaeology, a disturbing factor in Classification, 64, 65  
 Architecture and Connected Subjects, 58  
 Archives, National  
   *See* Int. Archives  
   *See* National Archives  
   *See* Records  
 Article-Magazines, 92  
 Assam, 325  
*Athenæum* (*The*) on International Bibliography in 1850, 171, 249  
 Austin (John) on Jurisprudence, 68  
 Australasian Bibliography, 315  
 Australasian Literature, Record of, 317, &c.  
 Austria, 352  
 Author and Subject-Catalogues, 47  
 Author and Title-Catalogues, 47  
 Authors' Catalogues, *see under* Works of Reference  
 Avery Architectural Library Catalogue, 478  
**BAHAMAS**, 322  
 Bangalore, 325  
 Barbadoes, 322  
 Barton, G. B., 127  
 Battle of Bibliography, 229-240  
 Beaconsfield, Lord, 464.  
 Belgian Government, and the Inst. Int. de Bibliographie, 332  
 Bengal, 325  
 Bermuda, 319  
 Bible (*The*), as illustrating certain principles of Publication, 23  
**Bibliographical Societies**, 256  
   Arrangement of Meetings, 442  
   Constitution of, 439  
   Co-operation of, 435  
   Co-operation among members, 441, 444  
   Functions of, 430-433, 443  
   Memorandum relative to, 261  
   Publications, 443  
   Sectional Societies, 440  
   Bibliographical Society, *The* (Functions of), 429  
 Bibliographies, *see under* Works of Reference  
**Bibliography:**  
   Ancient *v.* Modern, 215, 254  
   Ancient and Modern, 440, 445  
   Bureaus of, *see* National Bureaus, &c.  
   Current Information Required, 443, 444  
   Definition of, 214-217, 244  
   Essentials of, 245  
   Fallacies, 246  
   Foundations of, 432  
   Investigation of Theory Required, 430  
   National Systems, Essentials of, 439  
   Progress greatly dependent on Bibliographical Societies, 439  
   Reform in, 255-259  
   Statistics suffer, 133  
   Study of, 164

- Bibliography Backwards, 209-227, 252  
 Billings' Catalogue, 190  
 Biology and Classification, 69, 70  
 Block-System of amalgamating Catalogues, 399  
 Blue-Books, *see under* Official Docs.  
 Bombay and Sind, 325, 326  
 Bonwick, J., 127  
 Book, What is a? 15, 250  
 Book-Registration, *see* Works of Reference.—Registers, &c.  
 Books, Indexes to, 53  
 Booksellers' Catalogues (German), 291  
 Booksellers, Their Share in Bibliography, 158  
 Boosé, J. R., 155  
 Boosé, J. R., on "Registers of Colonial Publications," 317-23  
 Boston Library Catalogue (Architecture), 483  
 Bowker, R. R., 105, 153  
 British Empire, Official Docs. of, 345-359  
 British Empire, Record of the Literature of, Chap. VII., 123-137  
 British Guiana, 322  
**British Museum Commission**, 1849,  
     Extracts from  
         De Morgan and Short-Title Catalogues, 279-291  
         Panizzi and Classed Subject-Catalogues, 292  
         Panizzi and Indexes of Matters, 295-298  
         W. D. Cooley and Stereotyped Titles, 453-455  
         Carlyle and Bibliography, 469-475  
**British Museum Library:**  
     Authors' Catalogue: its Use, 274  
     Bindings, 465  
 Brugmans, Dr. H., 479  
 Brussels, Inst. Int. de Bibliographie, *see* Institut, &c.  
 Brymner, D., 127  
 Bonaparte, Prince L.-L., 155  
 Bureaus of Bibliography, *see* National Bureaus of Bibliography  
 Buried Bibliographies, 223, 224  
 Burma, 325  
 Butler's Works, 10, 52  
  
*Calcutta Review* on English Blue Books (1858), 128  
 Campbell, Sir George, 126  
**Canada:**  
     Grant to Imperial Institute, 359  
     Record of Literature, 319, 324, 347, 359  
     Official Docs., 132  
     Records, 127  
     Statistics, 133  
     Canadian Royal Society Proc. and Trans. Specimen Catalogue of Articles with Index, 108  
  
**Cape of Good Hope:** 320, 324, 359  
     Official Docs., 131  
     Official Docs. Catalogue, 403-408  
 Card Catalogues of Official Docs. (a danger), 353  
**Carlyle:** 469-475  
     On Chaos, 462, 470  
     On the need for Catalogues, 469  
     On the Readers in the British Museum, 471  
     On the Principles of Selection of Literature, 473  
 Carrington, R. C., 367  
 Catalogues, *see under* Works of Reference  
 Central Provinces (India), 325  
**Ceylon**, 321, 324  
     Records, Committee to report on, 125  
 Chamberlain, Joseph, 359  
 Chili, (Registers), 327  
 Chilovi, Sig., 352  
 Christie, R. C.  
 Classed Subject-Catalogues, *see under* Works of Reference  
**Classification of Literature:**  
     Theory of, Chap. III., 55-74, 262, 263  
     Affected by Systems of Publication, 3  
     Alleged impossibility, 249  
     Compactness of Sections, 73  
     Correlations of Sciences, 66-70  
     Dependent on particular object, 370  
     Dewey System, 72, 48, 165, 332-335  
     Direct Classification, 65  
     Disturbing elements in, 60, 178  
     Essential factors of, 58, 72  
     General Memoranda, 73  
     Gradations of, 72  
     Imagination as a factor, 69  
     Indirect (Transverse) Classification, 65, 371  
     Investigation required, 431  
     Large-Group Catalogues, 71  
     Methods of, 65  
     Of Official Docs., 369, 370-374  
     Of Official Docs., illustrated, 379-383  
     Simple or Direct Classification, 65  
     Small-Group Catalogues, 72  
     Classification of Literature (Mr. Taylor Kay), 433  
     Three Essentials of, 72  
     Transverse Classification, 65, 371  
     Wanted, a Society, 263  
 Classification of the Field of Knowledge, 78  
**Collected Works**, 226, 250  
     Cataloguing of, 234  
     (Learned Societies), 78, 329  
     (Scientific), Record of (Royal Society), 329  
 College of Indexers, 52



- College (Training) for Librarians**, 255  
**Collins, V.**, 155  
**Colonial Literature :**  
     Need for organised record, 431  
     Registration of, 314, 315, 317, 324-325  
     Want of Catalogues, &c., 429  
**Colonial Office Archives**, 183  
**Colonial Official Docs.**, 123  
     All Libraries at present comparatively useless to the public, 437  
     Cape of Good Hope Catalogue, 403-408  
     Compilation, &c., *see under* Compilation, &c.  
     Imperial Series of Catalogues, 345-354-359  
     Library of, 356  
     Publication, *see under* Compilation, &c.  
     Some Headings required, 417  
**Colonial Records**, Survey of, 125  
**Colonies**, Copyright Laws, 124, 316  
     *See also* Colonial, &c.  
**Combined Catalogues**, 47  
**Compilation and Publication :**  
     Theories of, Chap. I., 1-25, 109, 217-227, 368, 369, 374-378, 429  
     Affecting Classification, 3, 63  
     Centralisation of Knowledge, 6  
     "Co-operative Bibliography" (Editors), 107  
     Decentralisation of Knowledge, 6  
     Editing *v.* Publication, 25  
     Editors' Responsibilities, 103, 109, Form Divisions and Sub-Divisions, 145, 146  
     Form of P., its influence, 1  
     Government Printers, 2  
     Interior details of a work, 20  
     Learned Societies, 3, 20, 81  
     Theories *re* Official Docs., 7, 18, 21-23, 118, 130-137, 481  
     Comparative Table showing possibilities of assimilating Systems of Publication of Official Docs. throughout the world, 135-137  
     Official Docs. (American), 7  
     Official Docs. (Colonial), 128, 129, 130-137  
     Official Docs. (English), 7  
     Official Docs. (French), 7  
     Official Docs. (India), 5, 12-14, 21-23, 369-378  
     Re-arrangement of Material, 23  
     Section, Value of, 9-16, 63, 79, 80, 219-224  
     Source of Publication, as Affecting Bibliography of Official Docs., 114  
     Source of Issue, Indian Official Docs., 410  
**Completeness, in Bibliography**, 306  
**Concordances**, 54  
**Congresses, Affecting Series of Official Docs.**, 80  
**Congresses and Departmental Official Docs.**, 349  
**Continuous Catalogues**, 364  
**Cooley, W. D.**, and the Stereotyping of Titles and Catalogues, 249, 453  
**Co-operative Bibliography**, 431  
**Co-operation among Bibliographers**, 441, 444  
**Co-operation among Librarians**, Need of, 436  
**Copyright Laws and Bibliography**, 159, 232, 237  
**Copyright Law :**  
     Colonial, 124, 316  
     Wanted a Society, 262  
**Correlations of Science**, 58, 69  
**County and Municipal Official Docs.—**  
     Wanted a Society, 268  
**County Councils, Official Docs. of**, 121, 268, 366  
**Crandall, F. A.**, on the Cataloguing of Official Docs., 358  
**Culture, and the Librarian**, 465  
**Cundall, Frank**, and the Literature of Jamaica, 127, 322  
**Cyprus**, 323, 324  
*Daily Chronicle*, Letter to (1894), 433  
**Danvers, F. C.**, 127, 184  
**Davenport, Cyril**, 465  
**Definitions :**  
     Bibliography, 214-217  
     State-Papers, 365, 366  
**De Morgan, Prof. A.**, on the evils of Short-Title Catalogues, 279-291  
**Deschamps, M. le Chev. Ed.**, 332  
**Despatch-Registers (for Secretariat use)**, 450  
**Dewey System**, 48, 72, 165, 332-335  
**Diagrams, List of (This precedes the Index)**  
     Dialogue (Official Docs.), 345-359  
     Dictionary Catalogues, 47, 48  
     Digest-Indexes, 54  
     Digests, *see* Works of Reference (Abstracts)  
     Direct Classification, 65  
     Dispersion of Records, 219, 479, 481  
     Distribution of Works of Reference, 199  
     Division of the Stream of Literature, 225. *See also under* Literature  
**Dryander's Catalogue, Its Index of Matters, why so perfect?** 297  
**ECCLES, DORSET**, 368  
**Editors' Responsibilities (Publication)**, 103, 109  
**Edwards, E.**, and Classed-Catalogues, 482  
**English Copyright Law**, 237  
**English Index to Periodicals, its use**, 276  
**English Literature, Projected Catalogue of**, 252

- English (and American) Literature,  
General Catalogue of, 253  
English Military Docs., 419  
**English Official Docs.**, 347-351, 368  
*See also* English Parliamentary  
Docs.  
Military, 419  
*Re* Publication, 7  
What they Comprise, 115  
**English Parliamentary Papers:**  
Bad Hieroglyphics, 413  
Catalogues required, 411, 412  
Series enumerated, 411, 412
- FALKLAND ISLANDS**, 323  
**Fallacies**, 231  
*Re* Combined Catalogues of Official  
and General Literature, 396-401
- Fiji, 320  
Financial Considerations, 203  
Foreign Bureaus of Exchanges, 195  
Foreign Countries. Registers of Literature, 327  
Foreign Office Archives, 183  
**Foreign Official Documents:**  
*See also* American Offic. Docs.  
*See also* French Official Docs.  
Official Docs., 352, 363  
Catalogues, 352, 366-368  
Form. in Publication, 1  
Form.—Divisions (and Sub-Divisions)  
of Literature, 145, 146  
Forrest, G. W., 127, 221  
Fortescue, G. K., Subject-Index of  
Modern Works, &c., by: Its Nature  
and Use, 149, 273  
Fortune, W. W., 458  
**France**, 352, 368  
Official Docs., 363  
Official Docs. (Publication), 7  
Registers, 327  
Free Public Libraries, *see under* Libraries  
Froude on History (Classification), 55
- GAMBIA**, 321  
Garnett, Dr. R., on Classed-Catalogues,  
263  
Garnett, Dr. R., on the Record of Colo-  
nial Literature, 316  
General Catalogues, 32  
General Literature, Characteristics of,  
396  
General Literature and Bibliography,  
256  
Geographical Bibliography (Resolution  
at the Int. Geogr. Congress of 1895), 87  
Geography. Literature of: How shall it  
be recorded, 299-301, 303-313  
German Booksellers' Catalogues, 291  
**Gladstone, W. E.:**  
On the functions of an Index, 52  
On the Principles of Publication, 10  
Gold Coast, 321
- Gould, C. H., 359  
Government Aid, 162, 255  
Government Librarian-Printers, 2, 127,  
161  
Government Offices, Libraries of, 186  
Government Printers, Neglect of Laws  
of Publication, 2, 121, 161  
Governments, Functions of, in Biblio-  
graphy, 208  
Grenada, 322  
Grey, Sir George, 155, 359, 484, 485  
Guard-Book Catalogues, 364
- HATCHETTE ET CIE.** The List re-  
ferred to on p. 368 is not continued  
Haidarabad Assigned Districts, 325  
Hansard, Messrs., on the Cataloguing of  
Official Docs., 358  
**Headings:**  
Colonial Official Docs. Catalogues,  
417  
Military Offic. Docs. Catalogues, 420  
Hetherington, Miss, Index to Periodicals,  
102  
Hickcox, J. H., 367  
Historians, Ill-treated, 184  
Historical Record, Difficulties of, 60-62  
Hong-Kong, 321, 324  
Hooker, Sir Joseph, Classification, 57  
Hume, Rev. A., Work on the History  
of the Learned Societies, 86  
Hungary, 352  
Hunter, Sir W., 5, 126, 127, 220  
Hygiene and Demography (Classifica-  
tion), 69
- ILBERT, SIR C.**, and the Record of  
Comparative Legislation, 435  
Imagination as a factor in Classification,  
69  
Imperfections, The Curse of Librarians,  
450  
Imperial Federation Series of Official  
Docs. Catalogues, 403-408  
Imperial Institute, A Suggested Scheme,  
355  
Imperial Record Office of India, 480  
Imperial Series of Official Docs. Cata-  
logues, 354  
"Imperial White Books." This Series  
published by Messrs. Cassell & Co.,  
(1886-87) as a Summary of English  
Blue Books, with Indexes, should  
have been mentioned on p. 112  
Imprint, Value of, in Official Docs., 18  
Index Society wanted, 265  
Indexes, 51, 276  
Indexes of Matters, *See under* Works of  
Reference  
Indexes to Contents of Books, 52  
Indexing, Theory of, 265  
**India:**  
Book-Registration Act, 237  
Imperial Record Office of, 480

**India: (continued)**

State-Printed Registers of Literature, Forms of, 239  
Office Archives, 183

**Indian Official Docs.:** 221, 222, 363, 366, 367, 369-383, 389-393, 485  
Catalogues, 367

Catalogues (English Sess. Papers, 409-416

Compilation and Publication, 5, 12-14, 21-23, 369-378

Publication, *see supra* Compilation, &c.

Records, 126

Registers, 325, 326

Some Headings, 383

Sources of, 389, 410

Inkster, L., 466

Institut Colonial International, Bruxelles, 483

**Institut Int. de Bibliographie, 433**

Resolutions, 335, 336

Review of (The Library), 332-337

Statuts, Décisions et Vœux, 338-341

Intermingling of Subjects, 66

International Archives, 182, 479, 480

International Bibliographical Society wanted, 266

**International Bibliography:**

*See also* National Bureaus of Bibliography

Dependent on National Bibliography, 487

Exchange of Official Docs., 193-205, 481

Exchange of Titles, 234, 235, 238, 482

Exchange of Titles, Examples of, 179, 181

Geographical Congress (Paper contributed), 299-301, 303-313

Hydrography, 172

Institute of Bibliography, Brussels, *see* Institute Int., *supra*.

Geography, 87

Learned Societies, 87

Official Docs., 136, 137

Periodicals of Modern Bibliography, 443, 445

Statistics, 133

System required, 447

Tables showing possibilities of simplifying and assimilating Systems of Publication of Official Docs. throughout the world, 135, 137

Theory of Chap. IX., 171-192, 266

Italian Chamber of Deputies, Catalogue of Periodical Literature (Bibliographical), 482

Italy, 352

Italy (Registers), 327

**Jamaica, 322, 324**

Records, 127

James, Miss M. S. R., 467

Jewett, Prof. C. C., and the Stereotyping of Titles and Catalogues, 455

Johnson, Dr., on Genius, 461

Jurisprudence and Classification, 68

**KAY, MR. TAYLOR, and Classification, 433**

**LA FONTAINE, H., 332**

Lagos, 321

Langlois, Ch.-V., Manuel de Bibliographie, Historique, (I.), x

Lasteyrie, M. Robert de, on the Cataloguing of Articles in Periodicals, 95

Law (English), Its Bibliography a failure, 436

Lawrence, Lord, 203

Lawyers and Bibliography, 436

**Learned Societies, The:**

Influence and functions of, Chap. IV., 75-87, 226

Amalgamation or Assimilation of, 79

As Bibliographical Societies, 433

The Bibliography of, 58, 265

Despatch (of Publications) Register; Form recommended, 450-452

Exchange of Publications, 194

History of (G. B. & I.), 66

Neglect of Laws of Publication, 2

One Publishing Body, 76

Past and Present Efforts, 82

Privately Printed Publications (Learned Societies), 77

*Re* Publication, 2, 20

And the Record of Scientific Literature, 308, 309, 329

What is required of them, 81

Leaves of Gold, p. 485. (Compare "The Koran" . . . G. Sale" (1844, 8<sup>o</sup>), p. 20; *re* Arabian Poems, "written on Egyptian silk, and in letters of gold").

Lecky's History of Ireland, 220

Lee Smith, 359

Legislation, Comparative, 435

Letters to the Press, 429-438

Levi, Prof. L., (Annals of British Legislation), 112

**Librarians:**

Salaries of, 203-205

Their Interests in State Systems of Bibliography, 156

Training of, 255, 458

Troubles of, 450

**Libraries:**

*See also* National Libraries

Extra Expenditure of, 11

Library Catalogues as Works of Reference, 478

(Government Offices), 186

Public Libraries, Functions of, 243

Public Libraries, Interests in National Bibliography, 101

**Libraries: (continued)**

- Re* State Systems of Bibliography, 154
- Special Libraries, What they *Can-not* Perform, 315
- Library Assistants' Association, Remarks addressed to, 457-468
- Library Association (G. B. and I.), 444
- Lists, 34

**Literature:**

- See also* Collected Literature
- See also under the various Countries concerned*
- Natural Divisions and Sub-Divisions, 144, 225, 250, 269, 272, 300, 305, 310
- Of Geography: How to Record, 299-301, 303-313
- Locality, as the basis of Classification, 60
- Lost Records, 219, 479, 480
- Lowdermilk, 367

**MADAN, F.**, 263

**Madras**, 325

**Magazines and Reviews**, *see* Periodical Literature

**Maine on Jurisprudence**, 68

**Malta**, 322, 324

**Markham, Sir C.**, on Principles of Classification, 68, 127, 372

**Marshall, Prof. Alfred**, on Principles of Classification, 68

**Mason's Burma**, 222

**Maurice, F. D.**, 462

**Mauritius**, 321, 322, 325

**Medlicott**, on Principles of Classification, 68

**Military Official Docs. of Catalogues**, 419

**Mill, J. S.**, on Principles of Classification, 67

**Mills, Sir C.**, 359

**Mohamed Naser Eben**, 490

**Motley**, His difficulties, 184

**Municipal Docs.**, 121, 268, 366

**Mysore**, 325

**NATAL**, 321

**National Archives:**

*See also* International Archives

*See also* Colonial " "

*See also* Foreign " "

*See also* India Office " "

*See also* Portuguese " "

*See also* Records

**National Bureaus for the Record of National Literature.** *See* National Bureaus of Bibliography

**National Bureaus of Bibliography**, 78, 188, 192, 229-240, 255, 306

**National Catalogues**, 32

**National Libraries**, 430, 432

And the Learned Societies, 85

**National Libraries (continued)**

- And National Bibliography, 152
- And the Record of Literature, 306
- Of Official Docs., 120
- On the Separation of General Literature and Official Docs. prior to Cataloguing, 447-449
- National Literatures mixed together, 252
- National Periodicals of Modern Bibliography, 443

**National System of Bibliography:**

- Chap. viii., 139-170
- Conditions of Success, 143
- Natural History and Classification, 70
- Naval Science and Classification, 69
- Newfoundland, 319, 325
- New South Wales**, 319
- Official Docs., 132
- Records, 127
- New Zealand**, 320, 347, 359
- Official Docs., 132
- News-Magazines, 92
- Newspapers, 92
- Noble, J., 359
- Non-Magazine Periodicals, 92
- Notes to Titles of Official Docs. (Specimens), 407, 415, 416
- North-Western Provinces and Oudh (India), 326

**Official Documents:**

*See also* American Official Docs.

*See also* Colonial Official Docs.

*See also* English Official Docs.

*See also* English Parliamentary Papers

*See also* Foreign Official Docs.

*See also* Indian Official Docs.

Abstracts of, 112, 113

The Bibliography of, Chap. VI., 112-

122, 161, 256, 267

Monographs (Sect. III.), 343-424

Binding and Lettering, 118, 364, 365, 377

Block System, 399

British Empire (Imperial Series), 345-359

Catalogues, *see* Official Docs. Catalogues

Cataloguing, Difficulties of, 356-359

Characteristics of, 396-398

Classification of, 369, 370-374

Classification, illustrated, 379-383

(Colonial), Survey of, 128

Compilation and Publication, *see* under Compilation, &c.

Composition of Titles, 389-391

Congresses of State, a disturbing factor, 80, 349

County Council Docs., 121, 268, 366

Departmental Exchanges, 197

Departments, of Secondary Consideration, 397.

Dispersion of, 480

**Official Documents** (*continued*)

- Fallacies (Combined Catalogues) 396-401
- Financial Aspects, 119
- Freer Exchange of Catalogues and Indexes, 199
- Headings, 375, 376, 414
- Imperial Series of Catalogues (British Empire), 354
- Impossible to merge Do. in Catalogues of General Literature, 396-401
- Imprint, 18
- International Bibliography, 136, 137
- International Exchange of, Chap. XI., 193-205, 481
- Minor Official Literature, 121, 268
- Municipal Docs., 121, 268, 366
- National Exchanges, 197
- National Libraries of, 120
- Natural sub-divisions, 114
- Parliaments a disturbing factor, 349
- Past failure, 387
- Present Accumulation useless for want of Catalogues, 436
- Provincial Docs., 121
- Publication, *see* Compilation, &c.
- Purchase to be made possible, 198, 199
- Registers, *see* Official Docs. Registers
- Review (Periodical), 386, 391-394
- Salient features, 113
- Re* Selection, 398
- Separation from General Literature, 447
- Specimen List of Headings (Cape Colony)
- State Papers defined, 365
- Re* Subject-Catalogues, 400, 401
- Three needs, 362
- Title-pages, 18, 19
- Training of Librarians, 356
- Un-Natural Sub-Divisions, 116
- Valued Details to Cataloguers, 389-391
- Wanted a Society, 267
- Why troublesome, 213
- Official Docs. Catalogues:**
  - Certain Docs. to be inserted in Author's Catalogues, 400
  - Essential characteristics, 364
  - Examples of Headings (Eng. Seas. Papers relating to India), 414
  - Nature of, 348
  - Need of, 429
  - Specimen List of Headings in Military Works, 419-423
  - Theory of, 45, 116, 349, 361-383
- Official Docs. Registers:** 45, 116, 348, 395
  - India, 325, 326
  - Plea for, 385-395
  - Specimen Schedule, 395

**Off. Docs. Reviews:** 386, 391-394

- Otlet, P., 332
- Oudh, 326

PAMPHLETS, separate arrangement of, hindering Classification, 63

**Panizzi, Sir A.:**

- British Museum, The, 274
- Classed-Catalogues, 477
- Short-Title Catalogues
- Evils of Short Titles, 291
- On Catalogues, 248-250
- On Dryander's Class-Catalogues, 95
- On the advantages of Indexes of Matters, 295-298
- On the disadvantages of Classed Subject Catalogues, 292-294
- Rules for the Compilation of the Catalogue of the Reform Club, 44
- Views *re* the General Catalogue of a Scientific Library, 50

Parliaments, and Departmental Official Docs., 349

Pelldie, R. A., 458

Periodical Literature (Scientific), Record of (Royal Society), 329

Petheridge, Miss, 467

Petherick, E. A., 155, 317

Philology (Library - Catalogues as Bibliographies), 155

Plea for Annual Registers of State Papers, &c., 385-395

Poole's Index to Periodicals, 102

Poore, B. P., Catalogue of U.S.A. Docs., 366

Portuguese Archives, 182

Prescott, 183

Press, Letters to the, 429-438

Private Enterprise in Bibliography, 308

Privately-Printed Works: Learned Societies, 77

Programme of Bibliographical Reform, 255

Provincial Official Literature, 121

Public Docs., *see* Official Docs.

**Periodical Publications:**

- Chap. v., 88-111, 226
- Additional Characteristics, 93
- Authors' Catalogues, 108, 482
- Evil of, 91
- How to record, 98
- Indexes to, 276
- Ital. Chamb., Deputies' Catalogue, 482
- Kinds of Periodicals characterised, 92
- The Remedy, 97
- Various Modes of treating Do., 105
- Wanted a Society, 263
- Public Libraries, *See* Libraries (Public)
- Publication, Theory of, *See* Compilation and Publication

- Publishers and Booksellers, Their share in Bibliography, 158  
Punjab, 326
- Queensland**, 320, 347  
Official Docs., 132  
Queries, Unnecessary, 450
- RARE BOOKS**, a disturbing factor in Classification, 64  
Record of Comparative Legislation, 435  
Record (of Literature), 31  
Record Stage, 189
- Records:**  
*See also* Archives  
Dispersion of, 219, 479, 480  
(Imperial Record Office of India), 485  
Survey of Colonial, 125  
Registers, *see* under Works of Reference  
Registration of Literature, Societies to promote, 262  
Reich, Dr. Emil, On the Cataloguing of the Titles of Periodicals, 94  
Reid, R., 359  
Renan on Completeness in Bibliography, 244  
Responsibilities of Bibliographical Work, 309  
Review of Reviews, Index to Periodicals, 102, 276  
Reviews of Official Docs., 386, 391-394  
Royal Colonial Institute and the Record of Colonial Literature, 317, 318  
**Royal Institute of British Architects:**  
Catalogue, 478  
President of, 467  
**Royal Society**, 488  
Catalogue of Library, 295  
Circular Letter, *re* the Record of Scientific Literature, 329  
Project, 311, 335  
Royal Society of Canada, Proc. and Trans., Authors' Catalogue and Index, 108
- SAINT LUCIA**, 322  
Saint Vincent, 322  
Sargant, E. B., 149  
Schweinfurth, Prof. G., and Classification, 64  
Sciences, Re-definitions required, 70  
Scientific and Learned Societies of Great Britain and Ireland, Year-Book of, 86  
**Scientific Literature:**  
International Conference *re*, 483  
Record of, Royal Society Circular, 329  
Scientific Societies, *see* Learned Societies  
Sierra Leone, 321, 325  
Section, Value of, in Bibliography, 9, 63, 79, 80, 219-224  
Selected Literature, Catalogues of, 149, 181  
Selection, Fallacy *re*, 246  
Selection, Principle of, in regard to Official Docs., 398  
Selection of Literature, Carlyle on, 469  
Shelf-Catalogues, Hindrance to Classification, 57  
Short-Title Catalogues, *see* under Works of Reference  
Simple or Direct Classification, 65  
Sind, 325, 326  
Smithsonian Institution as a Bureau of Exchange, 202  
Some Functions of Bibliography, 23  
Sonnenschein, S., 149  
Soulsby, Basil, Catalogue of English Military Official Docs., 419-423  
Source-Divisions of Literature, 144  
Source of Publication, Indian Official Docs., 389  
South Australia, 320, 347  
South Australia, Official Docs.  
Spain (Registers), 327  
Special Bibliographies, *see* under Works of Reference  
Specialists, their help required, 435  
Specific Subject-Catalogues, 49  
Spurious Catalogues, 49  
"State-Papers" defined, 365  
State-Papers. *see* Official Docs.  
Statistics, International Comparative, 133  
Stead, W. T., 103  
Stereotyping of Titles and Catalogues, 249, 453  
Strachey, Gen. Richard, on the relationship of Geography and the other Sciences, 70  
Straits Settlements, 321, 325  
Study, Lines of, in Bibliography, 164  
Subject-Catalogues, *see* under Works of Reference  
Summaries, *see* Abstracts  
Supplemented Catalogues, 48  
Surgeon-General's Office, U.S.A., L. Index-Catalogue, 190  
Survey of the Official Literature of the British Colonial Empire, 128  
Sydney Library Catalogue, 155
- Tasmania**, 320  
Official Docs., 131  
Tedder, H. R., 188  
**Terminology:** Chap. II., 27-54  
*The following technical terms are either new suggestions or words recommended for use with special meaning.*  
Article-Magazines  
Combined Catalogues  
Large-Group Subject-Catalogues  
News-Magazines  
Non-Magazine Periodicals  
Record-Stage  
Register of General Literature

**Terminology:** (*continued*)

- Register of Official Literature
- Short-Title Catalogues
- Small-Group Subject-Catalogues
- Spurious Catalogues
- Supplemented Catalogues
- Territorial Catalogues
- Territorial Catalogues, *see under* Works of Reference.
- Thring, Lord, 52
- Time:**
  - As affecting Classification, 64
  - " Titles (Official Docs.)
  - Factor in Bibliography, 151, 264, 265, 365
- Times*, Letter to the (1892), 429
- Letter to the (1894), 435
- Title-Catalogues, 37
- Title-page, Necessities of, 17
- Titles:**
  - Abbreviated, Evils of, 279
  - Fulness of, why valuable, 296
  - Insufficient, affecting Classification, 63
  - (Official Docs.) Composition of, 389-391
  - (Official Docs.), Specimens of "Notes," 407, 415, 416
- Townsend, Meredith, 112
- Training College for Librarians, 255
- Training of Librarians, (Official Docs.), 356
- Transverse Classification, 65
- Trinidad, 322, 325
- Type:**
  - Specimens of, for Official Docs. Catalogues, 414-416
  - Value of, 357
- UNITY, Want of, in world of Bibliography, 307
- Universal Catalogues, 31
- Victoria:** 319, 347, 359
  - Official Docs., 131
  - Statistics, 133
- Volumes:**
  - Internal arrangement of, 3, 9
  - Serial Association of, 4
- WASHINGTON, GEORGE, on Periodical Publications, 91
- Wasted effort, 173
- Watt, Bibliotheca Britannica, 295
- West Indies, 322
- Western Australia, 320
- What is a Book? 220, 226
- Wheatley, H. B., 52, 53
- Whishaw, B., 149
- Windward Islands, 322
- Works of Reference:**
  - Cnap. II., 27-54, 147, 173-182, 225, 477, 478
  - Examples of, 273

**Works of Reference:** (*continued*)

- Fr er Exchange required, 199
- Kinds required, 299, 304
- Lists of, required, 269
- Misunderstood, 434
- Nature and use of, 273
- Periodical Publications, 482
- Relationship, of explained and illustrated, 190
- Relative value, 429
- What they teach us, 273
- [SPECIAL KINDS.]
- Abstracts (Official Docs.), 54, 112, 113
- Authors' Catalogues, 36, 274
  - Their strong points, 292, 293
  - Their weak (?) points, 294
- Periodicals, 108
- Author and Subject-Catalogues, 47
- Author- Subject- Title- Catalogues, 47
- Bibliographies, 34
  - See also infra:* Subject-Catalogues (Classed)
- Catalogues (Official Docs.), *see* Official Docs. Catalogues
- Bibliographies, Commentary on, required, 430
- Bibliographies, the compilation of, the work of the State, 306, 307
- Bibliographies, Unsatisfactory nature, 245
- Catalogues, Carlyle on the distribution of, 471
- Catalogues (Miscellaneous), 47
- Classed Subject-Catalogues, *see infra:* Subject-Catalogues (Classed)
- Combined Catalogues, 47
- Concordances, 54
- Continuous Catalogues, 364
- Dictionary Catalogues, 47, 48
- Digests, *see supra* Abstracts
- Digest-Indexes, 54
- General Catalogues, 32
- Guard-Book Catalogues, 364
- Indexes, 51, 276
- Index of Matter, 43, 248, 249
- Indexes of Matters, Nature and Value of, Panizzi's Evidence, 8, 295-298
- Periodicals, 108
- List, 34
- National Catalogues, 32
- Official Docs. Catalogues, *see* Official Docs. Catalogues
- Official Docs. Registers, *see* Official Docs. Registers
- Official Docs. Reviews, *see* Official Docs. Reviews
- Record (of Literature), 31
- Registers of Literature (Generally), 429, 430
- See also* Official Docs. Registers

**Works of Reference: (continued)**

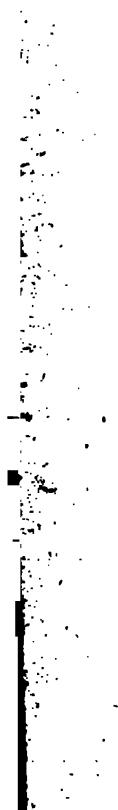
Registers, 34, 173  
 Registers of General Literature,  
 Specimen and Suggested Form,  
 239, 240  
 Registers of Literature :  
 (Colonies), 324, 325  
 (Foreign), 327  
 (India), 325, 326  
 Registers (Official Docs.) *see*  
 Official Docs. Registers  
 Selected Literature, 149  
 Shelf-Catalogues, Hindrance to  
 Classification, 57  
 Short-Title Catalogues, Evils of,  
 (De Morgan and Panizzi), 279  
 Special Bibliographies, *see supra*  
 Bibliographies  
 Spurious Catalogues, 49

**Works of Reference: (continued)**

Supplemented Catalogues, 48  
 Subject-Catalogues, 37, 229, &c.,  
 273, 274  
 Need for, 430  
 (Classed), 37, 50  
 (Classed), Disadvantages of  
 (Panizzi), 292  
 (Classed), Maligned, 57  
 (Classed), need of, 433  
 (Classed), Series of, 166-170  
 (Specific), 40  
 Territorial Catalogues, 33, 176, 191,  
 192, 429  
 Title-Catalogues, 37  
 Universal Catalogues, 31  
 Young, Sir Frederick, and Colonial  
 Literature, 314  
 Conclusion, 476



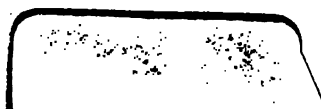








JAN 17 1938





JAN 17 1938

